

# MRX V2

## User Manual

**Version 1.0**

May 2026



# Table of Contents

<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>What's in This Document .....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>Supported Series and Firmware Versions .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>Product Series Feature Comparison Table .....</b>	<b>19</b>
Options Menu.....	19
System .....	19
Port .....	20
Layer 2 Switching .....	21
Network Interface.....	22
Redundancy .....	22
Network Service .....	22
Routing .....	23
Security .....	23
Diagnostics.....	24
Industrial Application .....	25
<b>Icons Used in the Web Interface .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>Quick Start .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Ethernet Switch .....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>Using a RS-232 Console to Configure the Device .....</b>	<b>32</b>
<b>Using Telnet to Configure the Device.....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>UI Reference .....</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>UI Reference Overview.....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>The MRX User Interface.....</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>Options Menu .....</b>	<b>41</b>

Options Menu - User Privileges .....	41
Change Language .....	42
Change Mode .....	42
Disable/Enable Auto Save .....	42
Locator .....	43
Reboot .....	43
Reset to Default Settings .....	43
Log Out .....	44
<b>Device Summary .....</b>	<b>45</b>
System Information .....	45
Panel Status .....	46
<i>Panel View</i> .....	47
Event Summary (Last 3 days) .....	48
CPU Usage History (%) .....	48
<b>System .....</b>	<b>50</b>
System - User Privileges .....	50
System Management .....	51
<i>Information Settings</i> .....	52
<i>Firmware Upgrade</i> .....	53
<i>Configuration Backup and Restore</i> .....	57
Account Management .....	73
<i>User Accounts</i> .....	73
<i>Online Accounts</i> .....	78
<i>Password Policy</i> .....	79
About Out of Band Management .....	80
<i>How Out of Band Management Works</i> .....	80
<i>Out of Band Management</i> .....	81

Management Interface .....	83
<i>User Interface</i> .....	83
<i>Hardware Interfaces</i> .....	86
<i>Configuring Simple Network Management Protocol</i> .....	87
<i>About the LCM Interface</i> .....	95
Time .....	100
<i>About System Time</i> .....	101
<i>About NTP Servers</i> .....	106
<i>About Time Synchronization</i> .....	107
<i>Configuring NTP Server</i> .....	121
<b>Port .....</b>	<b>123</b>
PoE - User Privileges .....	123
Port Interface.....	123
<i>About Port Settings</i> .....	124
<i>About Linkup Delay</i> .....	128
About Link Aggregation .....	130
<i>Static Trunk</i> .....	131
<i>LACP</i> .....	131
<i>Link Aggregation Algorithms</i> .....	132
<i>Link Aggregation Settings</i> .....	132
About Energy Efficient Ethernet.....	138
<i>How Energy Efficient Ethernet Works</i> .....	139
<i>Energy Efficient Ethernet</i> .....	139
<b>Layer 2 Switching .....</b>	<b>143</b>
Layer 2 Switching - User Privileges .....	143
About VLAN .....	144
<i>Assigning VLANs to Ports</i> .....	144

<i>Creating VLANs</i> .....	145
<i>VLANs in Depth</i> .....	146
<i>About VLAN Unaware</i> .....	149
<i>VLAN Settings</i> .....	149
About Q-in-Q .....	155
<i>How Q-in-Q Works</i> .....	155
<i>Q-in-Q</i> .....	156
GARP .....	164
<i>GARP Settings</i> .....	164
MAC.....	166
<i>About Static Unicast</i> .....	166
<i>About MAC Address Tables</i> .....	168
About QoS .....	169
<i>QoS In Depth</i> .....	170
<i>QoS</i> .....	170
Multicast .....	199
<i>Multicast In Depth</i> .....	200
<i>Multicast</i> .....	202
<b>Network Interface</b> .....	<b>218</b>
Network Interface - User Privileges.....	218
Network Interface - Settings.....	218
<i>Loopback Interface Table</i> .....	219
<i>VLAN Interface Table</i> .....	220
Network Interface - Status .....	222
<i>Loopback Interface List</i> .....	222
<i>VLAN Interface List</i> .....	223
<b>Redundancy</b> .....	<b>224</b>

Redundancy - User Privileges .....	224
Layer 2 Redundancy .....	225
<i>About Layer 2 Redundancy Protocols</i> .....	225
<i>About Scenarios for Turbo Chain and Turbo Ring</i> .....	227
<i>About Spanning Tree</i> .....	228
<i>About Turbo Ring v2</i> .....	254
<i>About Turbo Chain</i> .....	275
<i>About MRP (Media Redundancy Protocol)</i> .....	278
<i>About Multiple Dual Homing</i> .....	286
<i>About Multiple Network Coupling</i> .....	294
<i>About ERPS V2</i> .....	305
Layer 3 Redundancy .....	315
<i>About VRRP</i> .....	315
About Tracking .....	324
<i>Layer 3 Tracking: VRRP</i> .....	325
<i>Layer 3 Tracking: Static Route</i> .....	325
<i>Layer 2 Tracking: Port Tracking</i> .....	326
<i>Scenario: Configuring Interface Tracking for VRRP</i> .....	326
<i>Scenario: Configuring Logical Tracking for Turbo Chain</i> .....	332
<i>Scenario: Configuring Tracking for Static Route</i> .....	335
<i>Tracking</i> .....	336
<b>Network Service .....</b>	<b>352</b>
Network Service - User Privileges .....	352
Configuring DHCP Relay Agent .....	352
<i>About DHCP Relay Agents</i> .....	352
<i>Configuring Option 82</i> .....	353
<i>DHCP Relay Agent</i> .....	354

About DNS.....	359
<i>DNS Settings</i> .....	359
<b>Routing.....</b>	<b>361</b>
Routing - User Privileges .....	361
About Unicast Routes .....	361
<i>Unicast Route</i> .....	362
<b>Security .....</b>	<b>388</b>
Security - User Privileges.....	388
Device Security .....	389
<i>About Login Policy</i> .....	389
<i>About Trusted Access</i> .....	391
<i>About SSH &amp; SSL</i> .....	394
Network Security.....	397
<i>About IEEE 802.1X</i> .....	398
<i>About MAC Authentication Bypass</i> .....	411
<i>Port Security</i> .....	418
<i>About Traffic Storm Control</i> .....	427
<i>About Access Control Lists</i> .....	429
<i>About Network Loop Protection</i> .....	441
<i>About Binding Databases</i> .....	444
<i>About DHCP Snooping</i> .....	449
<i>About IP Source Guard</i> .....	453
<i>About Dynamic ARP Inspection</i> .....	456
Authentication.....	458
<i>About Login Authentication</i> .....	459
<i>RADIUS</i> .....	461
<i>TACACS+</i> .....	463

<b>Diagnostics</b> .....	<b>465</b>
Diagnostics - User Privileges .....	465
System Status .....	466
<i>About Resource Utilization</i> .....	466
<i>About Fiber Check</i> .....	470
<i>Module Information</i> .....	475
<i>About Intelligent Temperature Control</i> .....	476
Network Status .....	481
<i>About Network Statistics</i> .....	481
<i>About LLDP</i> .....	485
<i>About ARP Tables</i> .....	491
Tools.....	492
<i>About Port Mirroring</i> .....	493
<i>Ping</i> .....	513
Event Logs and Notifications .....	514
<i>About Event Logs</i> .....	515
<i>About Event Notifications</i> .....	521
<i>Syslog</i> .....	526
<i>About SNMP Trap/Inform</i> .....	529
<i>About Email Settings</i> .....	535
<i>Relay Alarm</i> .....	537
<b>Industrial Application</b> .....	<b>538</b>
Industrial Application - User Privileges .....	538
About Modbus TCP.....	538
<i>Modbus In Depth</i> .....	539
<i>Modbus TCP</i> .....	539
About EtherNet/IP .....	540

<i>EtherNet/IP</i> .....	540
About PROFINET .....	541
<i>Node Roles</i> .....	541
<i>GSD Files</i> .....	541
<i>PROFINET In Depth</i> .....	542
<i>PROFINET</i> .....	550
<b>Security Hardening Guide</b> .....	<b>552</b>
<b>Security Hardening Guide Overview</b> .....	<b>553</b>
<b>Security Best Practices</b> .....	<b>554</b>
Product Security .....	554
<i>Physical Installation Guidelines</i> .....	554
<i>Account Management Guidelines</i> .....	555
<i>Protecting Vulnerable Network Ports</i> .....	556
Maintaining Communication Integrity .....	557
<i>Communication Integrity Features</i> .....	558
Device Access Control Best Practices .....	559
<i>About Device Integrity and Authenticity</i> .....	560
<i>Securing USB Interfaces on Network Devices</i> .....	561
Device Resource Management and Monitoring .....	562
<i>About Device Resource Monitoring</i> .....	562
<i>About Event Logs for Monitoring</i> .....	563
<i>About Port Mirroring for Monitoring</i> .....	563
Recommended Settings for Services and Features .....	563
<i>Common Protocols and Ports</i> .....	564
<i>Security-Related Functions</i> .....	565
Protocols/Services with Weak Authentication/Encryption .....	566
<i>Services</i> .....	566
<i>Redundant Protocols</i> .....	567

<i>Industrial Protocols</i> .....	567
<i>L3 protocols</i> .....	567
Common Threats and Countermeasures .....	567
Recommended Operational Roles and Duties.....	568
<i>Administrator</i> .....	568
<i>Supervisor</i> .....	569
<i>Auditor</i> .....	569
Recommended Patching and Backup Practices.....	570
<i>Configuration Backup</i> .....	570
Recommendations for Vulnerability Management .....	570
Recommendations for Decommissioning .....	571
<b>Security Standards and Concepts .....</b>	<b>572</b>
Introduction to Defense in Depth.....	572
About AAA - Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting.....	572
<i>Authentication</i> .....	572
<i>Authorization</i> .....	573
<i>Accounting</i> .....	573
About Authentication Types.....	573
<i>Local Authentication</i> .....	573
<i>Remote Authentication</i> .....	573
<i>Example: Creating a Local User</i> .....	574
<i>Example: Configuring Account Controls for Local Users</i> .....	575
<i>Example: Configuring a Remote RADIUS Server</i> .....	577
<b>Appendix .....</b>	<b>580</b>
<b>CIP EtherNet/IP Objects .....</b>	<b>581</b>
Identity Object.....	581
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	582
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	582

<i>Common Service List</i> .....	583
Message Router Object.....	583
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	584
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	584
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	584
Assembly Object .....	584
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	585
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	585
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	585
<i>I/O Assembly Data Attribute Formats</i> .....	586
Mapping I/O Assembly Data Attribute Components .....	586
Connection Manager Object .....	587
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	587
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	587
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	587
QoS Object.....	588
<i>Class Attribute</i> .....	588
<i>Instance Attribute</i> .....	588
<i>Common Service</i> .....	589
Base Switch Object.....	589
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	589
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	590
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	591
Port Object .....	591
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	591
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	592
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	593

TCP/IP Interface Object .....	593
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	593
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	594
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	596
Ethernet Link Object .....	596
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	597
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	597
<i>Interface Flags</i> .....	606
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	607
LLDP Management Object .....	607
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	608
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	608
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	609
LLDP Data Table Object .....	609
<i>Common Attribute List</i> .....	610
<i>Instance Attribute</i> .....	610
<i>Common Service</i> .....	615
Moxa Networking Object (Vendor Specific) .....	615
<i>Class Attribute List</i> .....	616
<i>Instance Attribute List</i> .....	616
<i>Common Service List</i> .....	625
<b>CIP Tags</b> .....	<b>626</b>
Tags for Identity Objects .....	626
Tags for TCPIP Objects .....	626
Tags for Ethernet Link Objects .....	627
Tags for Moxa Networking Objects .....	631
Tags for Moxa Base Switch Objects .....	633

Pre-configured Tags in the Moxa AOI.....	634
<i>Identity Object (0x01)</i> .....	634
<i>Base Switch Object (0x51)</i> .....	635
<i>TCP/IP Interface Object (0xF5)</i> .....	635
<i>Ethernet Link Object (0xF6)</i> .....	636
<i>Moxa Networking Object (0x404)</i> .....	637
<i>I/O Message Object</i> .....	638
<b>Configuration Types.....</b>	<b>639</b>
<b>Event Log Descriptions .....</b>	<b>640</b>
<b>Fiber Check Threshold Values for Auto Mode .....</b>	<b>646</b>
<b>Modbus Data Map and Information.....</b>	<b>649</b>
System Information .....	649
Port Information.....	654
Packet Information .....	655
Redundancy Information .....	657
<b>Product Codes Used in Industrial Protocols .....</b>	<b>662</b>
<b>Security Guidelines.....</b>	<b>666</b>
Physical Installation .....	666
Account Management.....	666
Vulnerable Network Ports.....	667
Operation .....	667
Maintenance .....	671
Decommissioning .....	672
<b>Severity Level List .....</b>	<b>673</b>
<b>SNMP MIB Files.....</b>	<b>674</b>
Structure of the Moxa MIB group package .....	674
Standard MIB Installation Order .....	677

MIB Tree .....	678
<b>System Event List .....</b>	<b>681</b>
<b>User Role Privileges.....</b>	<b>685</b>
Options Menu.....	685
System .....	686
Port .....	687
Layer 2 Switching .....	687
Network Interface.....	688
Redundancy .....	688
Network Service .....	689
Routing .....	689
Security .....	689
Diagnostics .....	690
Industrial Application .....	691

# Chapter 1

---

## Overview

# Introduction

Welcome to the MRX user manual. This comprehensive guide is designed to help you understand and navigate the UI features, technical concepts, and tasks you may encounter while using your device. Our goal is to simplify your experience and make the setup process easier.

# What's in This Document

This document includes the following sections:

- **Overview:** This section introduces this document and how to use it.
- **Quick Start:** This section tells you how to connect to your device so you can start using and configuring it.
- **UI Reference:** This section goes through the web user interface (UI) of your device to help you quickly understand what settings are available. This section also shows you the valid ranges and defaults for settings, and any limitations there may be when configuring your device.
- **Appendix:** This section provides additional reference information for your device.

# Supported Series and Firmware Versions

Moxa Switch Series	Firmware Version
MRX-G4064 Series	v2.0
MRX-Q4064 Series	v2.0

**Note**

We are continually improving and developing our software. Check regularly to see if there is an updated version of the software that provides you with additional benefits. You can find information and software downloads on the Moxa product pages at <https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/software-and-documentation>.

# Product Series Feature Comparison Table

Refer to the table below for a full overview of the supported features for each product series model covered by this manual.

- **YES:** Supported
- **PARTIAL:** Partially supported
- **-:** Unsupported

For more details on partially supported features, refer to their respective sections in this manual.

## Options Menu

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
Change Language	YES	YES
Change Mode: Standard/Advanced Mode	YES	YES
Disable Auto Save	YES	YES
Locator	YES	YES
Reboot	YES	YES
Reset to Default Settings	YES	YES
Log Out	YES	YES

## System

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
System Management	YES	YES

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Information Settings</b>	YES	YES
<b>Firmware Upgrade</b>	YES	YES
<b>Config Backup and Restore</b>	YES	YES
<b>Account Management</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>User Accounts</b>	YES	YES
<b>Online Accounts</b>	YES	YES
<b>Password Policy</b>	YES	YES
<b>Out of Band Management</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Management Interface</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>User Interface</b>	YES	YES
<b>Hardware Interfaces</b>	YES	YES
<b>SNMP</b>	YES	YES
<b>LCM Interface</b>	YES	YES
<b>RMON1 (Only in CLI)</b>	YES	YES
<b>Time</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>System Time</b>	YES	YES
<b>NTP Server</b>	YES	YES
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	YES	YES

## Port

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Port Interface</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Port Settings</b>	YES	YES
<b>Linkup Delay</b>	YES	YES
<b>Link Aggregation</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Energy Efficient Ethernet</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>

## Layer 2 Switching

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>VLAN</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Q-in-Q</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>GARP</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>MAC</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Static Unicast</b>	YES	YES
<b>MAC Address Table</b>	YES	YES
<b>QoS</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Classification</b>	YES	YES
<b>Ingress Rate Limit</b>	YES	YES
<b>Scheduler</b>	YES	YES
<b>Egress Shaper</b>	YES	YES
<b>Multicast</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	YES	YES
<b>GMRP</b>	YES	YES
<b>Static Multicast</b>	YES	YES

## Network Interface

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
Network Interface	YES	YES

## Redundancy

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
Layer 2 Redundancy	YES	YES
Spanning Tree	YES	YES
Turbo Ring v2	YES	YES
Turbo Chain	YES	YES
MRP	YES	YES
Multiple Dual Homing	YES	YES
Multiple Network Coupling	YES	YES
ERPS V2	YES	YES
Layer 3 Redundancy	YES	YES
VRRP	YES	YES
Tracking	YES	YES

## Network Service

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
DHCP Relay Agent	YES	YES
DNS Settings	YES	YES

## Routing

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Unicast Route</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Static Routing</b>	YES	YES
<b>OSPF Settings</b>	YES	YES
<b>OSPF Status</b>	YES	YES
<b>Routing Table</b>	YES	YES

## Security

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Device Security</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Login Policy</b>	YES	YES
<b>Trusted Access</b>	YES	YES
<b>SSH &amp; SSL</b>	YES	YES
<b>Network Security</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>IEEE 802.1X</b>	YES	YES
<b>MAC Authentication Bypass</b>	YES	YES
<b>Port Security</b>	YES	YES
<b>Traffic Storm Control</b>	YES	YES
<b>Access Control List</b>	YES	YES
<b>Network Loop Protection</b>	YES	YES
<b>Binding Database</b>	YES	YES

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>DHCP Snooping</b>	YES	YES
<b>IP Source Guard</b>	YES	YES
<b>Dynamic ARP Inspection</b>	YES	YES
<b>Authentication</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Login Authentication</b>	YES	YES
<b>RADIUS</b>	YES	YES
<b>TACACS+</b>	YES	YES

## Diagnostics

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>System Status</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Resource Utilization</b>	YES	YES
<b>Fiber Check</b>	YES	YES
<b>Module Information</b>	YES	YES
<b>Intelligent Temp. Control</b>	YES	YES
<b>Network Status</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Network Statistics</b>	YES	YES
<b>LLDP</b>	YES	YES
<b>ARP Table</b>	YES	YES
<b>Tools</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Port Mirroring</b>	YES	YES
<b>Ping</b>	YES	YES

Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Event Logs and Notifications</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>Event Logs</b>	YES	YES
<b>Event Notifications</b>	YES	YES
<b>Syslog General</b>	YES	YES
<b>Syslog Authentication</b>	YES	YES
<b>SNMP Trap/Inform</b>	YES	YES
<b>Email Settings</b>	YES	YES
<b>Relay Alarm</b>	YES	YES













## Industrial Application
















Settings	MRX-G4064 Series	MRX-Q4064 Series
<b>Modbus TCP</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>EtherNet/IP</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>
<b>PROFINET</b>	<b>YES</b>	<b>YES</b>

# Icons Used in the Web Interface

This table shows various icons used in the web interface and their corresponding meanings.

You can also hover your mouse over an icon to show an explanatory mouseover tip.

Symbols	Meanings
	Add
	Read detailed information
	Column selection
	Refresh
	Enable/Disable Auto Save When Auto Save is disabled, users need to click this icon to save changes to the startup configuration. Refer to <a href="#">Configuration Types</a> for more information.
	Export
	Edit
	Auto Refresh enabled
	Auto Refresh disabled
	Delete
	Clear all
	Panel view

Symbols	Meanings
	Expand
	Collapse
	Hint information
	Menu icon
	Change mode
	Locator
	Reboot
	Reset to default
	Log out
	Data comparison
	Increase
	Decrease
	Equal
	Menu
	Search

**Symbols**   **Meanings**



Copy



Warning



Reorder



Reorder priority



Set up related event notifications



Show text



Hide text



Remove



Select a file



Change language



Sync to the latest state or reauthenticate



View list



Remove the account



Relay alarm cut-off



How to set up

## Chapter 2

---

# Quick Start

# Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Ethernet Switch

The device's web interface provides a convenient way to modify the switch's configuration and access the built-in monitoring and network administration functions.

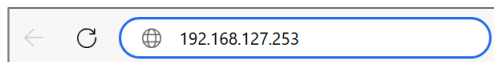
## Note

When using the device's web interface, we recommend using the following browsers and versions. Please note that Internet Explorer (IE) is not supported.

- Chrome: 2 most recent versions
- Firefox: Latest version and the Extended Support Release (ESR)
- Edge: 2 most recent major versions
- Safari: 2 most recent major versions
- iOS: 2 most recent major versions
- Android: 2 most recent major versions

Perform the following steps to access the device's web interface:


1. Make sure your PC host is connected to your device's LAN port, and is on the same subnet as your device.
2. Open a web browser and type the device's LAN IP address (**192.168.127.253** by default) into the address bar and press Enter.



## Note

The default IP address for Out of Bounds Management (OOBM) is 192.168.126.253, with a default subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

3. The web login page will open. Enter the username (**admin** or **user**) and password (the same as the Console password) and click **LOG IN** to continue.

 **Note**

The default username is admin and the default password is moxa. We strongly recommend changing the password as soon as possible to ensure the security of your device.

You may need to wait a few moments for the web interface to appear.

4. After successfully connecting to the switch, the **Device Summary** screen will automatically appear. Use the menu tree on the left side of the window to open the function pages to access each of the switch's functions.

# Using a RS-232 Console to Configure the Device

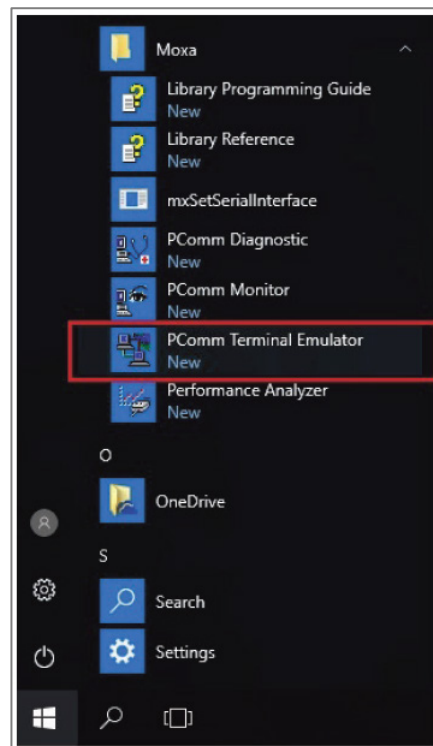
You can connect to your device's serial console port to configure settings.

Perform the following steps to connect to the serial console port:

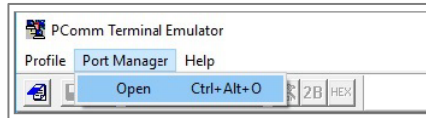
1. Prepare an RS-232 serial cable with an RJ45 interface.
2. Connect the RJ45 interface end to the console port on the device, and the other end to your computer.
3. We recommend you use PComm Terminal Emulator for serial communication. The software can be downloaded free of charge from Moxa's website.

Perform the following steps to configure your connection to access the device's console (PComm Terminal Emulator is used for these steps):

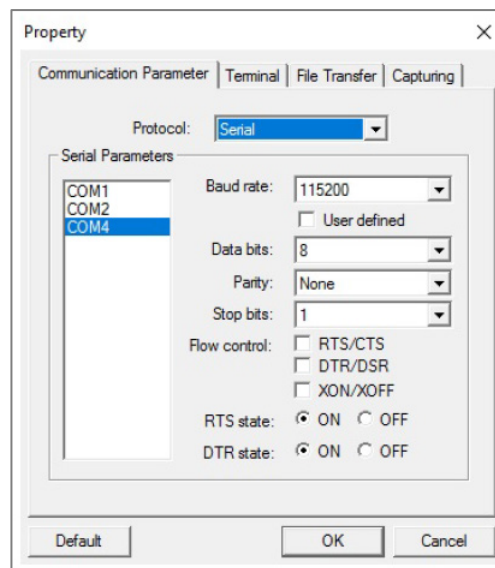
1. From the Windows desktop, click **Start > Moxa > PComm Terminal Emulator**.



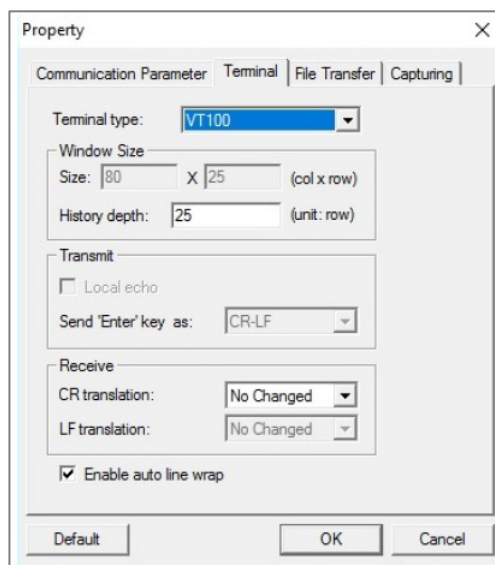
2. Select **Open** under the **Port Manager** menu to open a new connection.



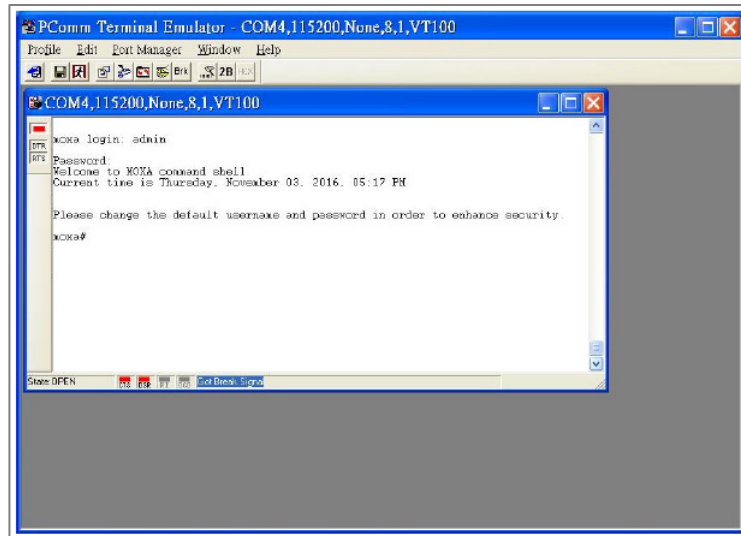
3. The **Property** window should open. In the **Communication Parameter** tab for **Ports**, select the COM port that is being used for the console connection. Set the other fields as follows: **115200** for **Baud Rate**, **8** for **Data Bits**, **None** for **Parity**, and **1** for **Stop Bits**.



4. In the **Terminal** tab, select **VT100** for **Terminal Type**, and then click **OK** to continue.



- The console will prompt you to log in. The default login name is **admin**, and the default password is **moxa**. This password will be required to access any of the consoles (web, serial, Telnet).



- After successfully connecting to the device's serial console, you can start configuring its parameters by using command line instructions. Refer to the Moxa Command Line Interface Manual for details.

**Note**

By default, the password is moxa.

Make sure you change the default password after you first log in to help keep your system secure.

# Using Telnet to Configure the Device

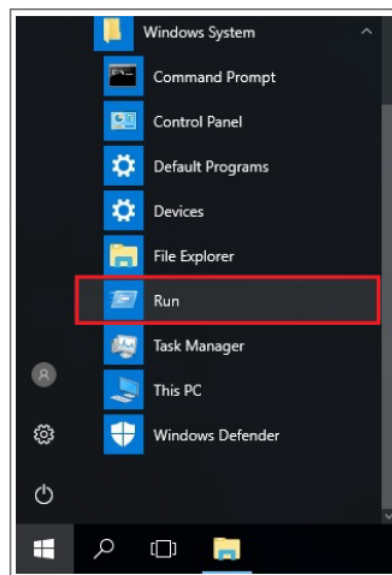
You can use Telnet to connect to the device and configure it. This requires the host and the target device to configure to be on the same logical subnet, so you may need to adjust your PC host's IP address and subnet mask. By default, the device IP address is **192.168.127.253** and the default subnet mask is **255.255.255.0**. For example, your PC's IP address must be set to 192.168.xxx.xxx if the subnet mask is 255.255.0.0, or to 192.168.127.xxx if the subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

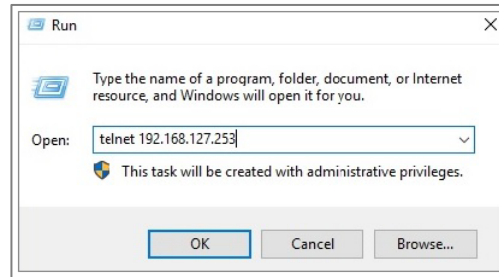
## Note

When connecting to the device using Telnet or its web interface, first connect one of the device's Ethernet ports to your Ethernet LAN, or directly to your PC's Ethernet port. You can use either a straight-through or cross-over Ethernet cable.

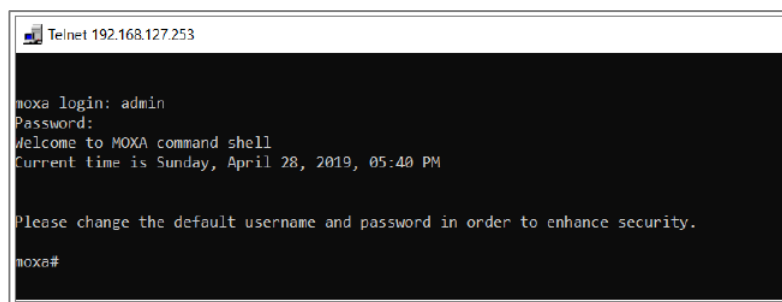
After making sure that the device is connected to the same LAN and logical subnet as your PC, perform these steps to connect to your device:

1. Click **Start > Run** from the Windows Start menu, then enter telnet followed by the device's IP address. You can also issue the Telnet command from a DOS prompt.





2. The Telnet console will prompt you to log in. The default login name is **admin**, and the default password is **moxa**. This password will be required to access any of the consoles (web, serial, Telnet).



3. After successfully logging in, you can start configuring the switch parameters by using command line instructions. Refer to the **Moxa Command Line Interface Manual**.

**Note**

By default, the password assigned to the Moxa switch is moxa.

Make sure you change the default password after you first log in to help keep your system secure.

## Chapter 3

---

# UI Reference

# UI Reference Overview

This section provides you with a quick reference to the different settings and options of your device.

To help you understand how to use the user interface, the following sections are included:

- The MRX User Interface
- Options Menu

The rest of this section follows the order of the menu areas in the user interface:

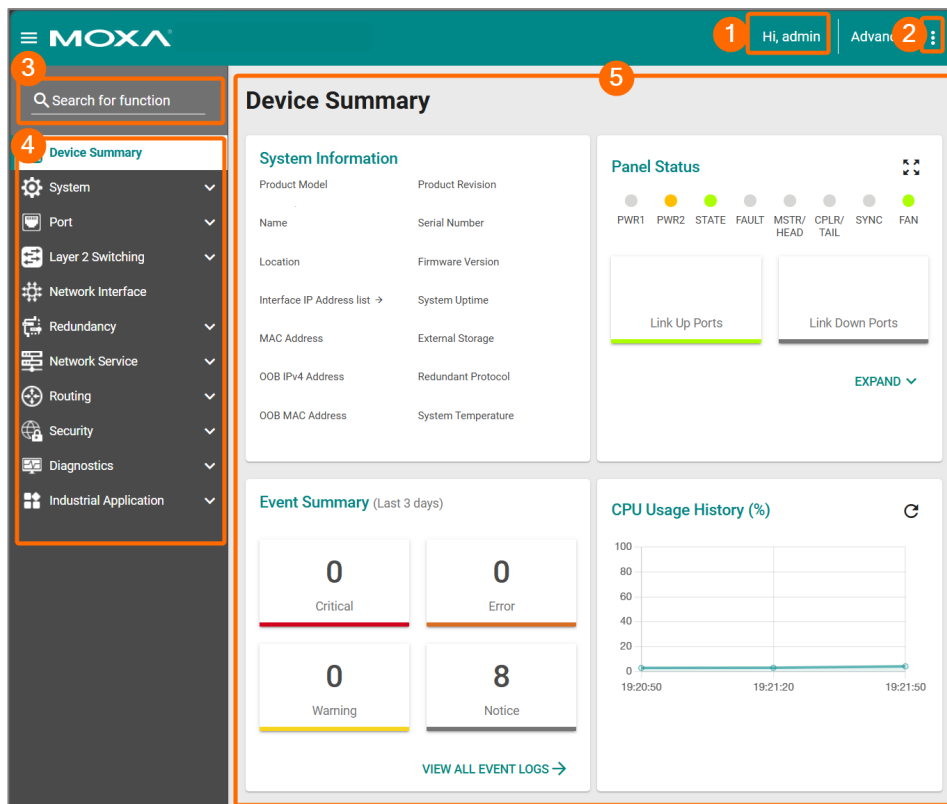
- Device Summary
- System
- Port
- Layer 2 Switching
- Network Interface
- Redundancy
- Network Service
- Routing
- Security
- Diagnostics
- Industrial Application

# The MRX User Interface

Moxa's managed switches offer a user-friendly web interface for easy configuration, reducing system maintenance and configuration effort.

This section describes how the web interface is laid out to make it easier for you to find and access the different function pages.

Here is an overview of the MRX user interface:

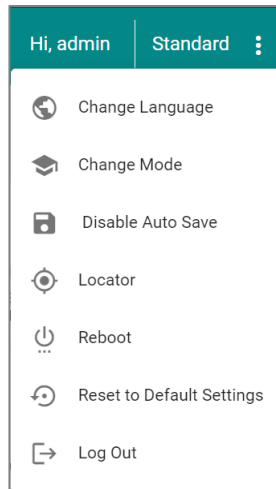


1. **Login Name:** Shows the name of the currently logged in user.
2. **Configuration Mode:** Shows which configuration mode is being used:
  - **Standard Mode:** Some features and parameters will be hidden to make configuration simpler (enabled by default).
  - **Advanced Mode:** More features and parameters will be shown to allow for more detailed configuration.
3. **Search Bar:** Type in a function name to filter to the function menu.

4. **Function Menu:** All functions of the switch are shown here. Click the function you want to view or configure.
5. **Device Summary:** Shows device information and settings for the selected function.

# Options Menu

Clicking the **Options** ( ⋮ ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page will open the options menu.



## Options Menu - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Change Language</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W
<b>Change Mode: Standard/Advanced Mode</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W
<b>Disable Auto Save</b>	R/W	R/W	-
<b>Locator</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Reboot</b>	R/W	R/W	-
<b>Reset to Default Settings</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Log Out</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W

## Change Language

To change the language of the interface, click the **Options** ( ⋮ ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Change Language**.

## Change Mode


There are two configuration modes available for users: **Standard Mode** and **Advanced Mode**.

- In **Standard Mode**, some of the features/parameters will be hidden to make it easier to perform configurations. This is the default setting.
- In **Advanced Mode**, advanced features/parameters will be available for users to adjust these settings.

To switch between modes, click the **Options** ( ⋮ ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Change Mode**.

## Disable/Enable Auto Save

Auto Save allows users to save all changes to the device's running configuration to the startup configuration immediately and automatically, so all changes will persist even after the device has restarted. Refer to [Configuration Types](#) for more information about the different configurations your device uses.

 **Note**

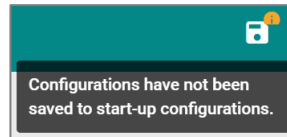
Auto Save is enabled by default.


To disable Auto Save, click the **Options** ( ⋮ ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Disable Auto Save**.

To save configuration changes to the startup configuration, click the **Save** (  ) icon.

### **Note**


When auto save is disabled, if changes have not been saved and the device is restarted, all changes will be lost and the device will revert to its startup configuration.

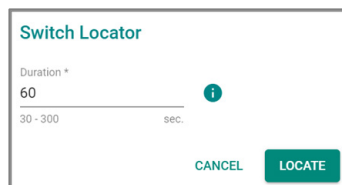


To re-enable Auto Save, click the **Options** (  ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Enable Auto Save**.

## Locator

The Locator feature will cause the LED indicators on the device to flash, making it easier to locate and identify the specific device when installed at a field site.


To trigger the device locator, click the **Options** (  ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Locator**. Select how long in seconds the LEDs should flash for, then click **LOCATE**.



## Reboot

To manually reboot the device, click the **Options** (  ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Reboot**.

## Reset to Default Settings

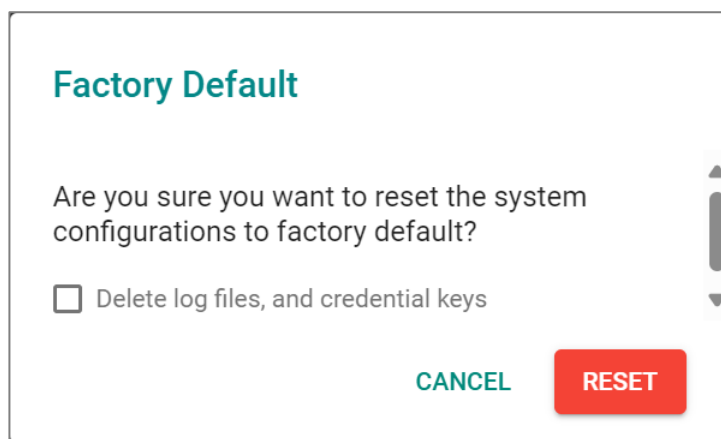
To reset the device to its default settings, click the **Options** (  ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Reset to Default Settings**.

If you want to delete all event logs and the certificate database, check the **Delete log files and credential keys** option. This will delete all information on the device and reset everything to its factory default value.


Click **RESET** to reset your device to the default settings.

**▲ Warning**

When resetting your device to the factory default settings, all your current configuration settings will be permanently deleted.



## Log Out

To log out of the device, click the **Options** (  ) icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Log Out**.

# Device Summary

## Menu Path: Device Summary

This page lets you see the current status of your device through a variety of display panels.

## System Information

This display shows basic information about your device and its current status.

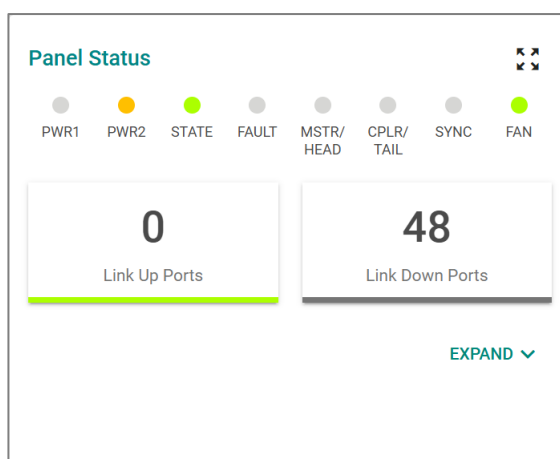
System Information	
Product Model	Product Revision
<b>MRX-Q4064-L3-16XGS</b>	<b>V0.0.0</b>
Name	Serial Number
<b>moxa</b>	<b>MOXA00000000</b>
Location	Firmware Version
---	<b>v2.0 Build 2025_1027_1642</b>
Interface IP Address list →	System Uptime
<b>192.168.127.253</b>	<b>10d22h36m31s</b>
MAC Address	External Storage
<b>00:90:E8:01:02:03</b>	---
OOB IPv4 Address	Redundant Protocol
<b>10.123.33.53</b>	---
OOB MAC Address	System Temperature
<b>00:90:E8:01:02:44</b>	<b>32.00°C/ 89.60°F</b>

UI Setting	Description
<b>Product Model</b>	Shows the product model of the device.
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the device. Refer to System > System Management > Information Settings for more information.
<b>Location</b>	Shows the location of the device. Refer to System > System Management > Information Settings for more information.
<b>Interface IP Address List</b>	Shows the IP address of the device's interface. Click on the arrow to go to the <a href="#">Network Interface</a> page.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address of the device.
<b>OOB IPv4 Address</b>	Shows the Out of Bounds Management IPv4 address of the device.

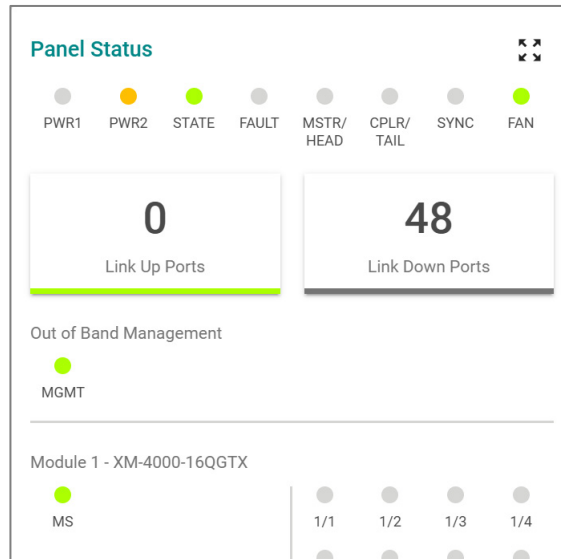
UI Setting	Description
<b>OOB MAC Address</b>	Shows the Out of Bounds Management MAC address of the device.
<b>Product Revision</b>	Shows the product revision of the device.
<b>Serial Number</b>	Shows the serial number of your device.
<b>Firmware Version</b>	Shows the firmware version of your device.
<b>External Storage</b>	Shows the external storage device currently connected to your device, if applicable.
<b>System Uptime</b>	Shows the amount of time your device has been continuously running for.
<b>Redundant Protocol</b>	Shows the current redundancy protocol for this switch.
<b>System Temperature</b>	Shows the current system temperature of your device.

## Panel Status

This display reflects the current status of the physical LEDs on your device, and shows how many ports currently have a link up or link down status. Grey is used to indicate an LED is off. For more information about status LEDs and their behavior, please refer to the QIG.



Click **EXPAND** to view more detailed information, or click **COLLAPSE** to return to the compact view.



## Panel View

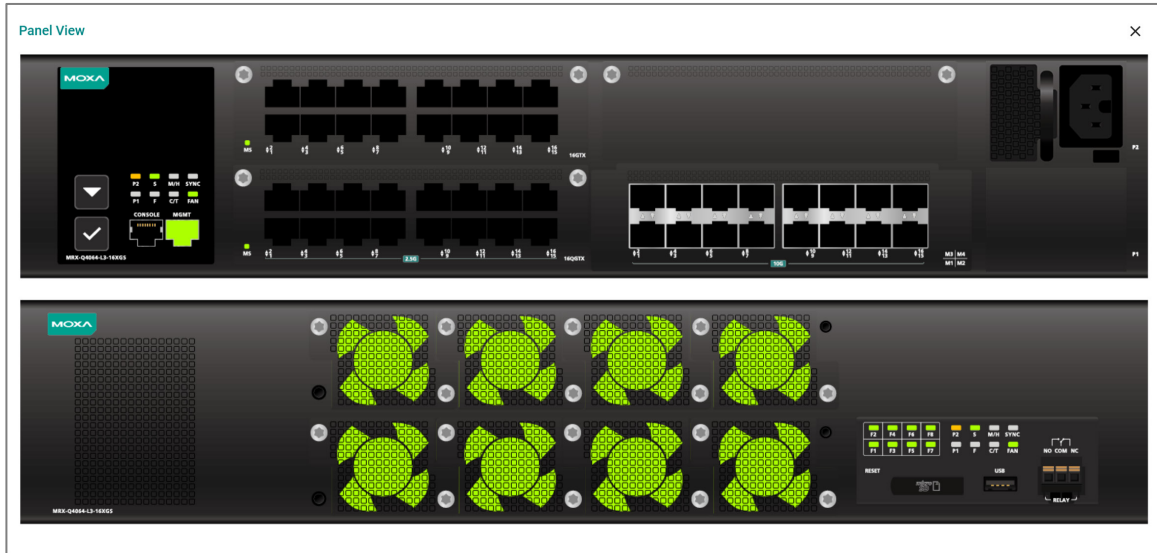
By clicking the **Expand** (↔) icon in **Panel Status**, you can see a visual representation of your device's ports.

Green ports have an active link. You can move your cursor over a port to show a mouseover with more information about that port.

Click the **Close** (✕) icon to close the **Panel View** and show **Panel Status** again.

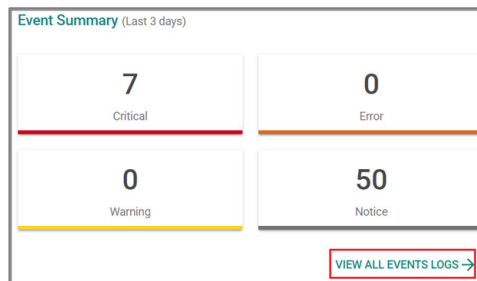
**Note**

The Panel View figure may vary depending on the device and the modules installed in it.



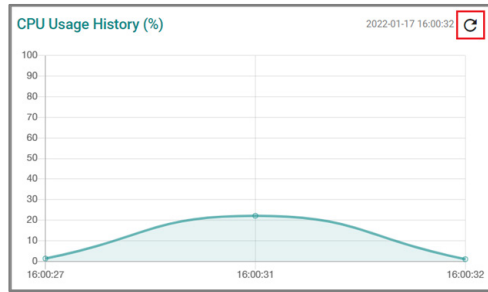
## Event Summary (Last 3 days)

This display shows an event summary for the past three days. Click **VIEW ALL EVENT LOGS** to go to the Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Logs page to view more detailed information.



## CPU Usage History (%)

This display shows the device's CPU usage shown as a percentage over time. Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to refresh the graph.



# System

## Menu Path: System

This section lets you adjust various system settings.

This section includes these pages:

- System Management
- Account Management
- Out of Band Management
- Management Interface
- Time

## System - User Privileges

Privileges to System settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows.

Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Device Summary</b>	R	R	R
<b>System Management</b>			
<b>Information Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Firmware Upgrade</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Config Backup and Restore</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Account Management</b>			
<b>User Accounts</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Online Accounts</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Password Policy</b>	R/W	-	-

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Out of Band Management</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Management Interface</b>			
<b>User Interface</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Hardware Interfaces</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>SNMP</b>	R/W	R	-
<b>LCM Interface</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>RMON1 (Only in CLI)</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Time</b>			
<b>System Time</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>NTP Server</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## System Management

### Menu Path: System > System Management

This section lets you adjust various system management related settings.

This section includes these pages:

- Information Settings
- Firmware Upgrade
- Config Backup and Restore

# Information Settings

## Menu Path: System > System Management > Information Settings

This page lets you add additional information about the device to make it easier to identify different switches that are connected to your network. When finished, click APPLY to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Device Name</b>	Specify a name for the device. This helps you differentiate between the roles or applications of different devices.	1 to 64 characters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9</li> <li>special characters: .-</li> <li>The device name cannot start with-(dash) and cannot end with-(dash).</li> </ul>	moxa
<b>Location</b>	Specify a location for the device. This helps you differentiate between different locations or sites for different devices.	0 to 255 characters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9</li> <li>special characters: ~ ! @ # \$ % ^ &amp; * ( ) { } [ ] &lt; &gt; _ + - = \ : ; , . /</li> </ul>	N/A
<b>Description</b>	Specify a description for the device. This helps you keep a more detailed description of the device.	0 to 255 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Contact Information</b>	Specify the contact information of the person in charge of the device. You can enter information such as an email address or telephone number for a person to contact if problems occur.	0 to 255 characters	N/A

## Firmware Upgrade

### Menu Path: [System](#) > [System Management](#) > [Firmware Upgrade](#)

You can upgrade the firmware through the following methods:

- Local
- TFTP
- SFTP
- USB
- microSD

#### **Note**

It is highly recommended that you back up your device's configuration before upgrading the firmware. Refer to [System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore](#) for more information.

#### **Note**

If it is necessary to verify the integrity and signature of the application when the system is running, the administrator can use the `show integrity check` CLI command.

### ▲ Warning

Upgrading the firmware should be only be done by qualified personnel, as it is possible to render the device inoperable if the upgrade is not done properly. If you are not familiar with the process, please request the assistance of qualified personnel. You can also consult with Moxa support and we will provide you with the necessary assistance.

Before performing a firmware upgrade, make sure you take the following precautions:

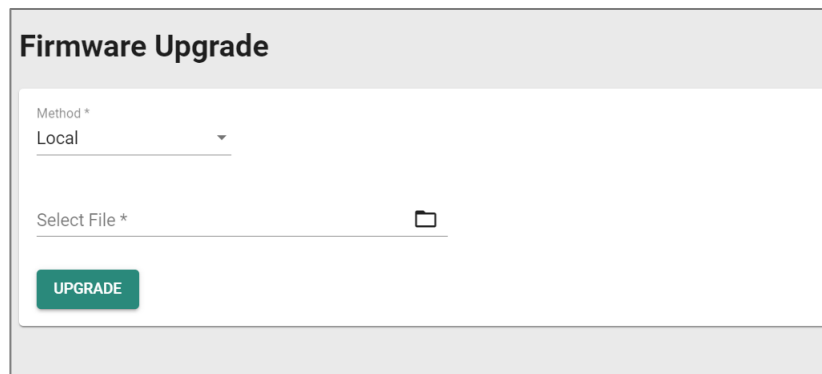
- Back up your configuration before upgrading the firmware
- Ensure that the device has power during the entire process
- Ensure that your computer stays connected to the device you are upgrading the firmware on
- Make sure the connection to the firmware source is not interrupted during the upgrade process

## Firmware Upgrade - Local

If you select **Local** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The Local method lets you upload firmware directly from local storage on the host device.

### ✎ Note

Before performing a firmware upgrade, download the updated firmware (\*.rom) file first from Moxa's website ([www.moxa.com](http://www.moxa.com)).

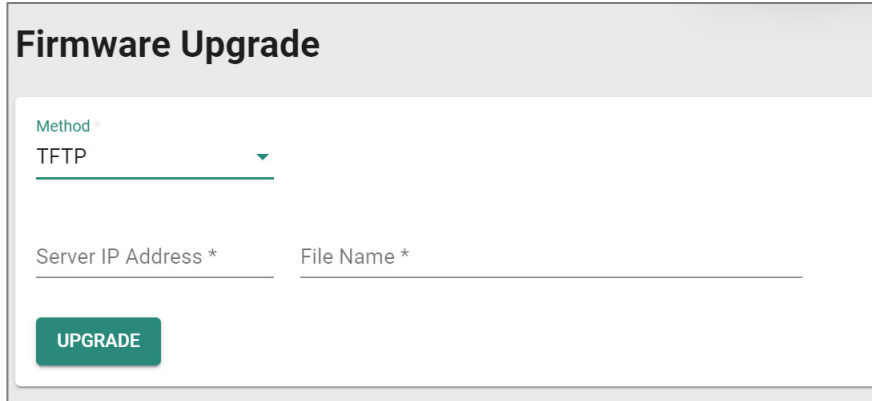


The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Firmware Upgrade". It features a dropdown menu labeled "Method \*" with "Local" selected. Below this is a "Select File \*" field with a folder icon and a green "UPGRADE" button.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select File</b>	Select the new firmware file (*.rom) to use from your computer.	Select a file from your computer	N/A

## Firmware Upgrade - TFTP

If you select **TFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The TFTP method lets you upload and install firmware stored on a remote TFTP server.

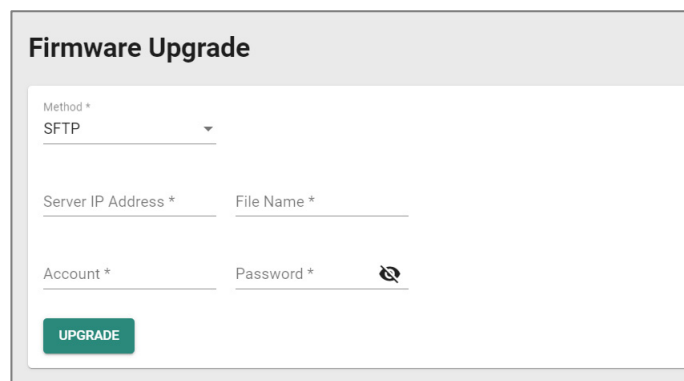


The screenshot shows a web form titled "Firmware Upgrade". At the top, there is a dropdown menu labeled "Method" with "TFTP" selected. Below this are two input fields: "Server IP Address \*" and "File Name \*". At the bottom of the form is a green button labeled "UPGRADE".

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server where the new firmware file (*.rom) is located.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify the filename of the new firmware.	File name	N/A

## Firmware Upgrade - SFTP

If you select **SFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SFTP method lets you upload and install firmware stored on a remote SFTP server.



The screenshot shows a web form titled "Firmware Upgrade". At the top, there is a dropdown menu labeled "Method" with "SFTP" selected. Below this are four input fields: "Server IP Address \*", "File Name \*", "Account \*", and "Password \*". The password field has a toggle icon to the right. At the bottom of the form is a green button labeled "UPGRADE".

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the SFTP server where the new firmware file (*.rom) is located.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify the filename of the new firmware.	File name can only contain A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or the symbols -._().	N/A
<b>Account</b>	Enter the SFTP server account name to use to connect to the SFTP server.	Account	N/A
<b>Password</b>	Enter the SFTP server account password to use to connect to the SFTP server.	Password	N/A

## Firmware Upgrade - USB

If you select **USB** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The USB method allows you to upgrade the firmware via Moxa's USB-based ABC-02 configuration tool.

### Note


To use this feature, USB Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.

### Firmware Upgrade

Method \*

USB ▼

---

Select File \* 

---

UPGRADE

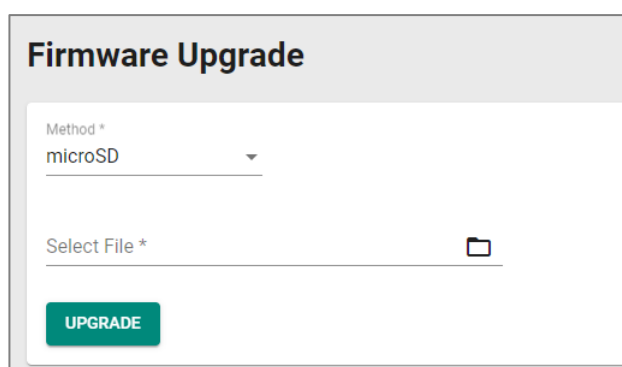
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select File</b>	Select the new firmware file (*.rom) to use from your USB device.	Select a file from the USB device	N/A

## Firmware Upgrade - microSD

If you select **microSD** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The microSD method allows you to upgrade the firmware via Moxa's USB-based ABC-03 configuration tool.

### Note

To use this feature, microSD Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interfaces.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select File</b>	Select the new firmware file (*.rom) to use from your USB device.	Select a file from the microSD device	N/A

## Configuration Backup and Restore

**Menu Path:** System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore

This page helps you back up and restore your device configuration.

This page includes these tabs:

- Backup
- Restore
- File Encryption
- File Signature

## Configuration Backup and Restore - Backup

**Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - Backup**

This section lets you create a backup of the current device configuration.

There are multiple methods of backing up the device configuration:

- Local
- TFTP
- SFTP
- USB
- microSD

### **Note**

For security reasons, we strongly recommend that you back up the system configuration to a secure storage location periodically.

## Configuration Name

You can specify a configuration name to easily identify the configuration during backup or restore.

### **Note**

The configuration name alone cannot ensure the integrity and consistency of the configuration file. You can have multiple backups with the same configuration name, but the settings in the configuration files may be different.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Configuration Name</b>	Specify the configuration name to use for the backup.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

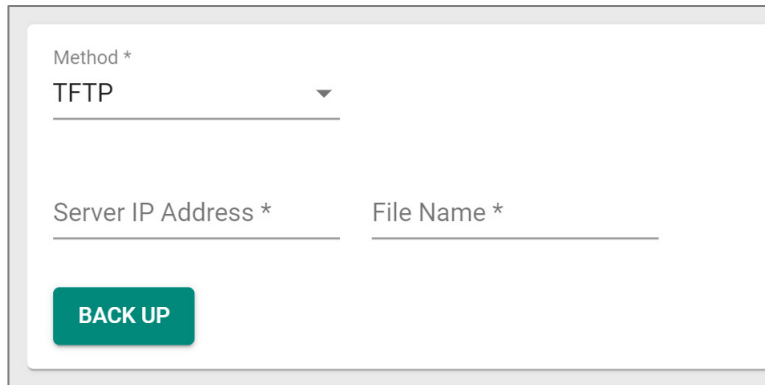
### Configuration Backup - Local

If you select **Local** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The Local method will export the configuration backup file to the local host.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select Configuration</b>	Choose to back up the running configuration or the startup configuration of the switch.	Running Configuration / Startup Configuration	Running Configuration
<b>Default Configuration</b>	Choose to back up the configuration without or with default settings.	Not Included / Included	Not Included

## Configuration Backup - TFTP

If you select **TFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The TFTP method lets you upload the configuration backup file to a remote TFTP server.



The screenshot shows a configuration form for TFTP backup. It includes a dropdown menu for 'Method \*' with 'TFTP' selected. Below are two text input fields: 'Server IP Address \*' and 'File Name \*'. A green 'BACK UP' button is positioned at the bottom left of the form area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server to upload the backup to.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify a filename for the backup, including its full path on the server. Example: /path_to_configuration_file/configuration_file.conf	N/A	N/A


**Note**  
If a path is not specified, the default folder for the server will be used.

## Configuration Backup - SFTP


If you select **SFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SFTP method lets you upload the configuration backup file to a remote SFTP server.

Method \*  
SFTP

Server IP Address \*      File Name \*

Account \*      Password \* 

**BACK UP**

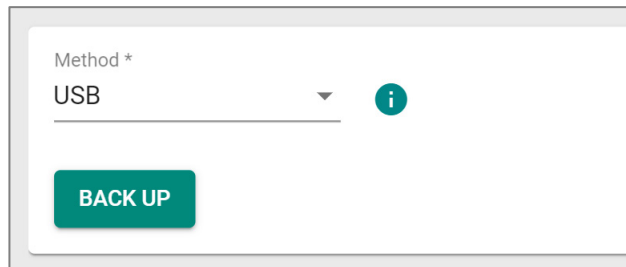
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the SFTP server to upload the backup to.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify a filename for the backup, including its full path on the server. Example: /path_to_configuration_file/configuration_file.conf	File name can only contain A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or the symbols -._().	N/A
	<p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If a path is not specified, the default folder for the server will be used.</p>		
<b>Account</b>	Enter the SFTP server account name to use to connect to the SFTP server.	N/A	N/A
<b>Password</b>	Enter the SFTP server account password to use to connect to the SFTP server.	N/A	N/A

### Configuration Backup - USB

If you select **USB** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The USB method allows you to export the configuration backup file to a Moxa ABC-02 configuration tool connected to the device. Insert a Moxa ABC-02 configuration tool into the USB port of the switch, then click **BACK UP** to back up the system configuration file.

**Note**

To use this feature, USB Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.



A screenshot of a configuration backup interface. It features a dropdown menu labeled "Method \*" with "USB" selected. To the right of the dropdown is a teal information icon. Below the dropdown is a teal button labeled "BACK UP".

### Configuration Backup - microSD

If you select **microSD** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The microSD method allows you to export the configuration backup file to a microSD card inserted into your device.

**Note**

To use this feature, microSD Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interfaces.

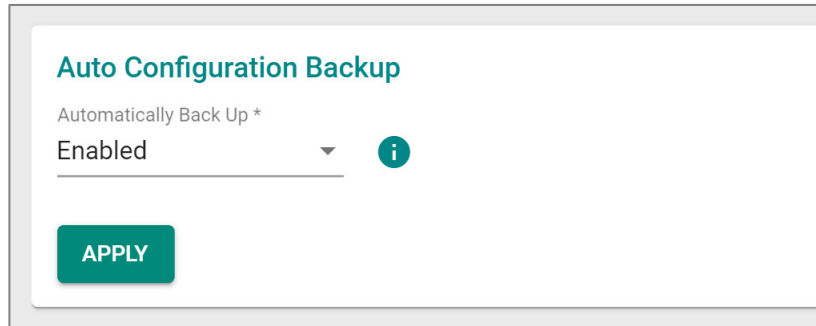


A screenshot of a configuration backup interface. It features a dropdown menu labeled "Method" with "microSD" selected. Below the dropdown is a teal button labeled "BACK UP".

### Auto Configuration Backup

Auto configuration backup lets you automatically back up the configuration file to an ABC-02 configuration tool or microSD card whenever the configuration is changed.

To enable automatic backup, select **Enabled** from the drop-down list, then click **APPLY**.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Automatically Back Up</b>	<p>When enabled, this will back up the current configuration to an inserted ABC-02 configuration tool or microSD card.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>To use an ABC-02 configuration tool, USB Function must be enabled in System &gt; Management Interface &gt; Hardware Interface.</p> <p>To use a microSD card, microSD Function must be enabled in System &gt; Management Interface &gt; Hardware Interfaces.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If both an ABC-02 configuration tool and a microSD card are inserted into the device, the ABC-02 configuration tool will be used.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

## Configuration Backup and Restore - Restore

### Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - Restore

This page lets you restore a previously backed up configuration.

There are multiple methods of restoring the device configuration:

- Local
- TFTP
- SFTP
- USB

- microSD

**Note**

To ensure that configuration files can be successfully imported, do not manually modify them.

### Configuration Restore - Local

If you select **Local** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The Local method will restore from a configuration file on the local host.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Configuration Backup and Restore". It has four tabs: "Backup", "Restore", "File Encryption", and "File Signature". The "Restore" tab is active. Below the tabs, there is a "Method \*" dropdown menu with "Local" selected. Below that is a "Select File \*" field with a folder icon. At the bottom left of the form is a green "RESTORE" button.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select File</b>	Select the configuration file to use from your computer.	Select a file from your computer	N/A

### Configuration Restore - TFTP

If you select **TFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The TFTP method lets you download and install a configuration stored on a remote TFTP server.

## Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup
Restore
File Encryption
File Signature

Method \*  
TFTP ▼

Server IP Address \*      File Name \*

RESTORE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify the file name of the configuration file to restore from, including its full path on the server. Example: /path_to_configuration_file/configuration_file.conf	Up to 54 characters, including file extension	N/A
<p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If a path is not specified, the default folder for the server will be used.</p>			

### Configuration Restore - SFTP

If you select **SFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SFTP method lets you download and install a configuration stored on a remote SFTP server.

## Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup
Restore
File Encryption
File Signature

Method \*  
SFTP

Server IP Address \*      File Name \*

Account \*      Password \*

RESTORE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the SFTP server where the configuration file is stored.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify the file name of the configuration file to restore from, including its full path on the server. Example: /path_to_configuration_file/configuration_file.conf	File name can only contain the characters A-Z, a-z, 0-9, and special characters -._().	N/A
	<p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If a path is not specified, the default folder for the server will be used.</p>		
<b>Account</b>	Enter the SFTP server account name to use to connect to the SFTP server.	Account	N/A
<b>Password</b>	Enter the SFTP server account password to use to connect to the SFTP server.	Password	N/A

### Configuration Restore - USB

If you select USB as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The USB method allows you to restore the configuration from a file via Moxa's USB-based ABC-02 configuration tool.

**Note**

To use this feature, USB Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.

### Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup | **Restore** | File Encryption | File Signature

Method \*  
USB i

Select File \* 📁

**RESTORE**

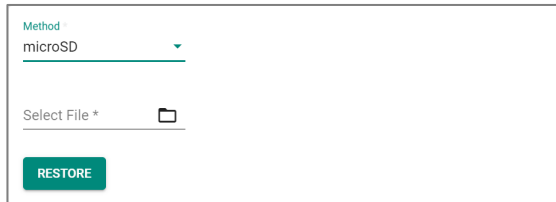
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select File</b>	Select the configuration file to use from your USB device.	Select a file from the USB device	N/A

### Configuration Restore - microSD

If you select **microSD** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The microSD method allows you to restore the configuration from a microSD card inserted into your device.

**Note**

To use this feature, microSD Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interfaces.

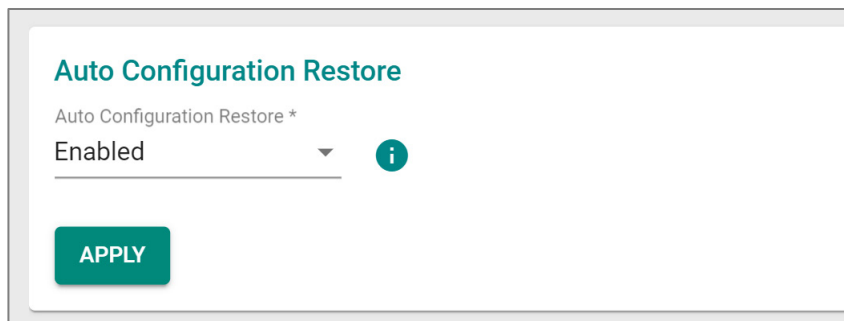


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Select File</b>	Select the configuration file to use from the microSD card.	Select a file from the microSD card	N/A

### Auto Configuration Restore

Auto configuration restore lets you restore the device's configuration from an inserted ABC-02 configuration tool or microSD card whenever the device is rebooted.

To enable automatic restore, select **Enabled** from the drop-down list, then click **APPLY**.

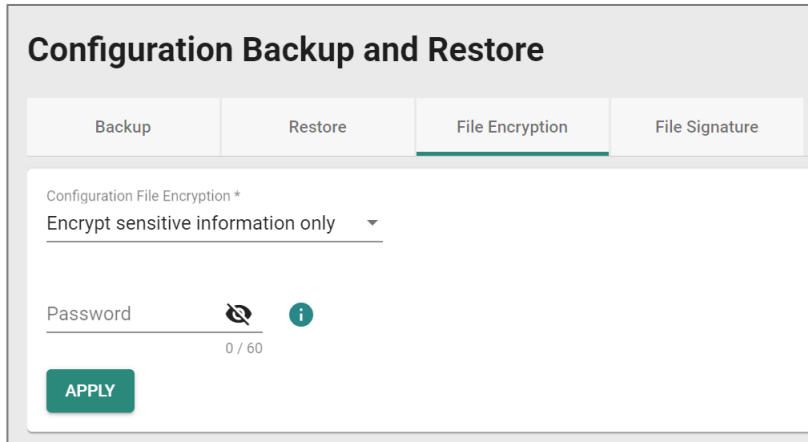


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Automatically Restore</b>		Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

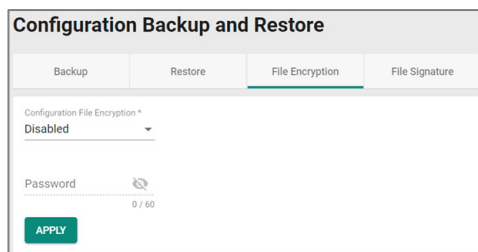
### Configuration Backup and Restore - File Encryption

**Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - File Encryption**

This page lets you configure data encryption settings for exported configuration files.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Configuration File Encryption</b>	<p>Select which file encryption mode to use.</p> <p><b>Encrypt sensitive information only:</b> Only sensitive information will be encrypted in the configuration file.</p> <p><b>Encrypt the entire file:</b> The entire configuration file will be encrypted.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Sensitive information includes passwords used for authentication and the encryption key used to encrypt data.</p> </div>	Encrypt sensitive information only / Encrypt whole file	Encrypt sensitive information only
<b>Encryption Key</b>	<p>Specify an encryption key to use for configuration files.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If no encryption key is specified, then the Moxa encryption key will be used.</p> </div>	0 to 60 characters	Blank (the Moxa encryption key will be used)



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Configuration File Encryption</b>	Enable/disable encryption of configuration files.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Password</b>	Specify the password used to encrypt configuration files.	1 to 60 characters	N/A

## File Signature

### Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - File Signature

This page lets you enable use of file signatures to help ensure the file integrity and authenticity of your configuration files.

#### Note

Before enabling file signatures, you will need to add a private/public key to the table on this page.

### 🔒 Limitations

You can add up to 1 key to use for file signatures.

## Signed Configuration

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Backup and Restore' interface with the 'File Signature' tab selected. The 'Signed Configuration' dropdown is set to 'Disabled'. Below it is an 'APPLY' button. A table below the button is empty, with columns for 'Key', 'Label', 'Algorithm', and 'Length'. The table indicates a maximum of 1 key and currently shows 0 of 0 keys.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Signed Configuration</b>	Enables or disables the use of a digital signature to check the integrity of configuration files.  <b>Note</b> To enable this feature, a private/public key must be installed first. Refer to Adding a Custom Key for more information.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## File Signature Key List

The screenshot shows the 'File Signature Key List' interface. It features a table with columns for 'Key', 'Label', 'Algorithm', and 'Length'. A single key is listed: 'Private/Certificate' with label 'Test', algorithm 'RSA', and length '2048'. The table indicates a maximum of 1 key and currently shows 1 of 1 keys.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Key</b>	Shows whether the key is a public or private key.
<b>Label</b>	Shows the label used to help identify the key.
<b>Algorithm</b>	Shows the algorithm used for the key, such as RSA or ECDSA.
<b>Length</b>	Shows the length of the key in bits.

## Adding a Custom Key

### Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - File Signature

Clicking the **Add** (🔑) icon on the **System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - File Signature** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a custom key to use for file signatures.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new key.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Label</b>	Specify a label to help describe the certificate and the key.	0 to 16 characters	N/A
<b>Certificate</b>	Select a certificate file to import from your computer.	Select a certificate file from your computer	N/A
<b>Key</b>	Select a key file to import from your computer.	Select a key file from your computer	N/A

# Account Management

## Menu Path: System > Account Management

This section lets you manage user accounts for your device. You can enable different accounts with different roles to facilitate convenient management and safe access.

This section includes these pages:

- User Accounts
- Online Accounts
- Password Policy

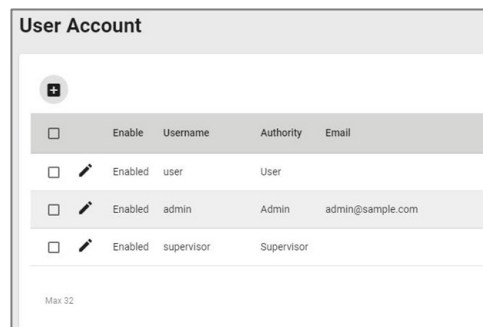
## User Accounts

### Menu Path: System > Account Management > User Accounts

This page lets you manage the user accounts for your device.

#### Note

By default, there is only one account: admin



<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable	Username	Authority	Email
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	user	User	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	admin	Admin	admin@sample.com
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	supervisor	Supervisor	

Max 92

UI Setting	Description
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether the account is enabled or disabled.
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username of the account.
<b>Authority</b>	Shows the authority level of the account.


UI Setting	Description
<b>Email</b>	Shows the email address of the account.

## User Accounts - Create a New Account

### Menu Path: System > Account Management > User Accounts


Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **System > Account Management > User Accounts** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new user account. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enable</b>	Enable or disable the user account.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username for this account.	4 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Authority</b>	<p>Specify the authority level of the account. Refer to the <a href="#">Account Privileges List</a> for a list of what read/write access privileges are granted for the different authority levels.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Admin:</b> This account has read/write access of all configuration parameters.</li> <li>• <b>Supervisor:</b> This account has read/write access for a limited set of configuration parameters.</li> <li>• <b>User:</b> This account can only view a limited set of configuration parameters.</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>In order to enhance security, we suggest you create a new account with the User authority.</p> </div>	Admin / Supervisor / User	N/A
<b>New Password</b>	Specify the new password for this account.	4 to 63 characters, additional requirements are based on settings in <b>System &gt; Account Management &gt; Password Policy</b>	N/A
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Reenter the password to confirm.	4 to 63 characters, must match <b>New Password</b>	N/A
<b>Email</b>	Specify an email address for the account (optional).	Valid email address, 0 to 63 characters	N/A

## User Accounts - Edit This Account

**Menu Path:** [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon on the **System > Account Management > User Accounts** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing user account. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This Account

Enable \*

Username  
 CHANGE PASSWORD

Minimum 4 characters 5 / 32

Authority \*

Email  
 16 / 63

CANCEL
APPLY


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enable</b>	Enable or disable the user account.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username of the account.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The username cannot be edited after creating an account.</p> </div>	N/A	N/A
<b>Authority</b>	Specify the authority level of the account. Refer to the Account Privileges List for a list of what read/write access privileges are granted for the different authority levels. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Admin:</b> This account has read/write access of all configuration parameters.</li> <li><b>Supervisor:</b> This account has read/write access for a limited set of configuration parameters.</li> <li><b>User:</b> This account can only view a limited set of configuration parameters.</li> </ul>	Admin / Supervisor / User	N/A
<b>Change Password</b>	Click <b>CHANGE PASSWORD</b> to change the account password. Refer to <a href="#">Edit the Account Password</a> for more information.	N/A	N/A
<b>Email</b>	Specify an email address for the account (optional).	Valid email address, 0 to 63 characters	N/A


## Edit the Account Password

Clicking **CHANGE PASSWORD** in the **Edit This Account** dialog will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the password for an account. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.


**Edit the Account Password**

Username  
Test  
Minimum 4 characters 4 / 32

New Password \*   
Minimum 4 characters 0 / 63

Confirm Password \*   
Minimum 4 characters 0 / 63

BACK APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username of the account. <div><p> <b>Note</b> The username cannot be edited after creating an account.</p></div>	N/A	N/A
<b>New Password</b>	Specify the new password for this account.	4 to 63 characters, additional requirements are based on settings in <b>System &gt; Account Management &gt; Password Policy</b>	N/A
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Reenter the password to confirm.	4 to 63 characters, must match <b>New Password</b>	N/A

## User Accounts - Delete Account

**Menu Path: System > Account Management > User Accounts**


You can delete an account by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.

User Account				
Enable	Username	Authority	Email	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	user	User		
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	Admin	admin@sample.com	
<input type="checkbox"/>	supervisor	Supervisor		

## Online Accounts

**Menu Path: System > Account Management > Online Accounts**

This page lets you view a list of connected user and also lets you disconnect users.

Online Accounts					
Username	Authority	IP Address	Interface	Idle Time (sec.)	
 admin	Admin	192.168.127.254	HTTP(S)	0	

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username of the online account.
<b>Authority</b>	Shows the authority level of the online account.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the online account.
<b>Interface</b>	Shows the interface that the online account is using.
<b>Idle Time (sec.)</b>	Show the idle time in seconds for the online account.

## Online Accounts - Remove This Online Account

**Menu Path: System > Account Management > Online Accounts**

You can disconnect a user by clicking its **Remove** () icon. Click **REMOVE** to save your changes and remove the online account.

# Password Policy

**Menu Path:** System > Account Management > Password Policy

This page lets you create a robust password policy to safeguard your system against hackers. By enforcing minimum length and complexity requirements, you can empower users to choose strong passwords that are difficult to crack. Additionally, you can set a maximum password lifetime to ensure regular password changes, further enhancing security. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Note

To improve the security of your device and network, we recommend that you:

- Set the Minimum Length for passwords to 16
- Enable the Password complexity strength check and enable all the requirements
- Set a Maximum Password Lifetime to ensure that users change their password regularly

Minimum Password Length \*

4

4 - 63

**Password Complexity Strength Check**

Must contain at least one digit (0-9)

Must contain at least one uppercase letter (A-Z)

Must contain at least one lowercase letter (a-z)

Must contain at least one special character ({}[]()|:;~!@#%&^\*~\_+&#x27;=,.)


Maximum Password Lifetime \*

0

0 - 365 day

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Minimum Password Length</b>	Specify the minimum required password length.	4 to 16 characters	4

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Password Complexity Strength Check</b>	<p>Select the complexity requirements that will apply to new passwords.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>New requirements will only apply when creating or changing a password. They will not apply to existing passwords.</p> </div>	Must contain at least one digit (0-9) / Must contain at least one uppercase letter (A-Z) / Must contain at least one lowercase letter (a-z) Must contain at least one special character ({ } [ ] ( )   : ; ~ ! @ # % ^ * - _ + = , .)	N/A
<b>Maximum Password Lifetime</b>	<p>Specify how long in days passwords will be valid for. When the password expires, the system will require the user to change their password.</p> <p>If this is set to 0, passwords will not expire.</p>	0 to 365 days	0

## About Out of Band Management

Out of band management (OOBM) provides an out-of-band port to allow users to access device management, even during high in-band traffic loads. Users can access the device management through SSH, Telnet, HTTP, HTTPS, or SNMP v1/v2c/v3.

 **Note**

The default IP address for OOBM is 192.168.126.253, with a default subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

## How Out of Band Management Works

Moxa managed switches offer multiple ways to connect for remote management and configuration: in-band network interfaces or out-of-band network interfaces.

## In Band

In-band management utilizes line module ports for network communication, potentially impacting transmitting traffic or user data. During network downtime or congestion, users may be unable to connect to the device.

## Out of Band

Out-of-band management (OOBM) utilizes dedicated ports to manage the switch independently of in-band traffic or network congestion. Unlike USB and serial console management, OOBM can be accessed using a standard RJ45 connector without requiring additional cable types, facilitating access even during network downtime. This feature separates the management and user data planes, preventing traffic forwarding between in-band and out-of-band interfaces.

## Out of Band Management

**Menu Path: System > Out of Band Management**

This section lets you configure Out of Band Management for your device.

### Out of Band Management Status

#### Interface Information

Admin Status	Link Status	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX
Enabled	1G, Full (Auto)	Disabled	MDI (Auto)

#### IP Status

Get IP From  
DHCP

IP Address	Subnet Mask
10.123.33.53	255.255.255.0

### Interface Information

UI Setting	Description
<b>Admin Status</b>	Shows the admin status of the device's OOBM interface.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Link Status</b>	Shows the link status of the device's OOBM interface.
<b>Flow Control</b>	Shows whether flow control is enabled for the device's OOBM interface.
<b>MDI/MDIX</b>	Shows the MDI/MDIX status of the device's OOBM interface.

## IP Status

UI Setting	Description
<b>Get IP From</b>	Shows how the OOBM IP address is specified.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the OOBM interface.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Shows the subnet mask of the OOBM interface.

## Out of Band Management Settings

Get IP From ▼

Manual


---

IP Address \* Subnet Mask \*

192.168.126.253 24 (255.255.255.0) ▼

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Get IP From</b>	Select whether to determine the OOBM IP by using DHCP, or by manually specifying it.	DHCP / Manual	DHCP

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>IP Address</b> (If IP Address is Manual)	Specify the OOBM IP address to use.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The OOBM IP address and subnet mask must be different from the in-band interface's IP address and subnet mask.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	192.168.126.253
<b>Subnet Mask</b> (If IP Address is Manual)	Specify the OOBM subnet mask to use.	Valid subnet mask	255.255.255.0

## Management Interface

### Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#)

This section lets you configure the interfaces used to manage the device.

This section includes these pages:

- User Interface
- Hardware Interfaces
- SNMP
- LCM Interface

## User Interface

### Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [User Interface](#)

This page lets you configure which interfaces can be used to access the device. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

 **Note**



For security reasons, users should access the device using secure HTTPS and SSH interfaces.


### User Interface

HTTP *	HTTP - TCP Port *	
Enabled	80	
	80, 1024 - 65535	
HTTPS *	HTTPS - TCP Port *	
Enabled	443	
	443, 1024 - 65535	
Telnet *	Telnet - TCP Port *	
Disabled	23	
	23, 1024 - 65535	
SSH *	SSH - TCP Port *	
Enabled	22	
	22, 1024 - 65535	
SNMP *	SNMP - UDP Port *	
Disabled	161	
	161, 1024 - 65535	
Moxa Service *	Moxa Service (Encrypted) - TCP Port	Moxa Service (Encrypted) - UDP Port
Enabled	443	40404
	1 - 65535	1 - 65535
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for HTTP+HTTPS *		
	5	
	1 - 10	
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for Telnet+SSH *		
	1	
	1 - 5	

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>HTTP</b>	Enable or disable HTTP connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>HTTP - TCP Port</b>	Specify the TCP port to use for HTTP connections.	80, 1024 to 65535	80

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>HTTPS</b>	<p>Enable or disable HTTPS connections.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The administrator can manually import a self-signed certificate (in .p12 format) for web server (HTTPS) services. However, the administrator should check the root certificate and validity of the signature before importing, according to the organization's security procedures and requirements. After importing a certificate, the administrator should check if the certificate has been revoked and if so, the certificate must be replaced. When a browser verifies the signature and accesses the device, it will return a subject name which the administrator can use to confirm the connected device is authorized.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 20px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The encryption algorithm of keys should be selected based on internationally recognized and proven security practices and recommendations.</p> <p>The lifetime of certificates generated for web server (HTTPS) services should be short and in accordance with the organization's security procedures and requirements.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>HTTPS - TCP Port</b>	Specify the TCP port to use for HTTPS connections.	443, 1024 to 65535	443
<b>Telnet</b>	Enable or disable Telnet connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Telnet - TCP Port</b>	Specify the TCP port to use for Telnet connections.	23, 1024 to 65535	23
<b>SSH</b>	Enable or disable SSH connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>SSH - TCP Port</b>	Specify the TCP port to use for SSH connections.	22, 1024 to 65535	22
<b>SNMP</b>	Enable or disable SNMP connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>SNMP - UDP Port</b>	Specify the UDP port to use for SNMP connections.	161, 1024 - 65535	161

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MOXA Service</b>	Enable or disable Moxa Service connectivity. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> Moxa Service is only used for Moxa network management software, and is only available for user accounts with admin privileges.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Moxa Service (Encrypted) - TCP Port</b>	Shows the TCP port used for Moxa Service. This setting cannot be changed.	N/A	443
<b>Moxa Service (Encrypted) - UDP Port</b>	Shows the UDP port used for Moxa Service. This setting cannot be changed.	N/A	40404
<b>Maximum Number of Login Sessions for HTTP+HTTPS</b>	Specify the maximum combined number of users that can be logged in using HTTP and HTTPS.	1 to 10	5
<b>Maximum Number of Login Sessions for Telnet+SSH</b>	Specify the maximum combined number of users that can be logged in using Telnet and SSH.	1 to 5	1

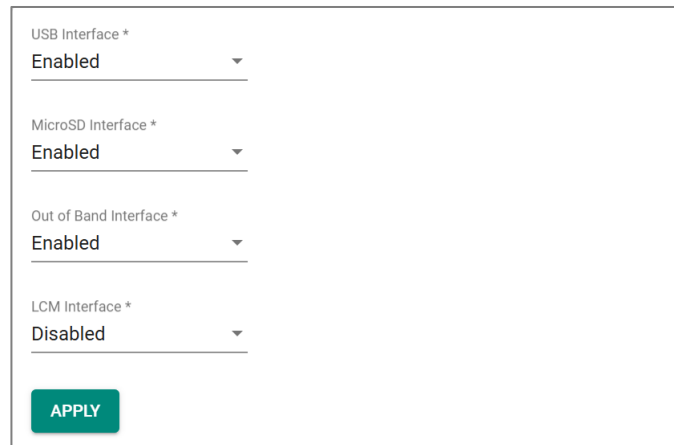
## Hardware Interfaces

**Menu Path:** [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [Hardware Interfaces](#)

This page lets you enable or disable the USB interface on the device for use with an ABC-02 backup configurator tool.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## Hardware Interfaces Settings



The screenshot shows a configuration window with four dropdown menus and an 'APPLY' button. The settings are as follows:

Interface	Status
USB Interface *	Enabled
MicroSD Interface *	Enabled
Out of Band Interface *	Enabled
LCM Interface *	Disabled

At the bottom of the window is a green button labeled 'APPLY'.

## Configuring Simple Network Management Protocol

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) be used to manage and monitor network devices.

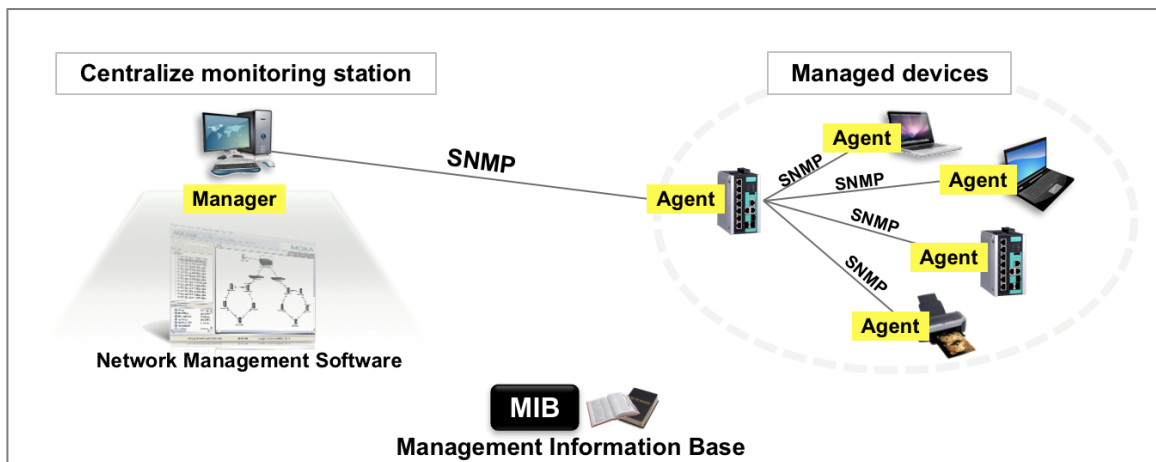
It is an application-layer protocol that allows administrators to manage network performance, diagnose network problems, and gather information about network devices such as routers, switches, servers, printers, and other network equipment. SNMP works by using agents installed on network devices, which provide information to a central management system known as an SNMP manager. The manager sends requests to the agent to retrieve information about the device, such as CPU utilization, memory usage, network traffic, and other metrics.

### About SNMP

An SNMP deployment consists of Managers, Agents, and Management Information Bases (MIBs).

- **Management Information Base (MIB):** A database of information about network devices and their performance metrics. The MIB is organized hierarchically and uses a tree-like structure.
- **SNMP Manager:** The central management system that monitors and manages network devices. It sends requests to the SNMP agents to gather information and configure network devices.

- **SNMP Agent:** A software module installed on network devices that provides information about the device to the SNMP manager. The agent responds to requests from the manager and sends notifications to the manager when certain events occur, such as a device failure.



SNMP agents expose management data on the managed systems as variables. The protocol also permits active management tasks, such as configuration changes, through remote modification of these variables. The variables accessible via SNMP are organized in hierarchies. SNMP itself does not define which variables a managed system should offer. Rather, SNMP uses an extensible design that allows applications to define their own hierarchies. These hierarchies are described as a management information base (MIB). MIBs describe the structure of the management data of a device subsystem; they use a hierarchical namespace containing object identifiers (OID). Each OID identifies a variable that can be read or set via SNMP.

## Creating an SNMP Account


You must configure an SNMP account on each of your devices to manage them.

Some account settings are contingent on SNMP account settings. Protocol versions earlier than v3 do not support authentication or encryption, and require shared community keys. Go to **System > Management Interface > SNMP**, click **General**, and choose an SNMP Version. For insecure versions, also specify community strings.

**Note**

SNMP versions earlier than v3 do not support authentication or encryption, and provide no security. It is strongly recommended to choose V3 Only unless compatibility absolutely requires earlier versions and security risks have been thoroughly evaluated.


To configure SNMP accounts:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **System > Management Interface > SNMP**, and then click **SNMP Account**.
3. Click  **[Add]**.



The Create an SNMP Account screen appears.

4. Specify all of the following, and then click **Create**:

Option	Value
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username for the account with up to 32 characters
<b>Authority</b>	Choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Read/Write</b></li><li>• <b>Read</b></li></ul>
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>None</b></li><li>• <b>MD5</b></li><li>• <b>SHA</b></li><li>• <b>SHA-256</b></li><li>• <b>SHA-512</b></li></ul> <div><p><b>Note</b> Authentication requires SNMP v3.</p></div>
<b>Authentication Password</b>	If an authentication type has been specified, specify a password for the account between 8 and 64 characters long.

Option	Value
<b>Encryption Key</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disabled</b></li> <li>• <b>DES</b></li> <li>• <b>AES</b></li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> Encryption requires SNMP v3.</p> </div> <p>If an encryption method has been chosen, specify an Encryption Key between 8 and 64 characters long.</p>

The account appears in the **SNMP Account** table.

You can Edit or Delete from the list by clicking the corresponding  **[Edit]** or  **[Delete]**.

## SNMP

**Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP**

This page lets you configure SNMP settings for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- SNMP Account

### SNMP - General

**Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP - General**

This page lets you specify the SNMP versions used to manage your device.

**SNMP**

General | **SNMP Account**

SNMP Version \*  
V1, V2c

Read Community \*  
public  
Minimum 4 characters 6 / 32

Read/Write Community \*  
private  
Minimum 4 characters 7 / 32

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>SNMP Version</b>	Specify the SNMP protocol version used to manage your device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>V1, V2c, V3:</b> Enable SNMP V1, V2c, and V3.</li> <li><b>V1, V2c:</b> Enable SNMP V1 and V2c only.</li> <li><b>V3 only:</b> Enable SNMP V3 only.</li> </ul>	V1, V2c, V3 / V1, V2c / V3 only	V1, V2C / V3 only
<b>Read Community</b>	Specify a string name for the SNMP Read Community.	4 to 32 characters	public
<b>Read/Write Community</b>	Specify a string name for the SNMP Read/Write Community.	4 to 32 characters	private

## SNMP Account

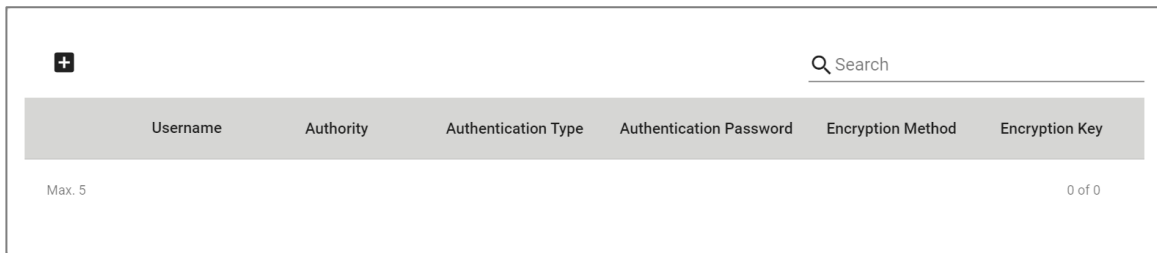
### Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [SNMP - SNMP Account](#)

This page lets you configure the SNMP management accounts for the device. SNMP management accounts are provided for Admin and User-level authority.

### Limitations

You can create up to 5 SNMP accounts.

## SNMP Account List



Username	Authority	Authentication Type	Authentication Password	Encryption Method	Encryption Key
Max. 5					0 of 0

UI Setting	Description
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username of the SNMP account.
<b>Authority</b>	Shows the authority level of the management account.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Shows the authentication type used for the account.
<b>Authentication Password</b>	Shows ***** if there is an authentication password for the account.
<b>Encryption Method</b>	Shows the encryption method used for the account.
<b>Encryption Key</b>	Shows ***** if there is an encryption key for the account.

## Creating an SNMP Account

**Menu Path:** [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [SNMP - SNMP Account](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **System > Management Interface > SNMP - SNMP Account** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an SNMP account.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

### Create an SNMP Account

Username \*  
Minimum 4 characters 0 / 32

Authority \*  
 Read/Write

Authentication Type \*  
 SHA-256

Authentication Password \*  
Minimum 8 characters 0 / 64

Encryption Method \*  
 AES

Encryption Key \*  
Minimum 8 characters 0 / 64

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username for the SNMP account.	1 to 32 characters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9</li> <li>Valid special characters: . _ -</li> </ul>	N/A
<b>Authority</b>	Specify the authority level of the management account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Read/Write:</b> Can read and write configuration settings</li> <li><b>Read:</b> Can only read configuration settings</li> </ul>	Read/Write / Read	Read/Write
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Specify the authentication type to use for the account.	None / MD5 / SHA / SHA-256 / SHA-512	N/A
<b>Authentication Password</b> (If Authentication Type is not None)	Specify the authentication password for the account.	8 to 64 characters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9</li> <li>Valid special characters: . , - _ + =   : ; @ ! ~ # % ^ * ( ) [ ] { }</li> </ul>	N/A
<b>Encryption Method</b> (If Authentication Type is not None)	Specify the encryption method to use for the account.	Disabled / DES / AES	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Encryption Key (If Encryption Method is not Disabled)</b>	Specify the encryption key for the account.	8 to 64 characters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9</li> <li>Valid special characters: . , - _ + =   : ; @ ! ~ # % ^ * ( ) [ ] { }</li> </ul>	N/A

## Editing an SNMP Account

### Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP - SNMP Account

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an account on the **System > Management Interface > SNMP - SNMP Account** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing account.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Click **CHANGE PASSWORD** to change the authentication password for the account.

Click **CHANGE ENCRYPTION KEY** to change the encryption key for the account.

### Edit This SNMP Account

Username \*  
maintainer  
Minimum 4 characters 10 / 32

Authority \*  
Read/Write ▼

Authentication Type \*  
SHA-256 ▼ CHANGE PASSWORD ⓘ


Encryption Method \*  
AES ▼ CHANGE ENCRYPTION KEY

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username for the SNMP account.	1 to 32 characters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Valid characters: a-z, A-Z, 0-9</li> <li>Valid special characters: . _ -</li> </ul>	N/A
<b>Authority</b>	Select the authority level of the management account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Read/Write:</b> Can read and write configuration settings</li> <li><b>Read:</b> Can only read configuration settings</li> </ul>	Read/Write / Read	Read/Write
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select the authentication type to use for the account.	None / MD5 / SHA / SHA-256 / SHA-512	N/A
<b>Encryption Method (If Authentication Type is not None)</b>	Select the encryption method to use for the account.	Disabled / DES / AES	Disabled

## Deleting an SNMP Account

**Menu Path:** [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [SNMP - SNMP Account](#)

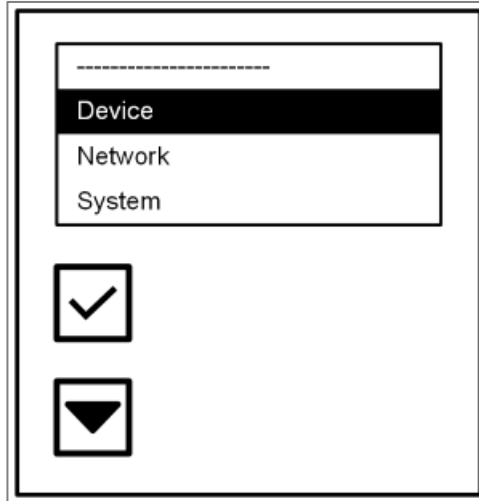
You can delete an account by clicking the **Delete** (  ) icon next to the account.

## About the LCM Interface

The device's LCD module (LCM) interface offers another way to display device information. This function allows maintainers to look at the device's display to check basic or necessary information rather than needing to connect to the web or CLI interface. Maintainers can efficiently browse through important information on the LCM interface by using physical buttons on the device.

## How the LCM Interface Works

When the LCM interface is enabled, a boot animation indicating boot status will appear when the device boots up. When the system is ready, the animation will disappear and the LCM interface will enter display mode.



The LCM can display up to 4 rows of information. If text exceeds the width of the panel, the information will scroll to the end, and then restart from the beginning.

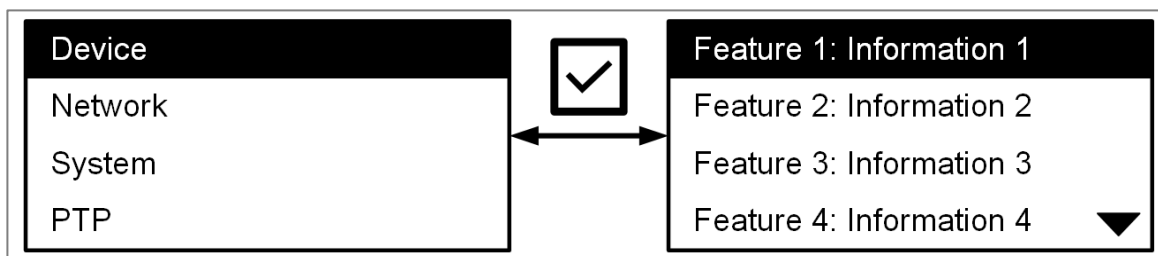
## Display Modes

The LCM interface can be configured to use Menu Mode or Info Mode.

### Menu Mode

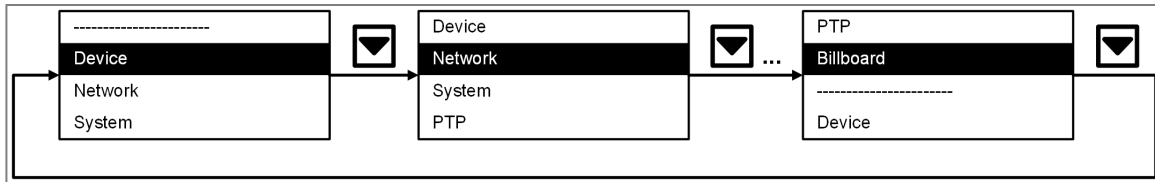
In Menu Mode, you can browse through different categories of information, and each category has various information items that can be displayed.

- When viewing categories, press the **Select** () button to view the information items for the selected category.
- When viewing information items, press the **Select** () button to return to the category list.

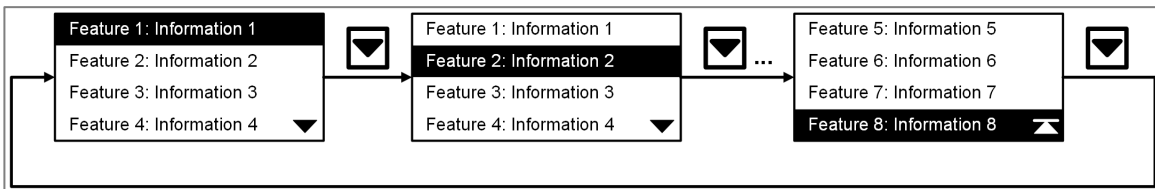


- Press the **Next** () button to move down to the next row.

- When viewing categories, continuing to press **Next** (▼) will loop through the list of categories.



- When viewing information items, the **More** (▼) icon indicates that there are additional items below. The **Last Page** (⌂) icon indicates there are no more items, and pressing **Next** (▼) when the last item is selected will return to beginning of the list.



This table summarizes what data can be displayed on the LCM interface.

Category	Item	Display Name on LCM
<b>Device</b>	Product Model	Model
	Product Revision	Rev
	Device name	Name
	Device Location	Loc
	Serial Number	SN
	Firmware Version	FW
	Firmware Buildtime	FWb
<b>Network</b>	IP Address	IP
	MAC address	MAC
	OOB IP Address	M.IP
	OOB MAC Address	M.MAC

Category	Item	Display Name on LCM
<b>System</b>	System Uptime	UpTm
	Running Redundant Protocol	RED
	Number Of Critical Events	CE#
<b>PTP</b>	PTP Synchronization Status	Sync
	PTP Grandmaster ID	GM.ID
	PTP Parent Clock ID	PC.ID
	PTP Member Ports	M.Prt
<b>Billboard</b>	(User-specified items) Refer to <a href="#">LCM Interface Settings</a> for more information.	(Depends on user-specified items)

## Info Mode

In info mode, the LCM panel will display up to 4 user-specified items. This mode can save time by displaying only necessary information without exposing other information.

## Energy Saving

In some circumstances, it is not necessary to continually run the LCM interface and display information. The Energy Saving feature can be enabled to save the power during a period of disuse by turning off the panel after 60 seconds of idle time. It can be turned on again by pressing any of the physical buttons.

### Note

To prolong the life of the LCM display, we recommend enabling Energy Saving mode.

## LCM Interface

**Menu Path: System > Management Interface > LCM Interface**

This page lets you enable and configure your device's LCM interface.

Click **Apply** to save your changes.

**Note**

To use this feature, the LCM interface must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interfaces.

Ensure to enable LCM interface at "Hardware interfaces" to activate the LCM function.

Energy Saving \*  
 Disabled

Display Mode \*  
 Menu Mode

Billboard Display Information \*  
 Selected: 4 features

**Billboard**  
 You can click and drag the features to reorder them on the billboard.

- Product Model
- Product Revision
- IP Address
- MAC Address

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Energy Saving</b>	<p>Enable or disable energy saving for the device's display. When enabled, the display will turn off after 60 seconds of inactivity. The display can be turned on again by pressing any of the LCM interface's buttons.</p> <p><b>Note</b>            To prolong the life of the LCM display, we recommend enabling Energy Saving mode.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Display Mode</b>	<p>Select which mode to use for the device's display.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Menu Mode:</b> Allows you to browse through all available items using the physical buttons on the device.</li> <li>• <b>Info Mode:</b> Shows up to 4 selected <b>Billboard Display Information</b> items on the display.</li> </ul>	Menu Mode / Info Mode	Menu Mode
<b>Billboard Display Information</b>	<p>Select what information to show on the device's display in the <b>Billboard</b> category for <b>Menu Mode</b>, or when using <b>Info Mode</b>. Up to 4 items can be selected.</p>	<p>Up to 4 items total can be selected from the following:</p> <p><b>Device:</b></p> <p>Product Model / Product Revision / Device Name / Device Location / Serial Number / Firmware Version / Firmware Buildtime</p> <p><b>Network:</b></p> <p>IP Address / MAC Address / OOB IP Address / OOB MAC Address</p> <p><b>System:</b></p> <p>System Uptime / Running Redundant Protocol / Number of Critical Events</p> <p><b>PTP:</b></p> <p>PTP Synchronization Status / PTP Grandmaster ID / PTP Parent Clock ID / PTP Member Ports</p>	Product Model, Product Revision, IP Address, MAC Address
<b>Billboard</b>	<p>Select and drag items to change the order they will appear on the device's display in the <b>Billboard</b> category for <b>Menu Mode</b>, or when using <b>Info Mode</b>.</p>	Items selected from <b>Billboard Display Information</b>	Product Model, Product Revision, IP Address, MAC Address

## Time

### Menu Path: System > Time

This page lets you configure the time related settings.

This page includes these tabs:

- System Time
- NTP Server
- Time Synchronization

## About System Time

Correct system time is required for automatic warning emails to include a time and date stamp.

### Note

Make sure to update the Current Time and Current Date after the switch has been powered off for three days or more. This is particularly important when no NTP server or Internet connection are available.

This section describes how to configure the **System Time**, **NTP Server**, and **Time Synchronization** settings for the switch. The switch has a time calibration function based on information from an NTP server or a user-specified time and date, allowing functions such as automatic warning emails to include a time and date stamp.

## Configuring System Time

To configure System Time, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **System > Time > System Time**, and then click on the **Time** tab.
3. Set **Clock Source** to **Enabled**.
4. Configure the **Date**, **Time**, and **Time Zone**. Specify **Daylight Savings** details if appropriate for your region.
5. Click **Apply** to save your settings.

## System Time

**Menu Path:** [System > Time > System Time](#)

This page lets you configure the system time.

This page includes these tabs:

- Time


- NTP Authentication

## System Time - Time

### Menu Path: System > Time > System Time - Time

This page lets you configure your device's system time.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Current Time</b>	Show the current time according to your local default settings.	N/A	N/A
<b>Clock Source</b>	Specify whether to set the time manually (Local), from an SNTP server, from an NTP server, or from a PTP master.	Local / SNTP / NTP / PTP	Local
<b>Date</b> <b>(If Clock Source is Local)</b>	Select the current date from the calendar.	Calendar	Local Date
<b>Time</b> <b>(If Clock Source is Local)</b>	Specify the current time. You can manually input the time, or you can click <b>SYNC FROM BROWSER</b> to set the time based on the time used by your web browser.	Timestamp	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Time Zone</b> (If Clock Source is Local)	Specify the time zone used for the device.	Drop-down list of time zones	UTC+00:00
<b>1st Time Server: IP Address/Domain Name</b> (If Clock Source is SNTP or NTP)	Specify the IP or domain address of the 1st SNTP/NTP server to use (e.g., 192.168.1.1, <a href="http://time.stdtime.gov.tw">time.stdtime.gov.tw</a> , or <a href="http://time.nist.gov">time.nist.gov</a> ).	Valid IP address or domain name	<a href="http://time.nist.gov">time.nist.gov</a>
<b>2nd Time Server: IP Address/Domain Name</b> (If Clock Source is SNTP or NTP)	Specify the IP or domain address of the 2nd SNTP/NTP server to use if the first SNTP/NTP server fails to connect.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
<b>Query Interval</b> (If Clock Source is SNTP)	Specify the query interval time.	Drop-down list of intervals	9 (512 sec.)
<b>Authentication</b> (If Clock Source is NTP)	Select an NTP authentication key to use, or disable authentication for the time server.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>To use authentication, you need to create an NTP authentication entry first. Refer to NTP Authentication for more information.</p> </div>	Disabled / Drop-down list of NTP key IDs	Disabled

### Daylight Saving

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Daylight Saving</b>	Enable or disable use of daylight saving time adjustment.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Offset</b>	Specify the number of hours and minutes to add during the daylight saving time period.	01:00	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Start</b> <b>Month/Week/Day/Hour/Minute</b>	Specify the start time for the daylight seaving period.	Month: Drop-down list of months  Week: 1st / 2nd / 3rd / 4th / last  Day: Drop-down list of days of the week  Hour: Drop-down list of hours  Minute: Drop-down list of minutes	Mar/last/Sun/01/00
<b>End</b> <b>Month/Week/Day/Hour/Minute</b>	Specify the end time of the daylight saving period.	Month: Drop-down list of months  Week: 1st / 2nd / 3rd / 4th / last  Day: Drop-down list of days of the week  Hour: Drop-down list of hours  Minute: Drop-down list of minutes	Oct/last/Sun/01/00

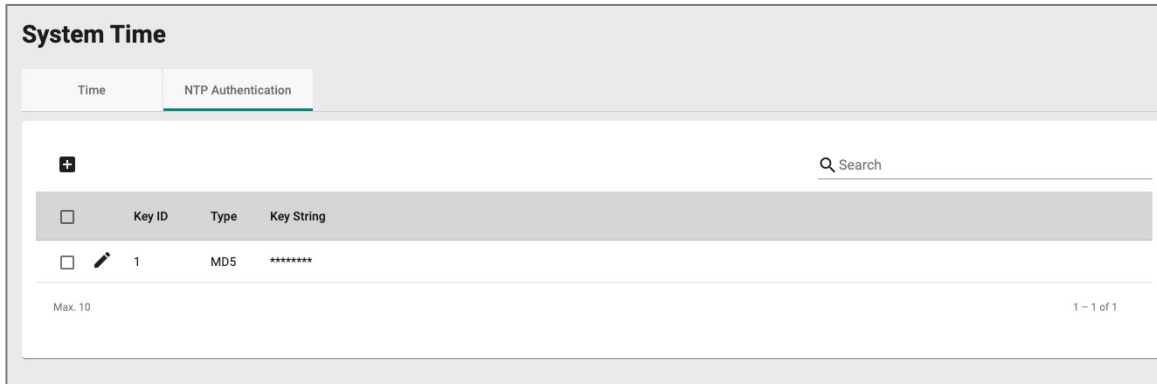
## NTP Authentication

### Menu Path: System > Time > System Time - NTP Authentication

This page lets you configure NTP authentication for when the device is acting as an NTP client. This helps ensure that received NTP responses are from the NTP server and have not been modified in transit.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 10 NTP authentication entries.



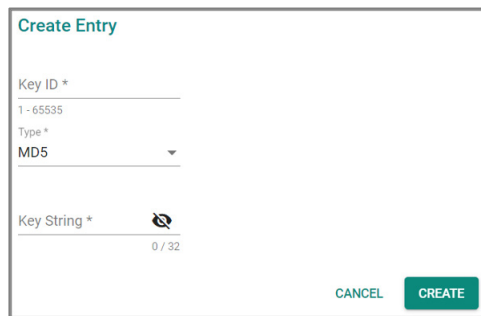
UI Setting	Description
<b>Key ID</b>	Shows the key ID for NTP authentication.
<b>Type</b>	Shows the authentication type.
<b>Key String</b>	Shows the password used for authentication.

### Creating an NTP Authentication Entry

#### Menu Path: System > Time > System Time - NTP Authentication

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **System > Time > System Time - NTP Authentication** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an NTP authentication entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Key ID</b>	Specify the Key ID to use for NTP authentication.	1 to 65535	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Type</b>	Specify the authentication type.	MD5	MD5
<b>Key String</b>	Specify the password to use for the authentication key.	0 to 32 characters	N/A

## About NTP Servers

Network Time Protocol (NTP) is used to synchronize the clocks of computers and other devices on a network, and is widely used on the Internet and in local networks to ensure accurate timekeeping. NTP operates by exchanging time information between servers and clients.

## NTP Servers In Depth

Typically, there are several hierarchical strata of NTP servers.

- **Stratum 1 servers** are directly connected to highly accurate time sources, such as atomic clocks or GPS receivers.
- **Stratum 2 servers** synchronize their time with Stratum 1 servers.
- **Client devices** synchronize their clocks with NTP servers, which helps maintain accurate time across the network.

You can configure your device to act as an NTP client to sync the system time with a specified NTP server.

You can also configure your device to act as an NTP server to provide time sync service to end devices on the network. When enabling the NTP server function, the device will answer the NTP queries sent from NTP client and provide the device's time to the client.

## NTP Server

**Menu Path: System > Time > NTP Server**

This page lets you configure your device to act as an NTP server.

### NTP Server

NTP Server \*  
Disabled ▼

Client Authentication \*  
Disabled ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>NTP Server</b>	Enable or disable the NTP server.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Client Authentication</b>	Enable or disable NTP client authentication.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## About Time Synchronization

Time synchronization aligns the clocks of different devices to the same time for fault-tolerant synchronization of real-time clocks.

**Note**

The IEEE 1588 working group now uses timeTransmitter and timeReceiver instead of "master" and "slave." This document adopts these terms.

Precision Time Protocol (PTP) is a Time Synchronization protocol designed to synchronize clocks through Ethernet networks. The accuracy for IEEE 1588 PTP v2 can be measured in microseconds or nanoseconds.

This device supports the following IEEE 1588 profiles:

- **IEEE 1588 Default 2008** - The default protocol for industrial systems. Nanosecond-level accuracy.
- **IEC 61850-9-3-2016**: A profile of IEEE 1588 designed specifically for power system applications, such as digital substations and grid automation. Mandates additional requirements to ensure compliance with other power systems. Millisecond-level accuracy.

- **IEEE C37.238-2017:** A profile of IEEE 1588 designed for broader power system applications, such as for fault logging, real-time monitoring, and wider networks. Sub-microsecond accuracy.

PTP uses several roles for different clock roles, which dictate whether the device is a source or destination of time data:

- **GrandMaster:** Primary reference clock for network, usually with a precise time source, such as an atomic clock or satellite link.
- **timeTransmitter:** Receives time information from GrandMaster and distributes correct time further downstream.
- **timeReceiver:** Receives correct time from timeTransmitter. Usually only have a single network connection.

Clock roles are used across multiple clock types.

This device supports serving as following clock types:

- **Boundary Clock:** Synchronizes its internal clock to the Grandmaster, distributes time data to downstream clocks as timeTransmitter.
- **Transparent Clock:** Corrects PTP messages to include their own delay information, then relays further downstream. Does not synchronize its internal clock. Used for maintaining multiple layers of network devices.

Intermediate clock types support two clock modes:

- **One Step:** One step synchronization sends all time sync data in a single message, reducing overhead, but may require specialized hardware that supports inline time stamping.
- **Two Step:** Two step synchronization sends Follow\_Up message to synchronize time information. This may generate additional latency, but is widely used by substations, and may be suitable for a wider range of networking devices.

## Configuring Time Synchronization

Enable and configure Time Synchronization global settings before configuring individual ports.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.

2. Go to **System > Time > Time Synchronization**, and then click on the **General** tab.
3. To enable Time Synchronization, click **Time Synchronization**, and then choose **Enable** from the drop-down menu.
4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Profile</b>	Choose the time synchronization profile to use.
<b>Clock type</b>	Choose the clock type to use: <b>Boundary Clock</b> or <b>Transparent Clock</b>
<b>Delay Mechanism</b>	<p>For <b>Profile: IEEE 1588 Default-2008</b>, choose a delay mechanism to compensate for network delay between <code>timeTransmitter</code> and <code>timeReceiver</code>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>End-to-End</b> uses central delay requests and response between <code>timeTransmitter</code> and <code>timeReceiver</code>. Assumes symmetric delays. Does not require PTP-aware networking equipment, but may have reduced performance in large or congested networks.</li> <li>• <b>Peer-to-Peer</b> calculates delay at each network node. Requires PTP-aware networking equipment, but scales reliably and can accommodate asymmetric delays.</li> </ul>
<b>Transport Mode</b>	For <b>Profile: IEEE 1588 Default-2008</b> , choose a transport mode.
<b>Priority 1</b>	For <b>Clock Type: Boundary Clock</b> , specify priority value to override the default election method. Lower values take precedence. Default: <b>128</b>
<b>Priority 2</b>	For <b>Clock Type: Boundary Clock</b> , specify a secondary priority value to serve as a tiebreaker in the event that two candidates match the default criteria. Default: <b>128</b>
<b>Domain Number</b>	Specify a domain number, which allows multiple clock systems to share the same medium. Each <b>GrandMaster</b> clock should be in its own domain, with receiving clocks configured to match. The default domain is <b>0</b> .
<b>Clock Mode</b>	Choose <b>One Step</b> or <b>Two Step</b> (default).

Option	Value
<b>Accuracy Alert</b>	Specify an accuracy alert threshold in nanoseconds. Exceeding this threshold sends an event notification. Default: <b>1000</b>
<b>Maximum Steps Removed</b>	For <b>Clock Type: Boundary Clock</b> , specify the maximum number of steps before time synchronization packets will be dropped, prompting GrandMaster re-election. Default: <b>255</b>
<b>Grandmaster ID</b>	For <b>Profile: C37.238-2017</b> and <b>Clock Type: Boundary Clock</b> , specify the ID to use if this device becomes GrandMaster. Default: <b>255</b>
<b>BMCA Best Master Clock Algorithm (Only in Advanced Mode for some models)</b>	For <b>Clock Type: Transparent Clock</b> , choose whether to <b>Enabled</b> (default) or <b>Disabled</b> the Best Master Clock Algorithm. Disabling may be preferable for sensitive applications where there is a requirement to use a specific GrandMaster.

5. Click **Apply** to save your settings.


Time Synchronization is now be enabled globally.

Continue to enable Time Synchronization on specific ports to make the feature fully operational.

## Enabling Time Synchronization on Ports

Once Time Synchronization is enabled globally, you can configure which ports will support timing messages.

Make sure you have chosen a **Profile** under the **General** tab in **System > Time > Time Synchronization**.

1. Go to **System > Time > Time Synchronization**, and then click on the **Port Settings** tab.
2. Locate the corresponding port to configure, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

3. Set **Time Synchronization** to **Enabled**.
4. For **Profile: IEEE 1588 Default-2008** selected under the **General** tab, configure the following:

Option	Description and Guidance
<b>Announce Interval</b>	Choose how often the <code>timeTransmitter</code> sends <b>Announce</b> messages to advertise itself. Lower values result in faster detection of failures but increase network traffic. Higher values reduce traffic but may slow failover detection. Default: <b>1 (2 sec.)</b>
<b>Announce Receipt Timeout</b>	Specify the number of missed <b>Announce</b> messages before assuming the <code>timeTransmitter</code> is lost and starts a re-election. Lower values detect failures quickly but may trigger unnecessary re-elections. Higher values allow more tolerance for occasional packet loss. Default: 3
<b>Sync Interval</b>	Choose how often Sync messages are sent by the <code>timeTransmitter</code> . More frequent updates improve precision but increase bandwidth usage. Less frequent updates reduce overhead but may lower accuracy. Default: <b>0 (1 sec.)</b>
<b>Delay-Request Interval</b>	Choose a Peer-to-Peer (P2P) delay measurement, which determines how often delay request messages are sent. Lower intervals provide more frequent updates for dynamic networks. Higher values reduce network load but may impact precision. Default: <b>-0 (1 sec.)</b>

- To apply your changes to more than one port, click **Copy configurations to ports**, and then select the ports to also use your settings.
- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

## Time Synchronization

### Menu Path: System > Time > Time Synchronization

This page lets you enable the time synchronization feature and view its status.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Port Settings
- Status
- Port Status

## Time Synchronization - General

**Menu Path: System > Time > Time Synchronization - General**

This page lets you select and configure a profile for time synchronization.

### Time Synchronization

General
Port Settings
Status
Port Status

Time Synchronization \*  
Disabled ▼

Profile \*  
IEEE 1588 Default-2008 ▼

Clock Type \*  
Boundary Clock ▼

Delay Mechanism \*  
End-to-End ▼

Transport Mode \*  
IEEE 802.3 Ethernet ▼

Priority 1 \*  
128

0 - 255

Priority 2 \*  
128

0 - 255

Domain Number \*  
0

0 - 255

Clock Mode \*  
Two-step ▼

Accuracy Alert \*  
1000



50 - 250000000 ns

Maximum Steps Removed \*  
255

2 - 255

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	Enable or disable time synchronization.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Profile</b>	Specify the time synchronization profile to use.	IEEE 1588 Default-2008 / IEC 61850-9-3-2016 / IEEE C37.238-2017	IEEE 1588 Default-200
<b>Clock Type</b>	Select the clock type to use.	Boundary Clock / Transparent Clock	Boundary Clock

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Delay Mechanism</b> (If Profile is IEEE 1588 Default-2008)	Select the delay mechanism to use.   <b>Note</b> For IEC 61850-9-3-2016 and IEEE C37.238-2017 profiles, Delay Mechanism is fixed to Peer-to-Peer.	End-to-End / Peer-to-Peer	End-to-End
<b>Transport Mode</b> (If Profile is IEEE 1588 Default-2008)	Select the transport mode to use.   <b>Note</b> For IEC 61850-9-3-2016 and IEEE C37.238-2017 profiles, Transport Mode is fixed to 802.3 Ethernet.	802.3 Ethernet / UDP IPv4	802.3 Ethernet
<b>Priority 1</b> (If Clock Type is Boundary Clock)	Set the priority 1 value.	0 to 255	128
<b>Priority 2</b> (If Clock Type is Boundary Clock)	Set the priority 2 value.	0 to 255	128
<b>Domain Number</b>	Set domain number value.	0 to 255	0
<b>Clock Mode</b>	Select the clock mode to use.	One Step / Two Step	Two Step
<b>Accuracy Alert</b>	Set the accuracy alert threshold in nanoseconds. When the offset is under this threshold, the synchronization status will change from syncing to locked.	50 to 250000000	1000
<b>Maximum Steps Removed</b> (If Clock Type is Boundary Clock)	Specify the maximum number of steps that can be removed.	2 to 255	255
<b>Grandmaster ID</b> (If Profile is IEEE C37.238-2017 and Clock Type is Boundary Clock)	Specify the ID to use if this device becomes the grandmaster clock.	0 to 65535	255
<b>BMCA</b> (If Clock Type is Transparent Clock)	Enable or disable use of the Best Master Clock Algorithm (BMCA) when using transparent clock.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

## Time Synchronization - Port Settings

### Menu Path: System > Time > Time Synchronization - Port Settings

This page lets you enable time synchronization and configure related parameters for each port.

If the profile's **Clock Type** is **Boundary Clock**, this table will appear.

Time Synchronization						
General		Port Settings	Status	Port Status		
IEEE 1588 Default-2008 Profile						
Q Search						
Port	Time Synchronization	Announce Interval	Announce Receipt Timeout (times) ↑	Sync Interval	Delay-Request Interval	
1/1	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	
1/2	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	
1/3	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	
1/4	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	
2/1	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	
2/2	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	
2/3	Disabled	1 (2 sec.)	3	0 (1 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows which port the entry describes.
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	Shows whether time synchronization is enabled for the port.
<b>Announce Interval</b>	Shows the interval for sending PTP announce messages for the port.
<b>Announce Receipt Timeout</b>	Shows the announce message receipt timeout value for the port.
<b>Sync Interval</b>	Shows the synchronization message transmit interval for the port.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Delay-Request Interval</b> <b>(If the profile's Delay Mechanism is End-to-End)</b>	Shows the interval for sending delay request messages for the port.
<b>Pdelay-Request Interval(If the profile's Delay Mechanism is Peer-to-Peer)</b>	Shows the interval for sending peer delay request messages for the port.

If the profile's **Clock Type** is **Transparent Clock**, this table will appear.

IEEE 1588 Default-2008 Profile

🔍 Search

	Port	Time Synchronization	Pdelay-Request Interval
✎	1/1	Disabled	0 (1 sec.)
✎	1/2	Disabled	0 (1 sec.)
✎	1/3	Disabled	0 (1 sec.)
✎	1/4	Disabled	0 (1 sec.)
✎	2/1	Disabled	0 (1 sec.)
✎	2/2	Disabled	0 (1 sec.)

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows which port the entry describes.
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	Shows whether time synchronization is enabled for the port.
<b>Pdelay-Request Interval(If the profile's Delay Mechanism is Peer-to-Peer)</b>	Shows the interval for sending peer delay request messages for the port.

## Time Synchronization - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: System > Time > Time Synchronization - Port Settings

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for a port on the **System > Time > Time Synchronization - Port Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure time synchronization settings for the port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1/1 Settings

Time Synchronization \*  
 Disabled ▼

Announce Interval \*  
 1 (2 sec.) ▼

Announce Receipt Timeout \*  
 3  
 2 - 10 times

Sync Interval \*  
 0 (1 sec.) ▼

Delay-Request Interval \*  
 0 (1 sec.) ▼

Copy configurations to ports ▼ ⓘ

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	Enable or disable time synchronization for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Announce Interval</b>	Select the interval to send announce messages for the port. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>For IEC 61850-9-3-2016 and IEEE C37.238-2017 profiles, Announce Interval is fixed to 0 (1 sec.).</p> </div>	0 (1 sec.) / 1 (2 sec.) / 2 (4 sec.) / 3 (8 sec.) / 4 (16 sec.)	1 (2 sec.)
<b>Announce Receipt Timeout</b>	Specify the number of timeouts allowed for announce receipts for the port. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>For IEC 61850-9-3-2016 and IEEE C37.238-2017 profiles, Announce Receipt Interval is fixed to 3.</p> </div>	2 to 10 (times)	3

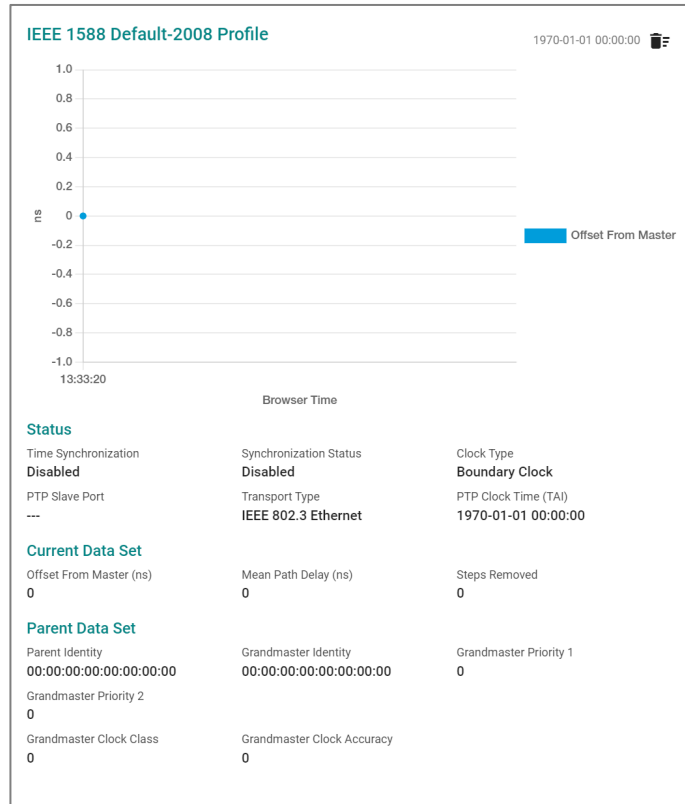
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Sync Interval</b>	Select the synchronization interval for the port.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>For IEC 61850-9-3-2016 and IEEE C37.238-2017 profiles, Sync Interval is fixed to 0 (1 sec.).</p> </div>	-3 (0.125 sec.) / -2 (0.25 sec.) / -1 (0.5 sec.) / 0 (1 sec.) / 1 (2 sec.) / 3 (4 sec.) / 4 (8 sec.) / 5 (32 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)
<b>Delay-Request Interval</b> <b>(If the profile's Delay Mechanism is End-to-End)</b>	Select the interval for sending delay-request messages for the port.	-3 (0.125 sec.) / -2 (0.25 sec.) / -1 (0.5 sec.) / 0 (1 sec.) / 1 (2 sec.) / 3 (4 sec.) / 4 (8 sec.) / 5 (32 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)
<b>Pdelay-Request Interval</b> <b>(If the profile's Delay Mechanism is Peer-to-Peer)</b>	Select the interval for sending peer delay-request messages for the port.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>For IEC 61850-9-3-2016 and IEEE C37.238-2017 profiles, Pdelay-Request Interval is fixed to 0 (1 sec.).</p> </div>	-3 (0.125 sec.) / -2 (0.25 sec.) / -1 (0.5 sec.) / 0 (1 sec.) / 1 (2 sec.) / 3 (4 sec.) / 4 (8 sec.) / 5 (32 sec.)	0 (1 sec.)
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Time Synchronization - Status

### Menu Path: System > Time > Time Synchronization - Status

This page lets you view the detailed time synchronization status of your device.

If the profile's **Clock Type** is **Boundary Clock**, this display will appear. The graph shows the offset from the master clock in nanoseconds over time.



## Status

UI Setting	Description
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	Shows whether time synchronization is enabled.
<b>Synchronization Status</b>	Shows the current synchronization status. <b>Disabled</b> means that the time synchronization feature is disabled.
<b>Clock Type</b>	Shows the clock type being used.
<b>PTP Slave Port</b>	Shows the port acting as a PTP slave.
<b>Transport Type</b>	Shows the transport type being used.
<b>PTP Clock Time (TAI)</b>	Shows the current PTP clock time.

## Current Data Set

UI Setting	Description
<b>Offset From Master (ns)</b>	Shows the current offset from the master clock in nanoseconds.
<b>Mean Path Delay (ns)</b>	Shows the mean path delay in nanoseconds.
<b>Steps Removed</b>	Shows the number of steps removed.

## Parent Data Set

UI Setting	Description
<b>Parent Identity</b>	Shows the clock ID of the parent identity.
<b>Grandmaster Identity</b>	Shows the clock ID of the grandmaster identity.
<b>Grandmaster Priority 1</b>	Shows the priority 1 value for the grandmaster clock.
<b>Grandmaster Priority 2</b>	Shows the priority 2 value for the grandmaster clock.
<b>Grandmaster Clock Class</b>	Shows the class value for the grandmaster clock.
<b>Grandmaster Clock Accuracy</b>	Shows the accuracy value for the grandmaster clock.

If the profile's **Clock Type** is **Transparent Clock**, this display will appear.

IEEE 1588 Default-2008 Profile			1970-01-01 00:00:00
<b>Status</b>			
Time Synchronization	Synchronization Status	Clock Type	
Disabled	Disabled	Transparent Clock	
Transport Type			
UDP IPv4			

## Status

UI Setting	Description
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	Shows whether time synchronization is enabled.
<b>Synchronization Status</b>	Shows the current synchronization status. <b>Disabled</b> means that the time synchronization feature is disabled.
<b>Clock Type</b>	Shows the clock type being used.
<b>Transport Type</b>	Shows the transport type being used.

## Time Synchronization - Port Status

**Menu Path:** System > Time > Time Synchronization - Port Status

This page lets you view the time synchronization status of individual ports.

## Time Synchronization Port Status Table

Time Synchronization			
General	Port Settings	Status	Port Status
IEEE 1588 Default-2008 Profile			
↻			
Port	Port State	Path Delay (ns)	
1/1	Disabled	0	
1/2	Disabled	0	
1/3	Disabled	0	
1/4	Disabled	0	
2/1	Disabled	0	
2/2	Disabled	0	
2/3	Disabled	0	
2/4	Disabled	0	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port the entry is for.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port State</b>	Shows the operating state of time synchronization for the port.
<b>Path Delay</b>	Shows the path delay in milliseconds for the port.

## Configuring NTP Server

Moxa devices can serve as network time protocol (NTP) servers to allow other devices to synchronize their clocks over the network.

NTP operates by exchanging time information between servers and clients.

Typically, there are several hierarchical strata of NTP servers. Stratum 1 servers are directly connected to highly accurate time sources, such as atomic clocks or GPS receivers. Stratum 2 servers synchronize their time with Stratum 1 servers, and so on. Client devices synchronize their clocks with NTP servers, which helps maintain accurate time across the network.

NTP is widely used on the internet and in local networks to ensure accurate timekeeping, and it has been a critical component of network infrastructure for decades.

Our switch can act as NTP client to sync the system time with the configured NTP server (Stratum 1). Our switch can also act as an NTP server (Stratum 2) to propagate the synchronized time to other clients on the network.

## Enabling NTP Server

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **System > Time > NTP Server**.
3. Set **NTP Server** to **Enabled**.
4. To Enable Client Authentication and create keys, do the following:
5. Set **Client Authentication** to **Enabled**.
6. Go to **System > Time > System Time > NTP Authentication**, and then click **Add**.

The **Create Entry** screen appears.

7. Key ID Type Key String Configure all of the following, and then click **Create**:

Option	Value
<b>Key ID</b>	Specify a number to identify the key
<b>Type</b>	Specify the authentication type.
<b>Key String</b>	Specify a key at least one character long.

# Port

## Menu Path: Port

This section lets you configure various port-specific functions for the switch.

This section includes these pages:

- Port Interface
- Link Aggregation
- Energy Efficient Ethernet

## PoE - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Port Interface</b>			
<b>Port Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Linkup Delay</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Link Aggregation</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Energy Efficient Ethernet</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## Port Interface

### Menu Path: Port > Port Interface

This section lets you configure the port interface functions.

This section includes these pages:

- Port Settings

- Linkup Delay

## About Port Settings

Port Settings allows you to manage and configure the various parameters of your device's individual network ports. By letting you adjust settings such as speed, duplex, and flow control, it helps you optimize the performance of your network connections.

## Port Settings

**Menu Path:** [Port](#) > [Port Interface](#) > [Port Settings](#)

This page lets you configure the port settings.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

## Port Settings - Settings

**Menu Path:** [Port](#) > [Port Interface](#) > [Port Settings - Settings](#)

This page lets you configure basic port settings.

The screenshot shows the 'Port Settings' page with two tabs: 'Settings' (selected) and 'Status'. Below the tabs is a search bar and a table with the following data:

Port	Admin Status	Media Type	Description	Speed/Duplex	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX	Tracking ID
1/1	Enabled	SFP-1GLXLC-T		---	Disabled	---	---
1/2	Enabled	SFP-1GLXLC		---	Disabled	---	---
1/3	Enabled	1000FX,miniGBIC		---	Disabled	---	---
1/4	Enabled	1000FX,miniGBIC		---	Disabled	---	---
2/1	Enabled	100TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto	---

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows which port the entry describes.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Shows whether admin status is enabled for data transmission through the port.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Media Type</b>	Shows the detected media type for the port.
<b>Description</b>	Shows the description used to help identify the port.
<b>Speed/Duplex</b>	Shows the port speed and duplex option selected for the port.
<b>Flow Control</b>	Shows whether flow control is enabled for the port.
<b>MDI/MDIX</b>	Shows the MDI/MDIX option used for the port.
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the tracking ID for the port.

## Editing Port Settings

### Menu Path: Port > Port Interface > Port Settings - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for the desired port on the **Port > Port Interface > Port Settings - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the port settings parameters.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Edit Port 1/1 Settings**

Admin Status \*  
Enabled

Media Type  
SFP-1GLXLC-T

Description  
0 / 127

Speed/Duplex




Flow Control \*  
Disabled



MDI/MDIX

Tracking ID

Copy configurations to ports

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Admin Status</b>	Enable or disable data transmission through the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Media Type</b>	Displays the detected media type for each port. This setting cannot be changed.	Detected media type	N/A
<b>Description</b>	Specify a description to help identify the port.	0 to 127 characters	N/A
<b>Speed/Duplex</b>	<p>Select the speed/duplex mode to use for the port.</p> <p>Select <b>Auto</b> to enable the port to negotiate the optimal speed using the IEEE 802.3u protocol with connected devices. The port and connected devices will determine the most suitable speed for the connection.</p> <p>Alternatively, choose a fixed speed and duplex option if the connected Ethernet device has trouble with auto-negotiation. This can be useful for connecting legacy devices without auto-negotiation support.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Speed/Duplex cannot be set for fiber ports.</p> </div>	Auto / 10M Half / 10M Full / 100M Half / 100M Full	Auto
<b>Flow Control</b>	<p>Enable or disable flow control for the port.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The switch and connected device will automatically determine the final result.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Flow Control can be enabled, but it is only effective at full duplex.</p> <p>Back Pressure is automatically enabled, but it is only effective at half duplex.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MDI/MDIX</b>	<p>Select the MDI/MDIX mode to use for the port.</p> <p>Select <b>Auto</b> to allow the port to auto-detect the port type of the connected Ethernet device, and change the port type accordingly.</p> <p>Alternatively, manually select <b>MDI</b> or <b>MDIX</b> if the device has trouble auto-detecting the port type.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>MDI/MDIX cannot be set for fiber ports.</p> </div>	Auto / MDI / MDIX	Auto
<b>Tracking ID</b>	<p>Select a tracking ID for the port. This setting is optional.</p>	List of tracking IDs	N/A
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	<p>Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The copy configuration feature cannot be used with fiber ports.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Port Settings - Status

**Menu Path: Port > Port Interface > Port Settings - Status**

This page lets you view the status and configuration of the device's ports.

### Port Settings

Settings
Status

🔄 🏠
🔍 Search

Port	Media Type	Link Status	Description	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX	Port State
1/1	1000TX,RJ45	Link Down		Disabled	Invalid	Blocking
1/2	1000TX,RJ45	1G, Full (Auto)		Disabled	MDI (Auto)	Forwarding
1/3	1000TX,RJ45	Link Down		Disabled	Invalid	Blocking
1/4	1000TX,RJ45	Link Down		Disabled	Invalid	Blocking

UI Setting	Description
<b>Admin Status</b>	Shows whether admin status is enabled for data transmission through the port.
<b>Media Type</b>	Shows the detected media type for the port.
<b>Link Status</b>	Shows the port's link status. <b>Link Down</b> will be shown If the link is down. Otherwise, the port's speed and duplex will be shown.
<b>Description</b>	Shows the description used to help identify the port.
<b>Flow Control</b>	Shows whether flow control is enabled for the port.
<b>MDI/MDIX</b>	Shows the MDI/MDIX option used for the port.
<b>Port State</b>	Shows whether the port status is blocking or forwarding.

## About Linkup Delay

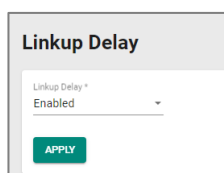
Linkup delay, also known as link flap prevention, is used to prevent a port alternating between link up and link down statuses, and is useful when a link connection is unstable. An unstable connection might be caused by situations such as a faulty cable, faulty fiber transceiver, duplex mismatch, etc. Linkup delay helps you mitigate the risk of an unstable network, particularly when the topology changes frequently.

## Linkup Delay


**Menu Path:** [Port](#) > [Port Interface](#) > [Linkup Delay](#)

This page lets you configure the linkup delay for device's ports.






### Linkup Delay Settings




The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Linkup Delay". Inside the window, there is a dropdown menu labeled "Linkup Delay \*" with the value "Enabled" selected. Below the dropdown menu is a green button labeled "APPLY".

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Linkup Delay</b>	<p>Enable or disable the linkup delay feature for the device.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After enabling linkup delay, you will still need to configure and enable linkup delay for each port you want to use it on.</p> <p>Refer to Linkup Delay - Edit Port Settings for more information.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## Linkup Delay - Port List

Port	Enable	Delay Time	Remaining Time
 1	Disabled	2	0
 2	Disabled	2	0
 3	Disabled	2	0
 4	Disabled	2	0
 5	Disabled	2	0

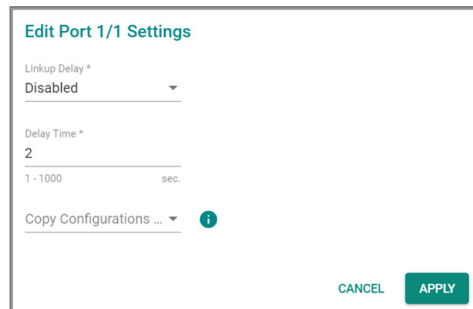
UI Setting	Description
<b>Enable</b>	<p>Shows whether linkup delay is enabled or disabled for the port.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>To enable linkup delay for a port, both the linkup delay setting for the port and the global linkup delay setting must be enabled.</p> <p>Refer to Linkup Delay Settings for more information.</p> </div>
<b>Delay Time</b>	Shows the delay time in seconds for the port.
<b>Remaining Time</b>	Shows the remaining time in seconds for the port to alternate between link up and link down.

## Linkup Delay - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Port > Port Interface > Linkup Delay

To configure linkup delay for a port, click the **Edit** (✎) icon on the desired port on the **Port > Port Interface > Linkup Delay** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the linkup delay parameters for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Linkup Delay</b>	Enable or disable linkup delay for the port.  <b>Note</b> To enable linkup delay for a port, both the linkup delay setting for the port and the global linkup delay setting must be enabled. Refer to Linkup Delay Settings for more information.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Delay Time</b>	Specify the delay time in seconds before the port alternates between link up and link down.	1 to 1000	2
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About Link Aggregation

Link aggregation, also known as port channels or port trunking, helps balance, optimize, and facilitate a device's throughput. This method combines multiple network communication interfaces in parallel to maximize data throughput, increasing data

communication efficiency for each port. In addition, it also acts as a useful method for network redundancy when a link fails. In general, link aggregation supports combining multiple physical switch ports into a single, bandwidth-efficient data communication route. This can improve network load sharing and increase network reliability.

## Static Trunk

For some networking applications, a situation can arise where traffic from multiple ports is required to be filtered through a single port. For example, if there are 30 UHD IP surveillance cameras deployed and connected in a ring, traffic can reach up to 1 Gbps, causing a surge in traffic that can increase network loading by up to 50%. Hence, the uplink port needs to use static trunking to provide additional bandwidth and redundancy protection.

Additionally, a **High-availability Static Trunk (HAST) policy** can be applied to Static Trunk and enhance availability by manually configuring standby ports.

There are two policies available: non-revertive and Revertive.

- **Non-revertive:** When standby ports are configured, standby links will activate when member port links are down and will remain activated, even if member ports revert to link up status.
- **Revertive:** When standby ports are configured, they will activate when member port links go down. When member port links are restored, activated standby ports will revert to standby. This feature can help maintain the original link status automatically after confirming primary link recovery.

### Note

A HAST policy will only be effective if LLDP is enabled and the corresponding switch supports high-availability static trunk policies.

## LACP

Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) is a protocol defined by IEEE 802.3ad that allows a network device to negotiate automatic bundling of several ports by sending LACP packets to the peer, a directly connected device that also uses LACP.

## Link Aggregation Algorithms

In link aggregation, different load-sharing hash algorithms can be used to optimize packet forwarding:

- **SMAC:** Source MAC (SMAC) uses the source MAC address for a packet to optimize packet forwarding to ensure that packets from the same source address follow the same path consistently to optimize connection stability and reduce the chance of out-of-order packet delivery.
- **DMAC:** Destination MAC (DMAC) uses the destination MAC address for a packet to optimize packet forwarding to ensure that packets being sent to the same destination address are consistently sent over the same link to optimize connection stability and traffic distribution.
- **SMAC + DMAC:** SMAC and DMAC can be used together for more complex hash algorithms, but tends to be used only when a network has few clients and servers.
- **MAC (SA, DA) + IP (SA, DA):** Source and destination MAC addresses are used together with source and destination IP addresses for the hash algorithm. This is useful when using MAC addresses for the hash algorithm is not sufficient for managing load balancing, such as in environments with a single server to Layer 3 network environment.
- **MAC (SA, DA) + IP (SA, DA) + L4 (SPort, DPort):** SMAC, DMAC, source and destination IP addresses, and source and destination L4 ports are used together for the hash algorithm. This is useful for environments running multiple services on the network, such as a network with many TCP/UDP connections (client sessions) between IPs.

## Link Aggregation Settings

### Menu Path: [Port](#) > [Link Aggregation](#)

This page lets you configure link aggregation groups for each port. A link aggregation group combines multiple physical ports into a single logical link.

## 🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 32 link aggregation groups.

## Link Aggregation List

	Port Channel (Trunk)	LA Group Status	Type	Configure Member	Configure Standby Member	Active Member
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Enabled	LACP	1/1, 1/2		

Max. 32 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port Channel (Trunk)</b>	Shows the Port Channel (Trunk) number of the link aggregation group.
<b>LA Group Status</b>	Shows whether the link aggregation group is enabled.
<b>Type</b>	Shows the method for configuring the link aggregation group.
<b>Configure Member</b>	Shows the configured member ports in the link aggregation group.
<b>Configure Standby Member</b>	Shows the configured standby member ports in the link aggregation group.
<b>Active Member</b>	Shows the active member ports in the link aggregation group.

## Creating a Link Aggregation Group

### Menu Path: [Port](#) > [Link Aggregation](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Port > Link Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a link aggregation group.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new link aggregation group.

### Create Link Aggregation

LA Group Status \*  
Enabled ▼

Type \*  
Manual ▼

Config Member Port \* ▼ i

Config Standby Port ▼

CANCEL
CREATE

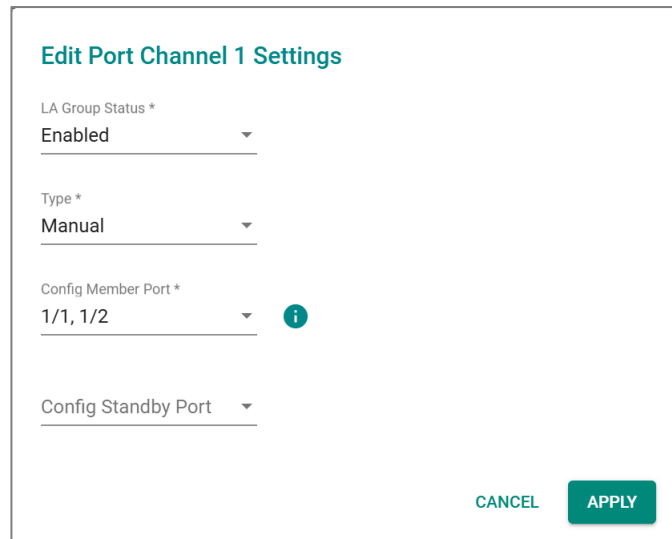
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>LA Group Status</b>	Enable or disable the link aggregation group.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Type</b>	Select the method to use for configuring the link aggregation group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Manual:</b> This allows you to specify the ports to be included in the LA Group.</li> <li><b>LACP:</b> LACP protocol will be used to automatically negotiate link aggregation configuration between devices.</li> </ul>	Manual / LACP	N/A
<b>Config Member Port</b>	Select the ports to add to the link aggregation group. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>A port cannot be assigned to multiple link aggregation groups. This is because each port can only be a member of a single link aggregation group at a time.</p> <p>A link aggregation group (Port-channel) cannot be created when selected ports are operating at different speeds.</p> </div>	Device ports	N/A
<b>Config Standby Port (If Type is Manual)</b>	Select the standby ports to add to the link aggregation group.	Device ports	N/A

## Editing a Link Aggregation Group

### Menu Path: Port > Link Aggregation

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon on the **Port > Link Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit Link Aggregation group settings.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.




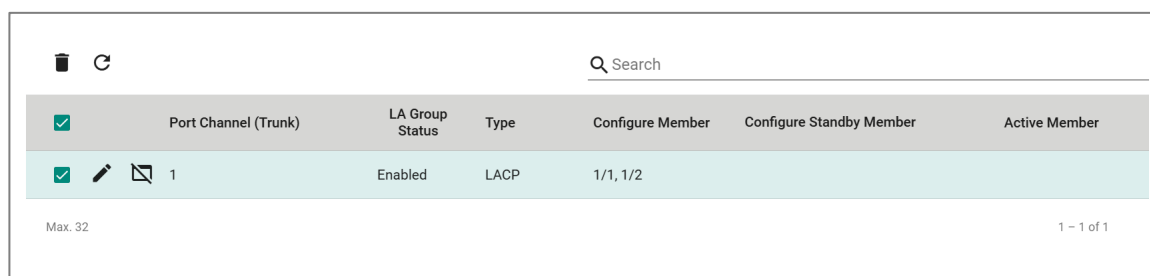
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>LA Group Status</b>	Enable or disable the link aggregation group.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Type</b>	Select the method to use for configuring the link aggregation group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Manual:</b> This allows you to specify the ports to be included in the LA Group.</li><li>• <b>LACP:</b> LACP protocol will be used to automatically negotiate link aggregation configuration between devices.</li></ul>	Manual / LACP	N/A



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Config Member Port</b>	<p>Select the ports to add to the link aggregation group.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>A port cannot be assigned to multiple link aggregation groups. This is because each port can only be a member of a single link aggregation group at a time.</p> <p>A link aggregation group (Port-channel) cannot be created when selected ports are operating at different speeds.</p> </div>	Device ports	N/A
<b>Config Standby Port</b> <b>(If Type is Manual)</b>	Select the standby ports to add to the link aggregation group.	Device ports	N/A

## Deleting a Link Aggregation Group (Port Channel)

### Menu Path: Port > Link Aggregation

You can delete a link aggregation group by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (  ) icon.









<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Port Channel (Trunk)	LA Group Status	Type	Configure Member	Configure Standby Member	Active Member
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	  1	Enabled	LACP	1/1, 1/2		

Max. 32 1 - 1 of 1

## Link Aggregation - Port Settings for LACP


This table lets you see the LACP settings for each port.

Port	Mode	Timeout (sec.)	Wait Time (sec.)	Port Channel (Trunk)
 1	Active	90	2	1
 2	Active	90	2	1
 3	Active	90	2	2
 4	Active	90	2	2
 5	Active	90	2	
 6	Active	90	2	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows which port the entry describes.
<b>Mode</b>	Shows the LACP mode for the port.
<b>Timeout (sec.)</b>	Shows the LACP inactivity timeout in seconds for the port.
<b>Wait Time (sec.)</b>	Shows the LACP wait time in seconds for the port.
<b>Port Channel (Trunk)</b>	Shows the link aggregation group (Port channel) number for the port.

## Editing Port Settings for LACP

### Menu Path: Port > Link Aggregation

Clicking the **Edit** () icon by a port on the **Port > Link Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the port settings for LACP parameters if your link aggregation type is set to LACP.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.


**Edit Port 1/1 Settings**

Port Channel (Trunk)  
1

Mode\*  
Active

Timeout\*  
90 sec.

Wait Time\*  
2 sec.

Copy configurations to ports 

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Channel (Trunk)</b>	Shows the link aggregation group (Port channel) number of the port. This setting cannot be changed.	Port Channel Number	N/A
<b>Mode</b>	<p>Select the LACP mode to decide how the ports establish LACP links.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Active:</b> Ports will actively query link partners for LACP by sending LACP PDUs. If the partner is also LACP-enabled, the ports will establish an LACP link.</li> <li>• <b>Passive:</b> Ports can respond to LACP queries from active ports and passively establish LACP links. They will not initiate any LACP negotiation on their own.</li> </ul> <p>For LACP to establish a link, at least one port for the link must use active mode. If both ports are passive, no LACP PDUs will be sent, and no link will be established.</p>	Active / Passive	Active
<b>Timeout</b>	Specify the LACP inactivity timeout in seconds. This is the amount of time that must elapse without receiving any LACP PDUs before a link is considered to have failed.	3 / 90	90
<b>Wait Time</b>	Specify the LACP wait time in seconds. This is the amount of time that must elapse after a LACP link comes up before it is added to the link aggregation group.	0 to 10	2
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About Energy Efficient Ethernet

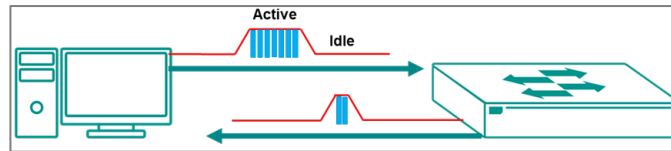
Energy Efficiency Ethernet is a function based on standard 802.3az, and can be enabled to save power when there is no traffic on a link. This function can be enabled for 100/1000/2500M copper ports.

### Note

The Out of Bounds (OOB) port does not support Energy Efficient Ethernet.

## How Energy Efficient Ethernet Works

802.3az EEE is designed to reduce power consumption by detecting active traffic on the link when the ports on both sides of the connection are up. This function operates at the PHY layer. Ports will enter LPI (Low Power Idle) mode when no data transmission is detected over the link, saving power during periods of no traffic.



## Energy Efficient Ethernet

**Menu Path:** [Port](#) > [Energy Efficient Ethernet](#)

This section lets you manage your device's Energy Efficient Ethernet settings.

This section includes these pages:

- [Settings](#)
- [Status](#)

### Energy Efficient Ethernet - Settings

**Menu Path:** [Port](#) > [Energy Efficient Ethernet - Settings](#)


This page lets you configure your device's Energy Efficient Ethernet settings.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Energy Efficient Ethernet Settings




Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE) \*

Enabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)</b>	Enable or disable the Energy Efficient Ethernet feature for the device.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>After enabling Energy Efficient Ethernet for the device, it must also be enabled for any port you want to use it on.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

## Energy Efficient Ethernet Port List


Port can be enabled even port doesn't support EEE.

Port	Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)
 1/1	Enabled
 1/2	Enabled
 1/3	Enabled

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port the entry is for.
<b>Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)</b>	Shows whether Energy Efficient Ethernet is enabled for the port.

## Energy Efficient Ethernet - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: [Port](#) > [Energy Efficient Ethernet - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Port > Energy Efficient Ethernet - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the Energy Efficient Ethernet settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1/1 Settings

Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE) \*

Enabled ▼

---

Copy configurations to... ▼

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)</b>	Enable or disable Energy Efficient Ethernet for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Energy Efficient Ethernet - Status

**Menu Path:** Port > Energy Efficient Ethernet - Settings

This page lets you view the status of your device's Energy Efficient Ethernet feature.

	Port	EEE Status	Local Capability	Neighbor Capability	Media Type	Link Status
↻					🔍 Search	
	1/1	Inactive	Supported	Not Supported	2500TX,RJ45	Link Down
	1/2	Inactive	Supported	Not Supported	2500TX,RJ45	Link Down

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port this entry is for.
<b>EEE Status</b>	Shows whether Energy Efficient Ethernet is enabled for the port.
<b>Local Capability</b>	Shows whether the port supports Energy Efficient Ethernet.
<b>Neighbor Capability</b>	Shows whether the neighbor port the port is connected to supports Energy Efficient Ethernet.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Media Type</b>	Shows the media type used for this port.
<b>Link Status</b>	Shows whether the link is up or down for the port.

# Layer 2 Switching

## Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching

This section lets you configure your device's Layer 2 switching features.

This section includes these pages:

- VLAN
- Q-in-Q
- GARP
- MAC
- QoS
- Multicast

## Layer 2 Switching - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>VLAN</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Q-in-Q</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>GARP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MAC</b>			
<b>Static Unicast</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MAC Address Table</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>QoS</b>			
<b>Classification</b>	R/W	R/W	R


Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Ingress Rate Limit</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Scheduler</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Egress Shaper</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Multicast</b>			
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>GMRP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Static Multicast</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## About VLAN

A VLAN, or Virtual Local Area Network, is a logical grouping of devices on a network.

## Assigning VLANs to Ports

VLANs must be assigned to ports to route traffic correctly. Now that you've created the VLANs, they need to be assigned to ports so that traffic from those ports will be routed over the correct VLAN. A similar procedure must be performed on each switch or router on the network.


1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching**→**VLAN**→**Settings**.
3. To assign the newly created VLAN ID to a port, find the port on the **Port Table** on the lower part of the page, and then click  **[Edit]**.  
**Result:** The **Edit Port Settings** panel appears.
4. Specify the **Mode** and **PVID** that will be assigned to the port, and then click **Apply**.

### Tutorial Info:

**Access mode** is used when connecting single devices without tags. These are usually end-user devices that belong to a single VLAN, and do not need to communicate with devices in other VLANs.

**Trunk mode** allows a port to carry traffic for multiple VLANs over a single physical connection. This is useful for linking switches together that may have many different VLANs.

**Hybrid mode** is similar to a Trunk port, except users can explicitly assign tags to be removed from egress packets.

 **Note**


The port VID (PVID) setting will apply a VLAN tag only for untagged traffic coming through that port. If traffic going through the port has already been tagged with a VLAN ID, the PVID setting will not change the existing tag.

**Result:** The **Port Table** will show the new port configuration.

## Creating VLANs

Create VLANs in preparation for assigning them to ports.

To create a VLAN, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching > VLAN > Settings**.
3. To add a VLAN ID, click  **[Add]**.

**Result:** The **Create VLAN** screen appears.

4. Specify the VLAN to create in the **VID**, and then click **Create**.


Optionally:


- Type a human-readable identifier in the **Name** field
- Assign the VLAN to a **Member Port**. You also assign VLANs to ports later.

**Result:** The VLAN will appear on the VLAN table at the top of the page.

5. Repeat this process to create VLANs needed for the network topology.

**What to do next:** After you have created the VLANs needed for your topology, you can assign VLANs to ports if you have not done so already.

 **Note**

You can delete VLANs by choosing a VLAN ID from the VLAN table at the top of the page, clicking the checkbox, and then clicking  [Delete].

## VLANs in Depth

This technology allows network administrators to divide a large network into smaller, more manageable segments without the need for additional physical hardware. Devices within a VLAN can be located anywhere on the network but communicate as though they are on the same physical segment. This facilitates traffic management, as administrators can ensure traffic is directed only to devices within the same VLAN by assigning a VLAN tag to each Ethernet frame. Consequently, VLANs provide a means to segment a network beyond the constraints of physical connections, a limitation inherent in traditional network design. VLANs can be utilized to segment your network into various groups, such as:

- **Departmental groups**—One VLAN for the R&D department, another for Office Automation, etc.
- **Hierarchical groups**—One VLAN for directors, another for managers, and another for general staff.
- **Usage groups**—One VLAN for email users and another for multimedia users.

## VLAN Standards and Implementation

The functioning of VLANs is guided by IEEE 802.1Q, often referred to as Dot1q. This standard outlines the protocol for VLAN tagging on Ethernet frames within an IEEE 802.3 Ethernet network. During the transmission of data between switches, VLAN tags identify the VLAN ownership of frames. Networking equipment reads these tags and ensures that tagged frames are delivered to devices within that VLAN, maintaining the network's logical segmentation.

A VLAN tag is a specific piece of data embedded in the header of an Ethernet frame. It comprises a 4-byte field carrying key information, such as the VLAN ID (VID) and priority level. The VID is a numerical identifier that uniquely links the frame to a specific VLAN.

The priority field within the tag plays a critical role in prioritizing certain types of traffic within a VLAN. This structure contributes to effective network traffic management by giving precedence to certain data when necessary.

## **Benefits of VLANs**

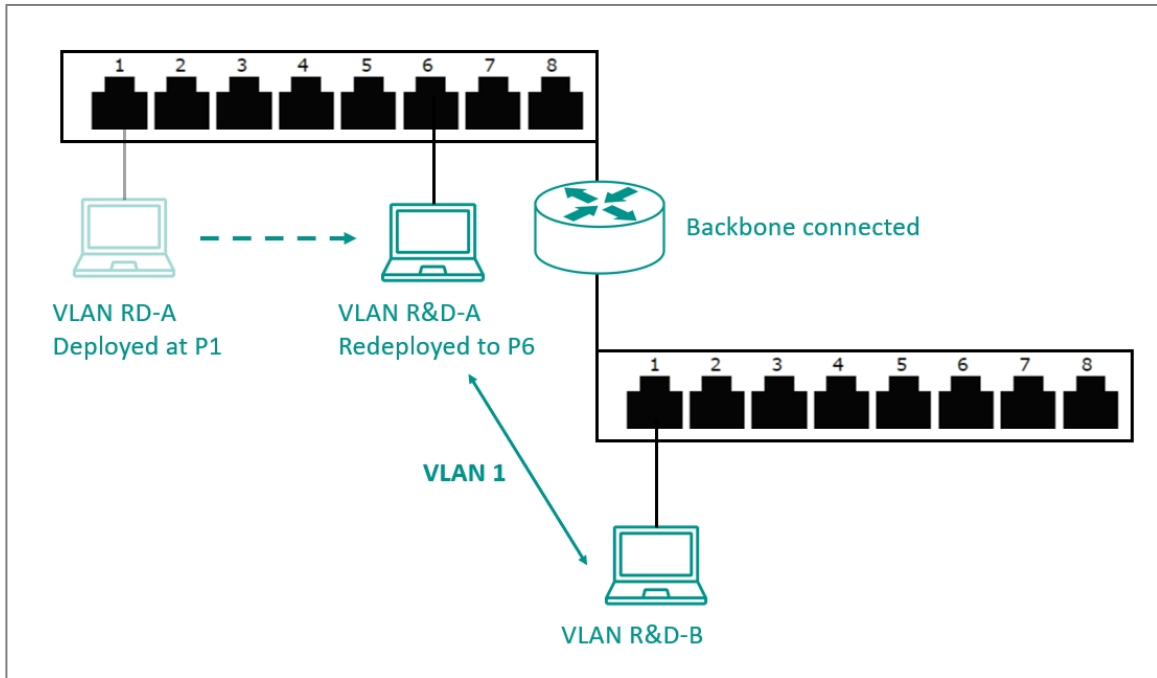
The main benefit of VLANs is that they provide a network segmentation system that is far more flexible than traditional networks. Using VLANs also provides you with three other benefits:

### **VLANs help control traffic**

With traditional networks, congestion can be caused by broadcast traffic that is directed to all network devices, regardless of whether or not they need it. VLANs increase the efficiency of your network because each VLAN can be set up to contain only those devices that need to communicate with each other.

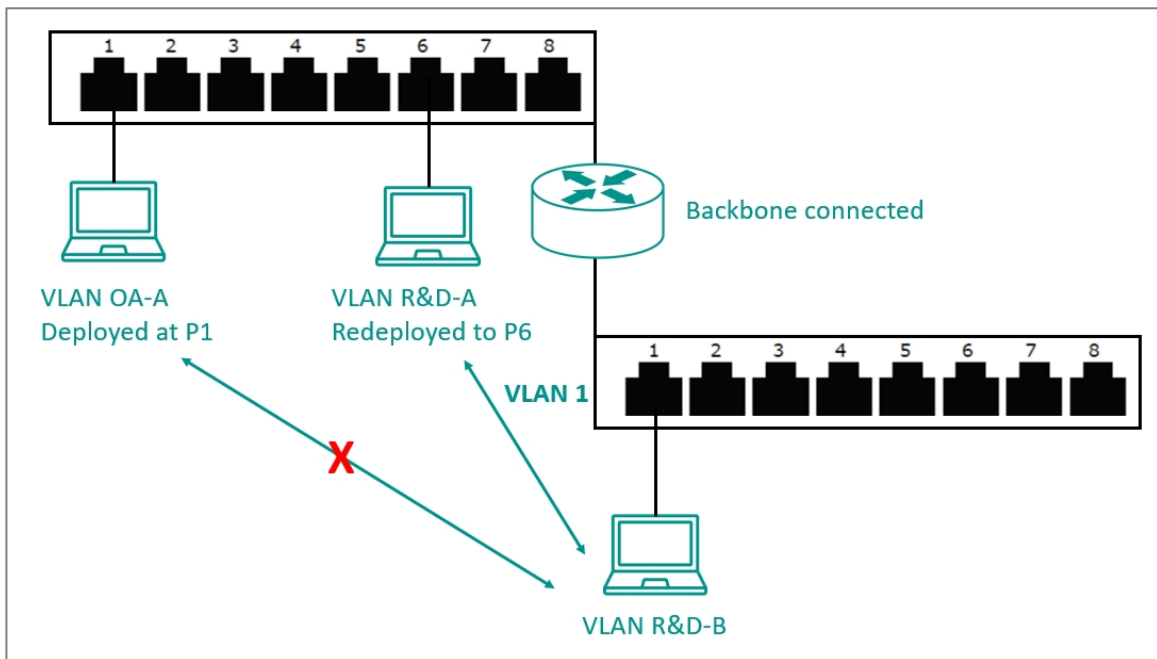
### **VLANs simplify device relocation**

In traditional networks, administrators spend significant time managing moves and changes, requiring manual updates of host addresses when users switch sub-networks. In contrast, VLANs simplify this process. For example, when relocating a host from Port 1 to Port 6 in a different network section, simply assign Port 6 to the relevant VLAN (e.g., VLAN R&D A). This enables seamless communication between VLANs, eliminating the need for re-cabling.



### VLANs provide extra security

Devices within each VLAN can only communicate with other devices on the same VLAN. If VLAN R&D B needs to communicate with VLAN OA(Office Automation) A, the traffic must pass through a routing device or Layer 3 switch.



**Note**

Network segmentation is not a substitute for network security. While network segmentation can provide a degree of isolation that contributes to the overall security environment, the primary benefit of VLANs is improved performance by ensuring minimal crosstalk between unrelated systems. Network segmentation should be complimented with network security procedures.

## About VLAN Unaware

VLAN Unaware allows the device to operate in a VLAN-segmented LAN by processing packets based on inbound rules. It forwards data packets without modification, acting as a transparent bridge.

Enabling this mode disables standard VLAN settings, and the device prioritizes packets based on the data packet's information. Tagged packets are transmitted as tagged, and untagged packets as untagged.

**Note**

To enable VLAN Unaware, the following conditions must be met:

- Only one VLAN can exist: VLAN 1.
- All ports must be configured as access ports.
- All ports must have a Port VLAN ID (PVID) of VLAN 1.
- The management VLAN must be set to VLAN 1.

When VLAN Unaware mode is enabled, GVRP, RSPAN, MSTP, and MRP cannot be activated. This is because these features necessitate the creation of additional VLANs or the use of multiple VLANs.

## VLAN Settings

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > VLAN**

This page lets you view and configure your device's VLAN settings.

This page includes these tabs:

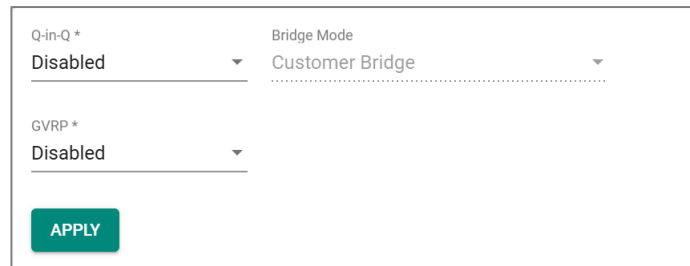
- Global
- Settings
- Status

## VLAN - Global

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Global

This page lets you configure the global VLAN settings.

### VLAN Settings



Q-in-Q \*  
Disabled

Bridge Mode  
Customer Bridge

GVRP \*  
Disabled

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Q-in-Q Enable</b>	Enable or disable Q-in-Q for the device.  <b>Note</b> Enabling Q-in-Q will cause VLAN, multicast, and L3 configurations to change.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Bridge Mode (View-only)</b>	Shows the bridge mode for the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>When Q-in-Q is enabled, this is fixed to Provider Network Bridge.</li><li>When Q-in-Q is disabled, this is fixed to Customer Bridge.</li></ul>	N/A	N/A
<b>GVRP</b>	Enable or disable GVRP for the device.  <b>Note</b> MSTP and GVRP are both VLAN-related functions. When VLAN changes dynamically, MSTP needs to re-converge, which can make the system unstable due to running complex operations. When both MSTP and GVRP are used together, this can result in network instability.  Therefore, it is recommended that network administrators avoid enabling both MSTP and GVRP.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## VLAN - Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Settings

This page lets you configure VLANs and which ports they include.

#### 🔔 Limitations

You can create up to 512 VLAN IDs.

## VLAN List

<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID	Name	Member Port	Forbidden Port
<input type="checkbox"/>			1/1, 1/2, 1/3, 1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/7, 1/8, 1/9, 1/10, 1/11, 1/12, 1/13, 1/14, 1/15, 1/16, 2/1, 2/2, 2/3, 2/4, 2/5, 2/6, 2/7, 2/8, 2/9, 2/10, 2/11, 2/12, 2/13, 2/14, 2/15, 2/16, 3/1, 3/2, 3/3, 3/4, 3/5, 3/6, 3/7, 3/8, 3/9, 3/10, 3/11, 3/12, 3/13, 3/14, 3/15, 3/16, 4/1, 4/2, 4/3, 4/4, 4/5, 4/6, 4/7, 4/8, 4/9, 4/10, 4/11, 4/12, 4/13, 4/14, 4/15, 4/16, po1	

Max. 512

Items per page: 5 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN.
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the VLAN.
<b>Member Port</b>	Shows the member port(s) of the VLAN.
<b>Forbidden Port</b>	Shows the forbidden port(s) of the VLAN.

## VLAN - Create VLAN

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon for port on the **Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a VLAN.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes.

## Create VLAN

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID.	1 to 4094	N/A
<b>Name</b>	Specify the name of the VLAN.	0 to 32 characters	N/A
<b>Member Port</b>	Specify the member port(s) of the specific VLAN.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Forbidden Port</b>	Specify the forbidden port(s) of the specific VLAN.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## VLAN Port Status List

Port	Mode	PVID	GVRP	Untagged VLAN	Tagged VLAN
1/3	Access	1	Disabled	1	
1/4	Access	1	Disabled	1	
1/5	Access	1	Disabled	1	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Mode</b>	Shows the mode of the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Access:</b> The port is connected to a single device, without tags.</li> <li>• <b>Trunk:</b> The port is connected to another 802.1Q VLAN aware switch.</li> <li>• <b>Hybrid:</b> The port is connected to another Access 802.1Q VLAN aware switch or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged devices.</li> </ul>
<b>PVID</b>	Shows the default VLAN ID for untagged devices connected to the port. The PVID will be added for ingress traffic, and will be removed for egress traffic for the access port only.
<b>GVRP</b>	Shows whether GVRP is enabled for the port.
<b>Untagged VLAN</b>	When the port is using <b>Hybrid</b> VLAN mode, this shows all VLAN IDs that will be removed from egress packets.
<b>Tagged VLAN</b>	When the port is using <b>Trunk</b> or <b>Hybrid</b> VLAN mode, this shows all VLAN IDs will be carried to connected devices.

## VLAN - Status

**Menu Path:** Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Status

This page lets you monitor the status of the VLANs on your device.

### VLAN Switchport Mode Table

VLAN Switchport Mode Table

🔄 🏠 🔍 Search

VLAN ID	Name	Status	Hybrid Port	Trunk Port	Access Port
1		Permanent		3/3	1/3, 1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/7, 1/8, 1/9, 1/10, 1/11, 1/12, 1/13, 1/14, 1/15, 1/16, 2/1, 2/2, 2/3, 2/4, 2/5, 2/6, 2/7, 2/8, 2/9, 2/10, 2/11, 2/12, 2/13, 2/14, 2/15, 2/16, 3/1, 3/2, 3/4, 3/5, 3/6, 3/7, 3/8, 3/9, 3/10, 3/11, 3/12, 3/13, 3/14, 3/15, 3/16, 4/1, 4/2, 4/3, 4/4, 4/5, 4/6, 4/7, 4/8, 4/9, 4/10, 4/11, 4/12, 4/13, 4/14, 4/15, 4/16, po1

Items per page: 5 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN.
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the VLAN.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the VLAN.
<b>Hybrid Port</b>	Shows ports acting as a Hybrid Port for the VLAN.
<b>Trunk Port</b>	Shows ports acting as a Trunk Port for the VLAN.
<b>Access Port</b>	Shows ports acting as an Access Port for the VLAN.

## VLAN Membership Table

VLAN Membership Table

🔄 🏠 🔍 Search

VLAN ID	Name	Status	Untagged Port	Tagged Port	Forbidden Port
1		Permanent	1/3, 1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/7, 1/8, 1/9, 1/10, 1/11, 1/12, 1/13, 1/14, 1/15, 1/16, 2/1, 2/2, 2/3, 2/4, 2/5, 2/6, 2/7, 2/8, 2/9, 2/10, 2/11, 2/12, 2/13, 2/14, 2/15, 2/16, 3/1, 3/2, 3/4, 3/5, 3/6, 3/7, 3/8, 3/9, 3/10, 3/11, 3/12, 3/13, 3/14, 3/15, 3/16, 4/1, 4/2, 4/3, 4/4, 4/5, 4/6, 4/7, 4/8, 4/9, 4/10, 4/11, 4/12, 4/13, 4/14, 4/15, 4/16, po1	3/3	

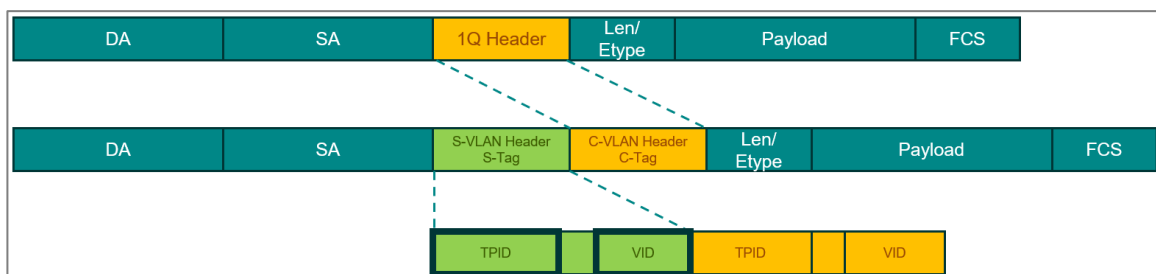
Items per page: 5 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN.
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the VLAN.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the VLAN.
<b>Untagged Port</b>	Shows the untagged port(s) for the VLAN.
<b>Tagged Port</b>	Shows the tagged port(s) for the VLAN.
<b>Forbidden Port</b>	Shows the forbidden port(s) for the VLAN.

## About Q-in-Q

Q-in-Q is a Layer 2 technology defined in IEEE 802.1ad. It is used to encapsulate one Ethernet frame inside another Ethernet frame (double tags) and allows service providers to offer multiple Virtual Local Area Networks (VLANs) over a single Layer 2 network.

Q-in-Q is commonly used in service provider networks, industrial Ethernet deployments, and large-scale environments where VLAN scalability and traffic isolation are required. By encapsulating customer VLAN tags inside service VLAN tags, provider networks can forward traffic based on the outer VLAN tag while preserving the original customer VLAN information. This allows multiple customer VLAN domains to be transported across the same network without VLAN ID conflicts.



## How Q-in-Q Works

### C-Domain and S-Domain

The Customer Domain (C-Domain) refers to the original VLAN tags carried by customer traffic, while the Service Domain (S-Domain) refers to the outer VLAN tags added by the provider network.

### Port Type

The port types in Q-in-Q consist of the following:

- **Customer Network Port (CNP):** Customer ports (ingress ports that receive customer VLAN traffic) using port-based service (both tagged and untagged).
- **Customer Edge Port (CEP):** Customer ports (ingress ports that receive customer VLAN traffic) using c-tagged-based service (with C-Domain VLAN tag).

- **Provider Network Port (PNP):** Provider ports (uplink ports that carry double-tagged frames across the provider network).

## TPID

- **0x8100:** Legacy 802.1Q packets encapsulate VLAN information in a VLAN header which consists of a TPID and VID. The TPID is 0x8100, which is referred to in the C-domain to distinguish whether the VLAN tag exists.
- **0x88A8:** After a packet enters the S-domain, an additional VLAN header is encapsulated in the packet using 0x88A8 as the TPID.
- **0x9100, 0x9200:** Vendor-specific TPIDs of additional VLAN headers in the S-domain.

## Ingress and Egress Behavior

At the ingress port, the switch performs the following actions:

- Receives a VLAN-tagged or untagged frame from the customer network.
- Inserts a service VLAN tag according to the configured Q-in-Q settings.
- Forwards the double-tagged frame through the provider network.

At the egress port, the device may remove the service VLAN tag before forwarding the frame back to the customer network, depending on the configuration.

## Q-in-Q Tunneling

Q-in-Q also supports passing control packets (e.g., STP and LLDP) from the C-domain without performing them. Double tagged properties in Q-in-Q can be used to distinguish whether control packets are from the C-domain or S-domain. In our design, the destination MAC of control packets are replaced by some unconfigurable DAs based on protocols.

## Q-in-Q

**Menu Path:** [Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q](#)

This page lets you configure the Q-in-Q feature of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

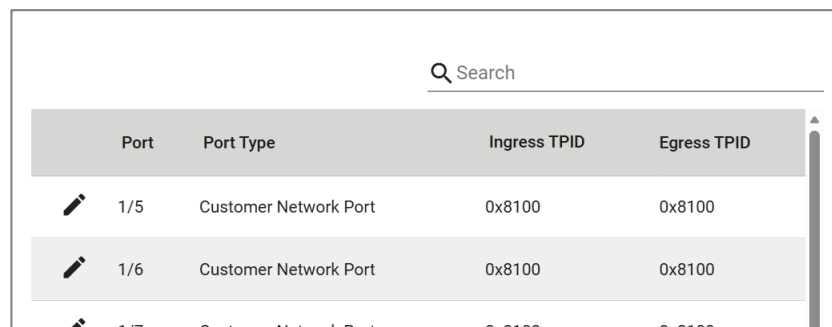
- Settings
- Tunneling
- VLAN Mapping

## Q-in-Q Settings

**Menu Path:** Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - Settings

This page lets you configure Q-in-Q settings for your ports.

### Q-in-Q Port List



The screenshot shows a table with a search bar at the top right labeled "Q Search". The table has five columns: "Port", "Port Type", "Ingress TPID", and "Egress TPID". There are three rows of data, each with a pencil icon in the "Port" column. The first row shows "1/5" for Port, "Customer Network Port" for Port Type, "0x8100" for Ingress TPID, and "0x8100" for Egress TPID. The second row shows "1/6" for Port, "Customer Network Port" for Port Type, "0x8100" for Ingress TPID, and "0x8100" for Egress TPID. The third row shows "1/7" for Port, "Customer Network Port" for Port Type, "0x8100" for Ingress TPID, and "0x8100" for Egress TPID.

Port	Port Type	Ingress TPID	Egress TPID
1/5	Customer Network Port	0x8100	0x8100
1/6	Customer Network Port	0x8100	0x8100
1/7	Customer Network Port	0x8100	0x8100

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port the entry is for.
<b>Port Type</b>	Shows the port type. When Q-in-Q is disabled, all ports will be designated as Customer Bridge Ports.
<b>Ingress TPID</b>	Shows the ingress TPID for the port.
<b>Egress TPID</b>	Shows the egress TPID for the port.

## Q-in-Q Settings - Edit Port Settings

### Q-in-Q - Edit Port Settings

#### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit Q-in-Q settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Type</b>	Select the port type to use for Q-in-Q.	Customer Network Port / Customer Edge Port / Provider Network Port	Customer Network Port
<b>Ingress TPID</b>	Select the ingress TPID to use for the port.  If <b>Port Type</b> is set to <b>Customer Network Port</b> or <b>Customer Edge Port</b> , this is preset to 0x8100 and cannot be modified.	<b>If Port Type</b> is <b>Customer Network Port</b> or <b>Customer Edge Port</b> : 0x8100  <b>If Port Type</b> is <b>Provider Network Port</b> : 0x88A8 / 0x9100 / 0x9200	<b>If Port Type</b> is <b>Customer Network Port</b> or <b>Customer Edge Port</b> : 0x8100  <b>If Port Type</b> is <b>Provider Network Port</b> : 0x88A8

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Egress TPID</b>	Select the egress TPID to use for the port. If <b>Port Type</b> is set to <b>Customer Network Port</b> or <b>Customer Edge Port</b> , this is preset to 0x8100 and cannot be modified.	If <b>Port Type</b> is <b>Customer Network Port</b> or <b>Customer Edge Port</b> : 0x8100 If <b>Port Type</b> is <b>Provider Network Port</b> : 0x88A8 / 0x9100 / 0x9200	If <b>Port Type</b> is <b>Customer Network Port</b> or <b>Customer Edge Port</b> : 0x8100 If <b>Port Type</b> is <b>Provider Network Port</b> : 0x88A8
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Q-in-Q Tunneling

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - Tunneling

This page lets you configure Q-in-Q tunneling settings for your ports.

### Q-in-Q Tunneling Port List

Port	Spanning Tree	GVRP	GMRP	IEEE 802.1X	LLDP	IGMP
1/3	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
1/4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
1/5	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port the entry is for.
<b>Spanning Tree</b>	Shows whether Spanning Tree is enabled for the port.
<b>GVRP</b>	Shows whether GVRP is enabled for the port.
<b>GMRP</b>	Shows whether GMRP is enabled for the port.

UI Setting	Description
<b>IEEE 802.1X</b>	Shows whether IEEE 802.1X is enabled for the port.
<b>LLDP</b>	Shows whether LLDP is enabled for the port.
<b>IGMP</b>	Shows whether IGMP is enabled for the port.

## Q-in-Q Tunneling - Edit Port Settings

### Q-in-Q Tunneling - Edit Port Settings

#### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - Tunneling

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - Tunneling** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit Q-in-Q tunneling settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1/3 Settings

Spanning Tree \*  
Disabled ▾

GVRP \*  
Disabled ▾

GMRP \*  
Disabled ▾

IEEE 802.1X \*  
Disabled ▾

LLDP \*  
Disabled ▾

IGMP \*  
Disabled ▾

Copy configurations to ports ▾ ⓘ

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Spanning Tree</b>	Enable or disable Spanning Tree tunneling for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>GVRP</b>	Enable or disable GVRP tunneling for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>GMRP</b>	Enable or disable GMRP tunneling for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>IEEE 802.1X</b>	Enable or disable IEEE 802.1X tunneling for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>LLDP</b>	Enable or disable LLDP tunneling for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>IGMP</b>	Enable or disable IGMP tunneling for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## Q-in-Q VLAN Mapping




**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - VLAN Mapping**

This page lets you configure Q-in-Q VLAN mappings for your device.

### Limitations

You can create up to 300 Q-in-Q VLAN mapping entries.

## Q-in-Q VLAN Mapping List

	 Search			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Customer VLAN ID	Service VLAN ID	Port	
<input type="checkbox"/> 	500	1	3/3	

Max. 300      Items per page: 50      1 - 1 of 1      << < > >>

UI Setting	Description
<b>Customer VLAN ID</b>	Shows the customer VLAN ID used for the VLAN mapping.
<b>Service VLAN ID</b>	Shows the service VLAN ID used for the VLAN mapping.
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port used for the VLAN mapping.

## Q-in-Q VLAN Mapping - Create VLAN Mapping Entry

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - VLAN Mapping

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - VLAN Mapping** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new VLAN mapping entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

**Add a VLAN Mapping Entry**

Customer VLAN ID \*  Service VLAN ID \*

Port \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Customer VLAN ID</b>	Select a customer VLAN ID to use for the VLAN mapping.	1 to 4094	N/A
<b>Service VLAN ID</b>	Select a service VLAN ID to use for the VLAN mapping.	Drop-down list of service VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>Port</b>	Select a port to use for the VLAN mapping.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Q-in-Q VLAN Mapping - Edit VLAN Mapping Entry

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - VLAN Mapping

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - VLAN Mapping** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the Q-in-Q VLAN mapping entry.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This VLAN Mapping Entry

Customer VLAN ID *	Service VLAN ID *
500	1
1 - 4094	
Port *	
3/3	

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Customer VLAN ID</b>	Select a customer VLAN ID to use for the VLAN mapping.	1 to 4094	N/A
<b>Service VLAN ID</b>	Select a service VLAN ID to use for the VLAN mapping.	Drop-down list of service VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>Port</b>	Select a port to use for the VLAN mapping.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Delete a VLAN Mapping Entry

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Q-in-Q - VLAN Mapping

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑) icon.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Customer VLAN ID	Service VLAN ID	Port
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	500	1	3/3

Max: 300      Items per page: 50      1 - 1 of 1      << < > >>

## GARP

Generic Attribute Registration Protocol (GARP) is a communication protocol defined by IEEE 802.1 that offers a generic framework for bridges to register and de-register an attribute value.

In a VLAN structure, two GARP applications can be applied:

- **GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP)** is used to register VLAN trunking between multilayer switches.
- **GARP Multicast Registration Protocol (GMRP)** provides a constrained multicast flooding facility.

## GARP Settings

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > GARP**

This page lets you configure GARP settings for each port.

### GARP List

	Port	Join Time	Leave Time	Leave All Time
	1/3	200	600	10000
	1/4	200	600	10000
	1/5	200	600	10000

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows which port the entry is for.
<b>Join Time</b>	Shows the join time in seconds for the port.
<b>Leave Time</b>	Shows the leave time in seconds for the port.
<b>Leave All Time</b>	Shows the leave all time in seconds for the port.

## GARP - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > GARP

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > GARP** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the GARP parameters for each port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

Join Time \*

200

---

10 - 1073741810

Leave Time \*

600

---

30 - 2147483630

Leave All Time \*

10000

---

40 - 2147483640

Copy configurations to ports ▼ ⓘ

---

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Join Time (sec.)</b>	Specify the join time in seconds.	10 to 499999980	200
<b>Leave Time (sec.)</b>	Specify the leave time in seconds.	30 to 499999980	600
<b>Leave All time (sec.)</b>	Specify the leave all time in seconds.	30 to 499999990	10000
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## MAC

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > MAC

This section lets you manage MAC related switching features of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Static Unicast
- MAC Address Table

### About Static Unicast

Static Unicast lets you manually define specific forwarding paths for data packets destined for particular devices on the network.

### Static Unicast

#### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > MAC > Static Unicast

This page lets you manage your device's static unicast entries.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 512 static unicast entries.

## Unicast Table

	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Port
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	00:11:22:33:44:55	po1

Max: 256

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID used for the static unicast entry.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address used for the static unicast entry.
<b>Port</b>	Shows which ports are included for the static unicast entry.

### Add a Static Unicast Entry

#### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > MAC > Static Unicast

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Layer 2 Switching > MAC > Static Unicast** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a new static unicast entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID.	Drop-down list of VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the static unicast MAC address of the port.	Valid unicast MAC address	N/A
<b>Port</b>	Specify which ports you want to include in the static unicast group	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About MAC Address Tables

The MAC address table is a database maintained on your device that acts like a directory to keep track of all the devices currently connected to the network. Each entry in the table includes a device's unique identifier, known as its Media Access Control (MAC) address, and the specific switch port it is connected to.

### Note

Moxa devices manage MAC address learning for VLANs using IVL (Independent VLAN Learning), which uses separate MAC address tables for each VLAN so that MAC address learning for different VLANs do not interfere with each other.

A MAC table will be stored in the format of MAC + VID. This allows the same MAC address to be used in multiple VLANs without causing forwarding issues.

This may lead to a larger MAC address table size, as each VLAN maintains its own individual address table, and the number of MAC address entries will increase based on the number of VLAN member ports used.

## MAC Address Table

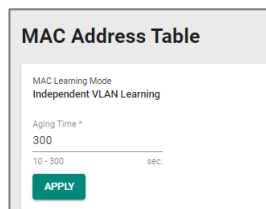
**Menu Path:** [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [MAC](#) > [MAC Address Table](#)

This page lets you view your device's MAC address table and set the aging time for MAC address entries.

### Limitations

The MAC address table can hold up to 32768 entries.

## MAC Address Settings



**MAC Address Table**

MAC Learning Mode  
Independent VLAN Learning

Aging Time \*  
300  
10 - 300 sec.

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MAC Learning Mode</b>	Shows the current MAC learning mode.	N/A	Independent VLAN Learning
<b>Aging Time</b>	Specify the aging time for MAC address entries in seconds. The aging time determines how long entries will be kept in the MAC address table in the device's memory before expiring.	10 to 300	300

Click APPLY to save your changes.

## MAC Address Table List

Index	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Type	Port
1	1	00:90:E8:A9:ED:2B	Learnt Unicast	2

Max. 16384

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index number of the MAC address.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows which VLAN ID is being used for the MAC address.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address of the device.
<b>Type</b>	Shows what kind of MAC address entry this is: <b>Learnt Unicast:</b> Used for all learnt unicast MAC addresses. <b>Learnt Multicast:</b> Used for all learnt multicast MAC addresses. <b>Static Unicast:</b> Used for all static unicast MAC addresses. <b>Static Multicast:</b> Used for all static multicast MAC addresses.
<b>Port</b>	Shows which port on the device the MAC address is connected to.

## About QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) is a set of techniques and mechanisms used in computer networks to prioritize certain types of traffic to ensure reliable delivery of data and

optimize network performance. QoS mechanisms allow network administrators to define policies and rules for managing network resources and controlling the flow of traffic based on factors such as traffic type and application requirements.

This device has the following QoS features:

- Classification
- Ingress Rate Limit
- Scheduler
- Egress Shaper

## QoS In Depth

This device provides Quality of Service (QoS) for your network by classifying and prioritizing traffic to make data delivery more reliable. Traffic can be classified by applying IEEE 802.1p/1Q Layer 2 CoS (Class of Service) tags or Layer 3 DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) information. The device can use these together with a set of rules that specify how each type of traffic should be treated as it passes through the device. This allows delivery of traffic to be prioritized to ensure that high-priority data is transmitted with minimum delay. Refer to Classification for more information about traffic classification.

Two scheduling algorithms, Strict Priority and Weighted Round Robin, are available to empower network administrators to choose the most suitable method for packet transmission in their field applications. Refer to Scheduler for more information.

In addition to packet classification for incoming packets and scheduling for outgoing packets, users can also establish a rate threshold for incoming data. When this limit is exceeded, they can choose to either drop or remark the packet. Refer to Ingress Rate Limit for more information.

The egress shaper helps optimize outbound traffic, maintain network stability, and ensure efficient utilization of available bandwidth resources. Refer to Egress Shaper for more information.

## QoS

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS**

This section lets you enable and configure your device's QoS settings.

This section includes these pages:

- Classification
- Ingress Rate Limit
- Scheduler
- Egress Shaper

 **Note**

For MRX platform devices, QoS behavior will be consistent as long as the chipset solutions are the same. Therefore, these devices will exhibit identical QoS behavior.

## Classification

Traffic classification and prioritization allows you to classify data for prioritization so that time-sensitive and system-critical data can be transferred smoothly and with minimal delay over a network.

Benefits of using traffic classification and prioritization include:

- Improving network performance by controlling a wide variety of traffic types and managing congestion
- Assigning priorities to different categories of traffic, such as setting higher priorities for time-critical or mission-critical applications
- Providing predictable throughput to improve the performance of multimedia applications—such as video conferencing or voice over IP—to minimize traffic delay and jitter
- Optimizing network utilization depending on application usage and usage needs, allowing the amount of traffic to increase without requiring increases in backbone bandwidth

Traffic classification and prioritization uses eight traffic queues to ensure that higher priority traffic can be forwarded separately from lower priority traffic to help guarantee quality of service (QoS) for your network.

Traffic classification and prioritization for your Moxa device is based on two standards:

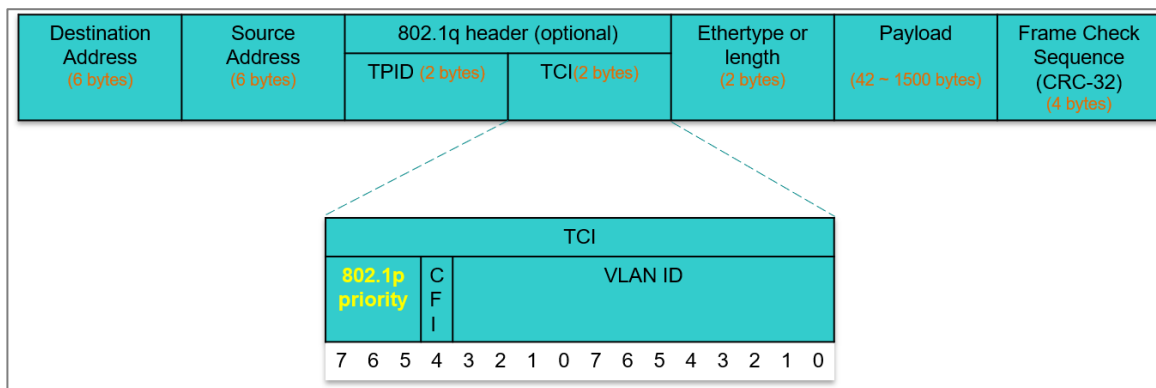
- **IEEE 802.1p Class of Service:** A Layer 2 QoS marking scheme

- **Differentiated Services (DiffServ) Traffic Marking:** A Layer 3 QoS marking scheme

### IEEE 802.1p Class of Service (CoS) In Depth

The IEEE Std 802.1D 2005 Edition marking scheme, which is an enhancement to IEEE Std 802.1D, enables Quality of Service on a LAN. Traffic service levels are defined in the IEEE 802.1Q 4-byte tag, which is used to carry VLAN identification as well as IEEE 802.1p priority information. If the 802.1q header presents and the Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) value is 0x8100, then it means the frame is tagged. The TPID is followed by a 2-byte field Tag Control Information (TCI) which contains a 3-bit 802.1p priority field as shown in below figure.

The IEEE Std 802.1D 2005 Edition priority marking scheme assigns an IEEE 802.1p priority level between 0 and 7 to each frame, which specifies the level of service that the associated packets shall be handled.



The table below shows an example of how different traffic types can be mapped to the eight IEEE 802.1p priority levels.

IEEE 802.1p Priority (decimal)	IEEE 802.1p Priority (binary)	IEEE 802.1D Traffic Type
0	0 0 0	Best Effort
1	0 0 1	Background (lowest priority)
2	0 1 0	Reserved
3	0 1 1	Excellent Effort (business critical)

IEEE 802.1p Priority (decimal)	IEEE 802.1p Priority (binary)	IEEE 802.1D Traffic Type
4	1 0 0	Controlled Load (streaming multimedia)
5	1 0 1	Video (interactive media)
6	1 1 0	Voice (interactive voice)
7	1 1 1	Network Control Reserved traffic

Even though the IEEE 802.1p standard is the most widely used prioritization scheme for LAN environments, it still has some restrictions:

- It requires an additional 4-byte tag in the frame, which is normally optional for Ethernet networks. Without this tag, the scheme cannot work.
- The tag is part of the IEEE 802.1Q header, so to implement QoS at Layer 2, the entire network must implement IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tagging.
- It is only supported within a LAN and does not cross the WAN boundaries, since the IEEE 802.1Q tags will be removed when the packets pass through a router.

### Differentiated Services (DiffServ) Traffic Marking In Depth

DiffServ is a Layer 3 marking scheme that uses the DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) field in the IP header to specify the packet priority. DSCP is an intelligent method of traffic marking that allows you to choose how your network prioritizes different types of traffic. The DSCP field can be set from 0 to 63 to map to user-defined service levels, enabling users to regulate and categorize traffic by application and assign different service levels.

### Advantages of DiffServ over IEEE 802.1Q

- You can prioritize and assign different traffic with appropriate latency, throughput, or reliability for each port.
- No extra tags are required.
- The DSCP priority tags are carried in the IP header, which can pass through WAN boundaries and through the Internet.
- DSCP is backwards compatible with IPv4 ToS (Type of Service), which allows operation with legacy devices that use IPv4 Layer 3.

## Default Mapping of DSCP and CoS Values

DSCP values	Mapped CoS value
0 to 7	0
8 to 15	1
16 to 23	2
24 to 31	3
32 to 39	4
40 to 47	5
48 to 55	6
56 to 63	7

### Traffic Prioritization In Depth

Moxa switches classify traffic based on Layer 2 of the OSI 7 layer model, and prioritize outbound traffic according to the priority information defined in received packets. Incoming traffic is classified based on the IEEE 802.1p service level field and is assigned to the appropriate egress priority queue.

Traffic flows through the switch as follows:

- A received packet may or may not have an 802.1p tag associated with it. If it does not, then it is given a default CoS value according to the port settings in the Classification section.
- Each egress queue has associated 802.1p priority levels that can be defined by users. Packets will be placed in the appropriate priority queue. When the packet reaches the head of its queue and is about to be transmitted, the device determines whether or not the egress port belongs to the VLAN group. If it is, then the new 802.1p tag is used in the extended 802.1D header.

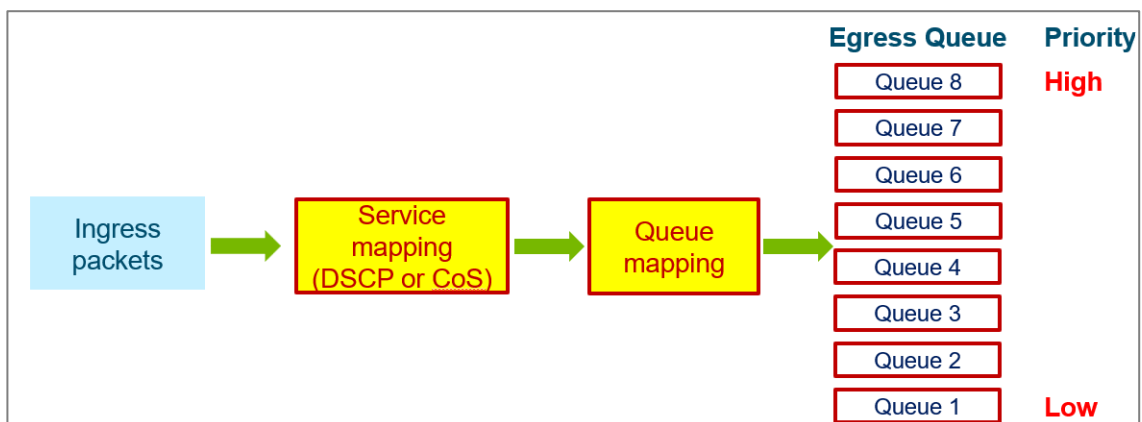
Please be aware that the priority of redundancy protocol control packets is determined by the switch and is not influenced by user-specified QoS settings. The prioritization of

traffic is determined by the QoS policies configured on network devices, and remains consistent regardless of whether the interface used is a single port or a trunk port.

### Traffic Queues In Depth

Moxa switches have eight different traffic queues that allow packet prioritization to occur. The priority of these queues ranges from 1 (lowest priority) to 8 (highest priority). Higher priority traffic can pass through the switch without being delayed by lower priority traffic.

Ingress packets containing DSCP or CoS fields require classification and mapping to a priority queue. Incoming packets with a specified DSCP value at Layer 3 are remapped to a CoS value at Layer 2 before being directed to an egress queue. The corresponding mapping of DSCP to CoS and the CoS to the egress queue priority should be preconfigured on a Moxa switch. As each packet arrives at the switch, it undergoes ingress processing (which includes classification, marking/re-marking), and is then sorted into the appropriate egress queue.



Packets lacking DSCP or CoS values will be directed to the appropriate egress queue based on the settings of Untag Default Priority configured in Port Settings. Refer to Port Classification - Edit Port Setting for more information.

### Classification

#### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification

This page lets you configure your device's QoS classifications.

This page includes these tabs:

- DSCP Mapping

- CoS Mapping
- Port Settings

## DSCP Mapping

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - DSCP Mapping

This page lets you view and edit your DSCP CoS mappings.

### DSCP Mapping List

	DSCP	CoS Priority
	0	0
	1	0
	2	0
	3	0

UI Setting	Description
<b>DSCP</b>	Shows the DSCP value for the entry.
<b>CoS Priority</b>	Shows the CoS priority mapped to the DSCP value.

### Edit DSCP Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - DSCP Mapping

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for an entry on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - DSCP Mapping** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit CoS priority for a DSCP value.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Edit DSCP 0 Settings**

CoS Priority \*

0

CANCEL APPLY







UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>CoS Priority</b>	Specify the CoS priority to assign to the DSCP value. Higher numbers have higher priority.	0 to 7	DSCP 0 to 7: 0 DSCP 8 to 15: 1 DSCP 16 to 23: 2 DSCP 24 to 31: 3 DSCP 32 to 39: 4 DSCP 40 to 47: 5 DSCP 48 to 55: 6 DSCP 56 to 63: 7

## CoS Mapping

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - CoS Mapping

This page lets you view and edit your CoS Queue mappings.

## CoS Mapping List

CoS		Queue
 0	1	
 1	2	
 2	3	
 3	8	
 4	5	
 5	6	

UI Setting	Description
<b>CoS</b>	Shows the CoS value for the entry.

UI Setting	Description
Queue	Shows the queue mapped to the CoS value.

## Edit CoS Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - CoS Mapping

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a CoS value on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - CoS Mapping** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you map a queue to a CoS value.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.






UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Queue	Select a queue to map to the CoS value. Queues with higher numbers have higher priority.	1 to 8	CoS 0: 1 CoS 1: 2 CoS 2: 3 CoS 3: 4 CoS 4: 5 CoS 5: 6 CoS 6: 7 CoS 7: 8

## QoS - Port Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - Port Settings

This page lets you manage the trust type and CoS value for untagged packets on a per-port basis.


## Port Settings List

Q Search			
Port	Trust Type	Priority	
 1	CoS	0	
 2	CoS	3	
 3	CoS	3	
 4	CoS	3	
 5	CoS	3	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number for the entry.
<b>Trust Type</b>	Shows the trust type used to classify traffic for the port.
<b>Priority</b>	Shows the CoS value to use for untagged packets for the port.

## QoS - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - Port Settings


Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Classification - Port Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the trust type and priority for a specific port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

Trust Type \*  
CoS

Untag Default Priority \*  
3

Copy configurations to ports 

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Trust Type</b>	Select the trust type used to classify traffic for the port.	CoS / DSCP	CoS
<b>Untag Default Priority</b>	Specify a CoS value to use for untagged packets for the port. Higher values will have higher priority.	0 to 7	3
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About Ingress Rate Limits

Ingress rate limits drop—or "mark"—network traffic when it exceeds user-defined thresholds.

### Ingress Rate Limits In-depth

There are two elements to this process:

- **Meter** - An algorithm in the switch that monitors and limits traffic by applying QoS markers to data packets or dropping them entirely
- **Marker** - The DSCP/802.1p field of data packets is assigned a value or "marked" by the QoS policies, determining their handling in the network

Meter algorithms include simple token bucket and SrTCM (Single Rate Three Color Marker) (RFC2697).

In addition to ingress rate management, the switch also offers an option for the administrators to configure the shutdown of an Ethernet port that may be under attack from an excess of incoming packets, such as a Denial-of-Service attack.

### About Port Shutdown

Ports can be shutdown to avoid broadcast storms.

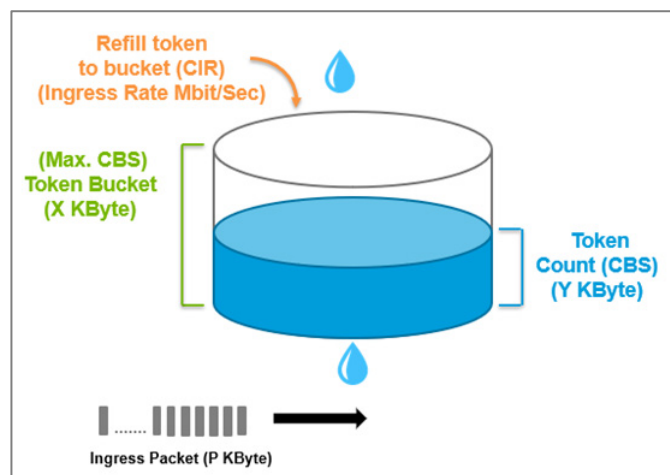
In general, any user shall not consume unlimited bandwidth and influence others' access. One particular scenario is that a malfunctioning switch or mis-configured network might cause "broadcast storms". Moxa industrial Ethernet switches not only prevent broadcast

storms, but can also regulate ingress packet rates, giving administrators full control of their limited bandwidth to prevent undesirable effects caused by unpredictable faults.

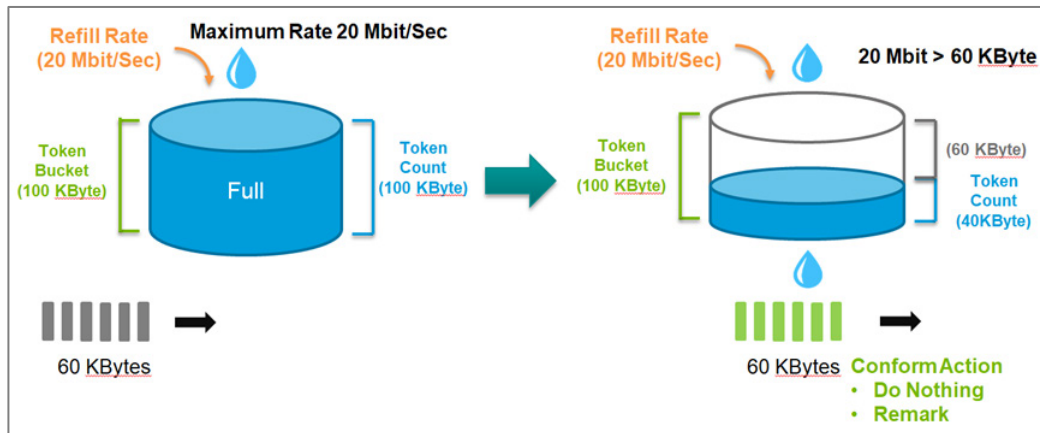
The network administrator has the option to establish a maximum throughput threshold (in Mbps) for incoming packets on a designated port and activate this function. If unexpected ingress packets are detected on that port, the physical Ethernet port will be disabled, preventing further packet transmission. Re-activation of the port can be done manually or left to occur automatically after the pre-defined release interval, specified in minutes, has elapsed.

### About Token Buckets

Token Bucket is an algorithm used to achieve an efficient network flow control and manage bandwidth. This algorithm is based on a token bucket that allows for a traffic surge for short periods. When a token is unavailable, no burst of packets can be sent. Under this concept, the number of tokens will be refilled in the bucket at specific intervals. Users need to configure these settings so that the tokens in the bucket are always available to ensure packets can be sent when necessary.



**CAR (Committed Access Rate)** is a traffic control mechanism used to ensure that packets meet the network rules before they enter the network. CAR can guarantee the traffic flow is under user-defined control; the packets exceeding the rule will be either dropped or remarked and transmitted again. When network traffic is jammed, these packets will be dropped first.



Token Bucket is an algorithm that is demonstrated as a container in the image below. The token can be seen as a marker to mark a packet that is allowed to be transmitted through this switch. When the token is flowing into the bucket, the length of the bucket will be consumed as the volume of the bucket is limited. When the volume of the bucket is insufficient, some packets will be dropped or remarked and transmitted again. This algorithm can control the speed of the traffic flow by consuming the speed of the token in the bucket.

### About Single Rate Three Color Markers

Single Rate Three Color Markers (SrTCM) is a policing scheme for ingress rate limits. Traffic marking is based on a Committed Information Rate (CIR) and two associated burst sizes:

- Committed Burst Size (CBS)
- Excess Burst Size (EBS)

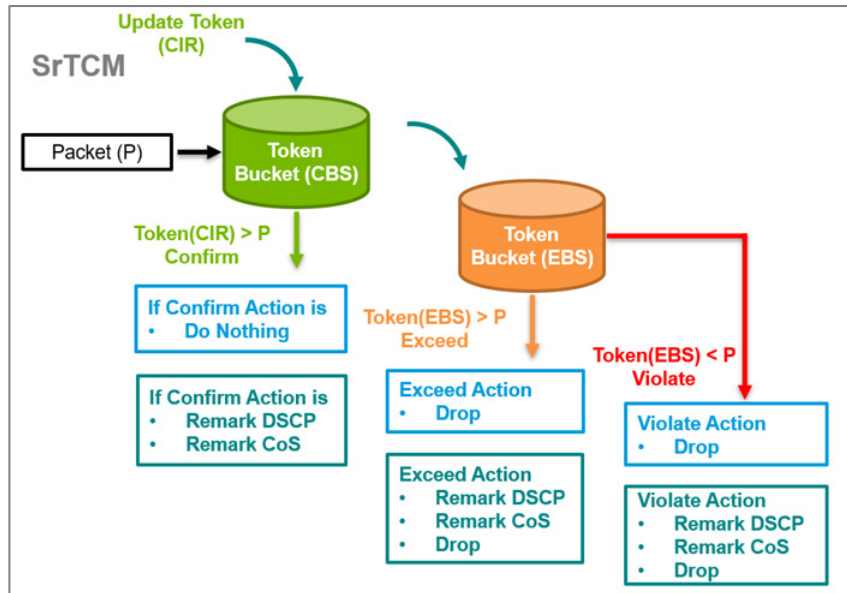
A packet is marked green if it does not exceed the CBS, yellow if it does exceed the CBS, but not the EBS, and red otherwise.

SrTCM will categorize the ingress packet by its length, and mark it as one of three colors:

- **Green:** performs the "conform" action. It could be "Do nothing", "Remark DSCP" or "Remark CoS". The Token Bucket (CBS) will deduct corresponding tokens.
- **Yellow:** performs the "exceed" action. It could be "Drop", "Remark DSCP" or "Remark CoS". The Token Bucket (EBS) will deduct corresponding tokens.
- **Red:** performs the "violate" action. It could be "Drop", "Remark DSCP" or "Remark CoS".

If you select "Do nothing" as the conform action, then "Drop" will be the only action when it enters the Exceed or Violate state.

The SrTCM is useful for ingress policing of a service, where only the length, not the peak rate, of the burst determines service eligibility.



### Dropping Limit-exceeding Incoming Packets

You can setup the ingress rate limits that will automatically drop packets exceeding limits you specify.

In this example, we will prevent the switch from being overwhelmed by unexpected large amount of ingress packets through port 1, set an ingress rate limit of 5 Mbps on port 1. Then, verify that the device connected to port 2 receives packets at no more than 5 Mbps.

#### Before you begin:

- Change the configuration mode to **Advanced** mode by selecting the mode in the upper right corner of the UI.
  - Create a new **VLAN ID** with a value of **10**
  - Configure Port 1 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled
  - Configure Port 2 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled
1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.

2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching**→**QoS**→**Ingress Rate Limit**→**General**.

3. Click **[Edit]** corresponding to **Port 1**.

**Result:** The **Edit Port Settings** dialogue appears.

4. In the **Ingress Rate (CIR)** field, specify 5 Mbps, and then click **Apply**.

**Result:** The new Ingress Rate (CIR) will appear in the table.

### **Results:**

When a device connected to port 1 sends out a large number of packets (for example, at a rate exceeding 10 Mbps), the switch will throttle the incoming packets to match the configured limit (5 Mbps in this example) before forwarding them to port 2.

## **Remarking Limit-exceeding Incoming Packets**

### **Abstract:**

**Short Description:** You can setup the ingress rate limits that will automatically remark packets exceeding limits you specify.

In this example, we will limit incoming packets to 5 Mbps on Port 1—maintaining a consistent ingress rate. To avoid dropping data caused by a sudden influx of packets from Port 1, the outgoing packets will be remarked with a DSCP value (0x07) before sending over Port 2.

### **Before you begin:**

- Change the configuration mode to **Advanced** mode by selecting the mode in the upper right corner of the UI.
- Create a new **VLAN ID** with a value of **10**
- Configure Port 1 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled
- Configure Port 2 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.

2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching**→**QoS**→**Ingress Rate Limit**→**General**.

3. Click **[Edit]** corresponding to **Port 1**.

**Result:** The **Edit Port Settings** dialogue appears.

4. Specify the following:

Value	Option
<b>Type</b>	<b>Simple Token Bucket</b>
<b>Ingress Rate (CIR)</b>	5 Mbps
<b>Conform Action</b>	<b>Remark DSCP</b>
<b>Conform Action &gt; Remark Value</b>	<b>0</b>
<b>Violate Action</b>	<b>Remark DSCP</b>
<b>Violate Action &gt; Remark Value</b>	<b>7</b>

5. Click **Apply** to save changes.

### Results:

When a device connected to port 1 sends out a large number of packets (for example, at a rate exceeding 10 Mbps), the switch will throttle the incoming packets to match the configured limit (5 Mbps in this example) and remark DSCP value (0x07) without dropping the packets. This ensures the timely transmission of data to the device connected on port 2.

### Ingress Rate Limit

#### Menu Path: [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [QoS](#) > [Ingress Rate Limit](#)

This page lets you configure your device's QoS ingress rate limit.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Port Shutdown

### Ingress Rate Limit - General







#### Menu Path: [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [QoS](#) > [Ingress Rate Limit - General](#)

This page lets you view and edit the ingress rate limit for each port.

## Ingress Rate Limit List

### Note

Some fields are only visible when using Advanced Mode.

Search									
Port	Type	Ingress Rate (CIR)	CBS	EBS	Mode	Conform Action	Exceed Action	Violate Action	
 1	Simple Token Bucket	100	1024	--	--	Do Nothing	--	Drop	
 2	Simple Token Bucket	100	1024	--	--	Do Nothing	--	Drop	
 3	Simple Token Bucket	100	1024	--	--	Do Nothing	--	Drop	
 4	Simple Token Bucket	100	1024	--	--	Do Nothing	--	Drop	
 5	Simple Token Bucket	100	1024	--	--	Do Nothing	--	Drop	
 6	Simple Token Bucket	100	1024	--	--	Do Nothing	--	Drop	

### UI Setting

### Description

#### Port

Shows the port number for the entry.

#### Type

Shows the ingress limit type for the port.

#### Ingress Rate (CIR)

Shows the ingress Committed Information Rate (CIR) value for the port.

#### CBS

Shows the ingress Committed Burst Size (CBS) value for the port.

#### EBS

Shows the ingress Excess Burst Size (EBS) value for the port.

#### Mode

Shows the meter mode for the port.

### Note

Currently, only color-blind mode is supported for metering.

#### Conform Action

Shows the conform action for the port.

#### Exceed Action

Shows the exceed action for the port.

#### Violate Action

Shows the violate action for the port.

## Ingress Rate Limit - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Ingress Rate Limit - General**

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Ingress Rate Limit - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you select the traffic policy and configure associated actions for specific conditions on a per-port basis.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Type</b>	Specify the ingress limit type to use.	Simple Token Bucket / SrTCM	Simple Token Bucket
<b>Ingress Rate (CIR)</b>	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed for ingress through the port in Mbps.	1 to 1000	100 for Fast Ethernet ports, 1000 for Gigabit Ethernet ports
<b>CBS (Committed Burst Size)</b>	Specify the data buffer size in KB for the port that can be used when the data rate exceeds the CIR rate. Data that exceeds the CIR rate will be saved in this buffer, and will be sent when bandwidth is available.	0 to 10240	1024

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>EBS (Excess Burst Size)</b> <b>(if Type is SrTCM)</b>	Specify the data buffer size in KB for the port when the data rate exceeds the CIR rate. Data that exceeds the CIR rate will be saved in the CBS buffer, and if the CBS buffer is full, data will be stored in the EBS buffer and will be sent when bandwidth is available.	0 to 10240	1024
<b>Conform Action</b>	Select a conform action for the port to take. If <b>Remark CoS</b> or <b>Remark DSCP</b> is selected, an additional input field will appear where a Remark value must be specified.	Do Nothing / Remark CoS / Remark DSCP	Do Nothing
<b>Exceed Action</b> <b>(if Type is SrTCM)</b>	Select an action to take if the amount of data exceeds both the CBS and EBS buffers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Drop:</b> Packets marked as yellow will be dropped.</li> <li><b>Remark CoS:</b> Specify a CoS Remark value to use if a packet is marked as yellow. This is only available if <b>Remark CoS</b> is selected for the <b>Conform Action</b>.</li> <li><b>Remark DSCP:</b> Specify a DSCP Remark value to use if a packet is marked as yellow. This is only available if <b>Remark DSCP</b> is selected for the <b>Conform Action</b>.</li> </ul>	Drop / Remark CoS / Remark DSCP	Drop
<b>Violate Action</b>	Select an action to take if a packet violates CIR and CBS. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drop: Packets marked as violated will be dropped.</li> <li><b>Remark CoS:</b> Specify a CoS Remark value to use if a packet is marked as violated. This is only available if <b>Remark CoS</b> is selected for the <b>Conform Action</b>.</li> <li><b>Remark DSCP:</b> Specify a DSCP Remark value to use if a packet is marked as violated. This is only available if <b>Remark DSCP</b> is selected for the <b>Conform Action</b>.</li> </ul>	Drop / Remark CoS / Remark DSCP	Drop
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Port Shutdown

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Ingress Rate Limit - Port Shutdown

This page lets you enable the port shutdown feature and configure its settings for each port.

## Port Shutdown Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Shutdown</b>	<p>Enable or disable the port shutdown feature for the device.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>After enabling this, you will still need to configure port shutdown for each port you want to use the feature with.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Release Interval</b>	Specify how long in minutes to wait before a shut down port is enabled again. 0 means if this port is shut down, it will remain shut down until manually enabled.	0 to 10080	60

## Port Shutdown List

Port	Port Shutdown	Threshold (Mbps)
1	Disabled	100
2	Disabled	100
3	Disabled	100
4	Disabled	100
5	Disabled	100

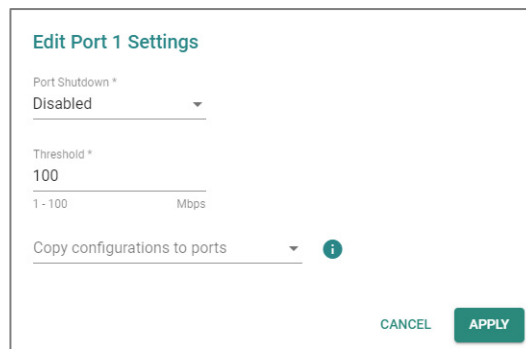
UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number for the entry.
<b>Port Shutdown</b>	Shows if port shutdown is enabled or disabled for the port.
<b>Threshold (Mbps)</b>	Shows the threshold in Mbps required to trigger port shutdown for the port.

## Port Shutdown - Edit Port Settings

## Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Ingress Rate Limit - Port Shutdown

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Ingress Rate Limit - Port Shutdown** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the threshold to trigger port shutdown.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



**Edit Port 1 Settings**

Port Shutdown \*  
Disabled

Threshold \*  
100  
1 - 100 Mbps

Copy configurations to ports

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Shutdown</b>	Enable or disable port shutdown for this port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Threshold</b>	Specify the threshold (Mbps) required to trigger a port shutdown.	Fast Ethernet ports: 1 to 100  Gigabit Ethernet ports: 1 to 1000	Fast Ethernet ports: 100  Gigabit Ethernet ports: 1000
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About Scheduler

The Scheduler functions as an arbiter within the switching forwarding paths, prioritizing traffic flows based on user-defined criteria. This mechanism enhances data transmission efficiency and ensures that critical packets are transmitted with priority. Moxa devices support two scheduling algorithms: Strict Priority and Weighted Round Robin.

- **Weighted Round Robin:** The Weighted Round Robin type allows users to give priority to specific packets in the higher weighted queue to ensure those packets will be sent first. Moxa switches now have 8 queues, and the weights from highest to lowest are 8:8:4:4:2:2:1:1.

- **Strict:** The Strict Priority type allows users to determine to transmit packets in the highest priority queue first, while packets with lower priority will be transmitted later. This guarantees that traffic with the highest level of priority for data transmission will go first.

Moxa network devices are equipped with multiple traffic queues that enable packet prioritization. This allows higher-priority traffic to pass through the network devices without being delayed by lower-priority traffic. As each packet enters the network devices, it undergoes ingress processing, including classification and marking/re-marking, before being placed into the appropriate egress queue. The network device then forwards packets based on their assigned queue.

### **Scenario: Configuring 3 Devices with Strict Priority**

In this scenario, we will configure three attached devices on the network device with strict priority.

Specifically, we will focus on how packets are managed as they leave (egress) the network device on a particular port. In this case, the setup involves three devices:

- **Device A:** Connected to port 1 on the network device.
- **Device B:** Connected to port 2 on the network device.
- **Device C:** Connected to port 3 on the network device.

### **Objective**

The goal is to configure a "Strict Priority" scheduler on port 3 of the switch. This scheduler will control how packets are prioritized when they exit the switch from this port (which is connected to Device C).

### **Key Components**

1. **DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) Value:**
  - This is a field in the IP header that indicates the level of priority a packet should have.
  - In this scenario, packets from Device A have a DSCP value of 0x48, which signifies they should be treated with higher priority.
2. **Egress Queues:**

- Network switches typically have multiple egress queues per port. Each queue can be assigned different levels of priority.
- In this case, queue 7 is configured as a high-priority queue, while queue 1 is a lower-priority queue.

### Configuration Details

- **Device A (port 1)** is sending packets with a DSCP value of 0x48. These packets are mapped to egress queue 7 on port 3. Queue 7 is given a higher priority.
- **Device B (port 2)** is sending normal packets without any special DSCP value, so these packets are mapped to egress queue 1 on port 3. Queue 1 has a lower priority.

### "Strict Priority" Scheduler

- **Strict Priority Scheduling** is a mechanism used to determine how packets are sent out when multiple queues have packets waiting to be transmitted.
- In a strict priority setup, the switch will always service higher-priority queues first. This means that as long as there are packets in queue 7 (the high-priority queue), they will be sent out before any packets in queue 1 (the lower-priority queue) are even considered.

### Expected Behavior

- When **Device A and Device B** both send packets to **Device C** at the same time:
  - Packets from **Device A** (with DSCP 0x48) will be placed in the high-priority egress queue 7 and will be transmitted first.
  - Packets from **Device B** will be placed in the low-priority egress queue 1. These packets will only be transmitted once queue 7 is empty.
- As a result, packets from **Device A** will reach **Device C** quickly, without being delayed by the packets from **Device B**.

### Summary

By configuring the scheduler with "Strict Priority" on port 3, we're ensuring that high-priority traffic (from Device A) is not delayed by lower-priority traffic (from Device B). This setup is crucial in scenarios where certain types of data, such as real-time communications or critical control signals, must be delivered promptly without delay.

### Example: Configuring Scheduler for Strict Priority


Strict Priority switching ensures that higher priority packets always preempt lower priority packets.

This example assumes the following configuration, outlined in the preceding section:

- VLAN of 10
- Ports **1/1**, **1/2**, and **1/3** in **Access** mode assigned to **PVID 10**
- **DSCP 48** set to **6**
- **CoS 6** with a **Queue** of **7**

Additionally, the device on Port **1/3** needs to be configured to set its outgoing packets with a QoS DSCP value of 0x48.

If your environment does not match the above configuration, the example may not function properly.

1. Sign in to the devices using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Scheduler**.
3. Locate Port **1/3**, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

4. Make sure **Type** is set to **Strict Priority**, and then click **Apply**.

### Scheduler

#### Menu Path: [Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Scheduler](#)

This page lets you configure your device's QoS scheduler on a per-port basis.

## Scheduler List



Port	Type
 1	SP
 2	SP
 3	SP
 4	SP
 5	SP

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number for the entry.
<b>Type</b>	Shows the scheduling algorithm selected for the port.

### Scheduler - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path:** Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Scheduler

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Scheduler** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you select the scheduling algorithm for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1/1 Settings

Type \*  
Weighted Round Robin ▾

Queue 1 Weight * <u>1</u> 1 - 100	Queue 2 Weight * <u>1</u> 1 - 100
Queue 3 Weight * <u>2</u> 1 - 100	Queue 4 Weight * <u>2</u> 1 - 100
Queue 5 Weight * <u>4</u> 1 - 100	Queue 6 Weight * <u>4</u> 1 - 100
Queue 7 Weight * <u>8</u> 1 - 100	Queue 8 Weight * <u>8</u> 1 - 100

Copy configurations to ports ▾ ⓘ

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Type</b>	<p>Select the scheduler algorithm to use for the port.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Strict Priority:</b> Strict priority will be used.</li> <li><b>Weighted Round Robin:</b> Queued packets will be forwarded based on their associated weight.</li> <li><b>1SP7WRR:</b> Queue 8 will use Strict Priority and the packets in other queues will be forwarded based on their associated weight.</li> <li><b>2SP6WRR:</b> Queues 7 and 8 will use Strict Priority and the packets in other queues will be forwarded based on their associated weight.</li> </ul>	Strict Priority / Weighted Round Robin / 1SP7WRR / 2SP6WRR	Strict Priority
<b>Queue 1 to 8 Weight</b>	<p>Specify the weight for packets forwarded in the queue.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If Type is 1SP7WRR, Queue 8 will be fixed to strict priority (SP).</p> <p>If Type is 2SP6WRR, Queues 7 and 8 will be fixed to strict priority (SP).</p> </div>	<p>1 to 8</p> <p>Subsequent queue weights must be equal or higher than the previous one.</p>	1,1,2,2,4,4,8,8

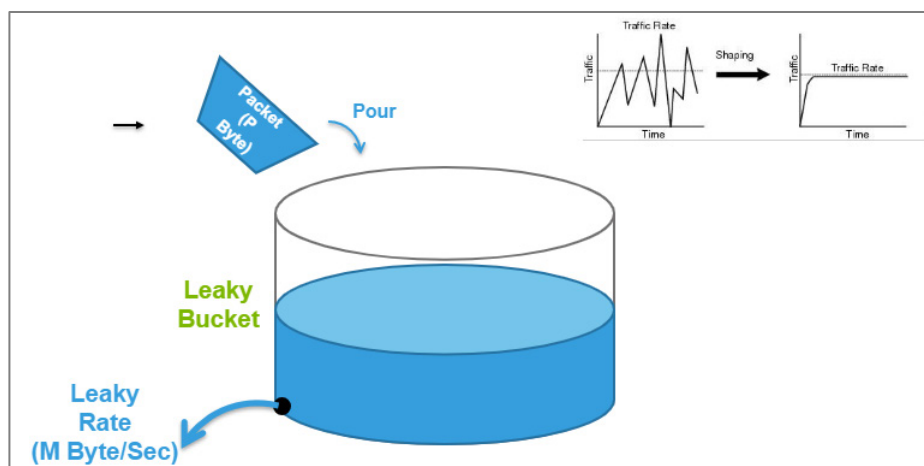
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Configuring Egress Shaper

A shaper for egress traffic buffers or queues excess traffic to hold packets and shape traffic flow when source data rates are higher than expected.

### About Egress Shaper

The Egress Shaper uses a meter algorithm known as a leaky bucket. Like its physical counterpart, the leaky bucket collects incoming traffic up to a maximum capacity. Data stored in the bucket is released at a steady rate. When the bucket is empty, the flow stops.



If incoming packets would exceed the capacity the bucket, those packets would be non-conforming, and are not added to the bucket (dropped). Data will be added to the bucket as space becomes available for conforming packets. To setup Egress Shaper on a specific port, you will need to provide CIR (Committed Information Rate) and CBS (Committed Burst Rate) values.


## Configuring Rate Limits for Outgoing Traffic

You can use egress rate limits to ensure steady flow of traffic to ports you specify. In this scenario, we have 3 devices:





- Device A, connected to the switch at Port 1
- Device B, connected to the switch at Port 2
- Device C, connected to the switch at Port 3

When both Device A and Device B send packets simultaneously to Device C, and there are no rate limits set on ports 1 and 2, Configuring the Committed Information Rate (CIR) to 5 Mbps on port 3 ensures that the outgoing packets maintain a steady packet rate to reach Device C as expected.

### Before you begin:

- Change the configuration mode to **Advanced** mode by selecting the mode in the upper right corner of the UI.
  - Create a new **VLAN ID** with a value of **10**
  - Configure Port 1 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled
  - Configure Port 2 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled
  - Configure Port 3 with a **PVID** of 10 and with **Access mode** enabled
1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
  2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Egress Shaper**.
  3. Click  **[Edit]** corresponding to **Port 3**.  
**Result:** The **Edit Port Settings** dialogue appears.
  4. In the **CIR** field, specify 5 Mbps, and then click **Apply**.  
**Result:** The new Egress Rate (CIR) will appear in the table.






### Egress Shaper

	Port	Egress Rate (CIR)	CBS
	1	100	1024
	2	100	1024
	3	5	1024
	4	100	1024

**Egress Shaper**

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Egress Shaper**

This page lets you configure QoS egress shaper settings on a per-port basis.

	Port	Egress Rate (CIR)	CBS
	1	100	1024
	2	100	1024
	3	100	1024
	4	100	1024
	5	100	1024

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Egress Rate (CIR)</b>	Shows the egress Committed Information Rate (CIR) value for the port.
<b>CBS</b>	Shows the egress Committed Burst Size (CBS) value for the port.

## Egress Shaper - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path:** Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Egress Shaper

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > QoS > Egress Shaper** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the egress shaping settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Port 1 Settings". It contains two input fields: "CIR \*" with the value "100" and a unit of "Mbps", with a valid range of "1 - 100"; and "CBS \*" with the value "1024" and a unit of "Kbyte", with a valid range of "10 - 10240". Below these is a dropdown menu labeled "Copy configurations to ports" with an information icon (i). At the bottom right are "CANCEL" and "APPLY" buttons.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>CIR (Committed Information Rate)</b>	Specify the committed data transmission rate.	Fast Ethernet ports: 1 to 100 Gigabit Ethernet ports: 1 to 1000	Fast Ethernet ports: 100 Gigabit Ethernet ports: 1000
<b>CBS (Committed Burst Size)</b>	Specify the maximum amount of data in KB that is allowed to be transmitted in a burst, even if it would cause the CIR rate to be exceeded.	10 to 10240	1024
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Multicast

**Multicast** is a one-to-many communication method that sends data to a specific group of receivers. Those who wish to receive multicast packets must register for the multicast service; unregistered recipients will not receive the packets. Multicast is an "on-demand" service typically used for audio and video applications. For example, IP cameras (commonly used in CCTV systems) may need to transmit video streams to three different

security guard rooms in a building simultaneously. Multicast is also used for protocol exchanges, as L3 protocols (VRRP, OSPF, RIP, etc) communicate with each other using multicast.

### **Benefits of Multicast:**

- **Efficient bandwidth utilization:** Multicast reduces network congestion by sending data to only interested recipients.
- **Reduced server load:** Multicast servers only need to send data once, rather than multiple times for individual recipients.
- **Scalability:** Multicast can effectively handle large groups of receivers without affecting network performance.

Overall, multicast is a valuable tool for efficient and scalable one-to-many communication, particularly in applications involving audio, video, and protocol exchanges.

## **Multicast In Depth**

As mentioned, multicast is a network communication method designed for efficient one-to-many data transmission. Imagine you have a presentation you want to deliver to a specific group of people in a large conference hall. Instead of emailing it to everyone individually, multicast allows you to send it to a single "group" that only the intended recipients can access.

Here's a breakdown of how it works:

- **Groups and Membership:**
  - Devices interested in receiving the same data stream form a multicast group identified by a unique multicast address.
  - Devices join or leave the group dynamically using protocols like IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol).
- **Source and Data:**
  - A single source device transmits the data (e.g., a video stream, a software update).
  - The data is encapsulated with the specific multicast address of the target group.

- **Network Routing:**

- Network switches and routers play a crucial role in directing the data.
- They recognize the multicast address and replicate the data packet only for the ports connected to devices that are members of the target group.
- Devices not in the group will not receive the data, reducing unnecessary network traffic.

There are three primary methods for controlling multicast traffic on a switch:

- **Static multicast** is for configuring the multicast forwarding entries in the switch in a manual or predetermined manner. (e.g., forward 01:00:5E:05:06:07 to ports 1, 2, and 3). This method suits static networks where you want to control all the multicast flow. Another scenario is that the end device cannot communicate with IGMP protocol.
- **GMRP** allows bridges and the devices at the edge of the network to perform dynamic group membership information registration with the MAC bridges connected to the same LAN section. This method lets bridges communicate with each other to register the static multicast table dynamically.
- **IGMP snooping** allows a device to listen in on the IGMP conversation between hosts and routers. By listening to these conversations, the device maintains an association mapping table between port(s) and multicast groups. This method suits dynamic networks where end devices use IGMP to register the multicast group.

In summary, here are key considerations when selecting a multicast traffic control method:

- For static networks with predetermined multicast destinations, **static multicast** offers a simple solution.
- If you have a network with multiple bridges and static multicast tables on edge devices, **GMRP** can help maintain consistency.
- In dynamic networks where end devices use IGMP, **IGMP snooping** provides efficient management of multicast traffic.

# Multicast

## Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast

This section lets you configure the Multicast settings.

This section includes these pages:

- IGMP Snooping
- GMRP
- Static Multicast

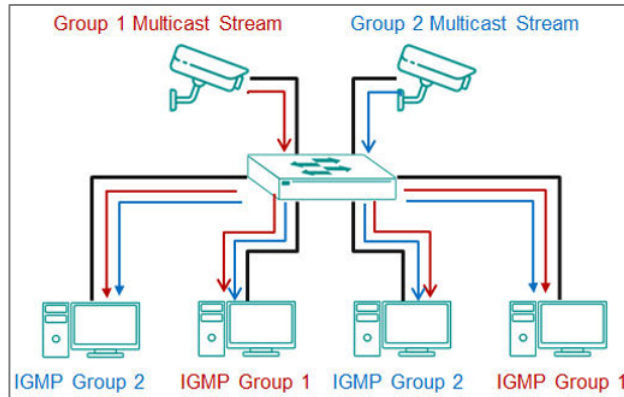
## About IGMP Snooping

IGMP snooping allows switches to reduce the amount of unwanted multicast traffic on a network by maintaining maps of multicast group members, ensuring that multicast packets are only delivered to devices that have explicitly asked to receive them. Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) is a network protocol that hosts nearby routers on networks to construct multicast group memberships. IGMP snooping allows a network switch to listen in on the IGMP conversation between hosts and routers. By listening to these conversations, the switch maintains an association mapping table between port(s) and multicast group.

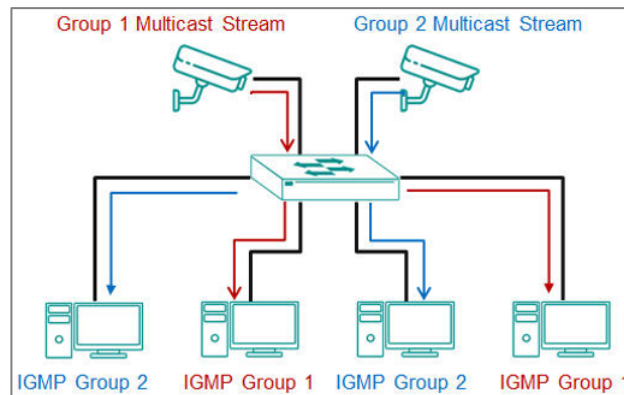
## How IGMP Snooping Works

Without IGMP snooping, a switch will flood multicast traffic to all other non-ingress ports within a broadcast domain (or VLAN). This can cause unnecessary loading for host devices by requiring them to process packets they have not solicited. IGMP snooping can help prevent host devices on a local network from receiving traffic for a multicast group they have not explicitly joined. It provides switches with a mechanism to forward multicast traffic to specific ports that receive IGMP hosts, resulting in more efficient network bandwidth utilization.

## Without IGMP Snooping:



**With IGMP Snooping:**



### Enabling IGMP Snooping

IGMP Snooping must be enabled before it can be configured on specific interfaces.

To enable IGMP snooping, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping** and click **General**.
3. Set **IGMP Snooping** to **Enabled**.
4. Click **Apply**.

IGMP snooping is now enabled. Existing IGMP snooping configurations will now be active.

### Configuring IGMP Snooping

IGMP snooping is configured at the VLAN level.

- VLAN IDs must be created and assigned before IGMP snooping can be configured.
- IGMP Snooping must be enabled before it can be configured on specific interfaces.

To configure IGMP snooping, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping**, and click **VLAN Settings**.

The **IGMP Snooping** list of **VLAN IDs** appears.

3. Click  **[Edit]** corresponding to the VLANs on which to configure IGMP snooping.

**Note:** If you do not see the VLANs you expect, make sure they are correctly assigned.

The Edit VLAN Settings screen appears.

4. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Version</b>	Choose a version corresponding to device support and feature needs.
<b>Query Interval</b>	125
<b>Static Router Port</b>	This is optional.
<b>Config Role</b>	<b>Querier</b>

5. Click **Apply**.

### About IGMP Versions

IGMP protocols regulate the communication mechanism between querier and listener.

For IGMP-related settings, ensure that you have chosen the correct protocol version.

Consult the table below for guidelines on choosing a version.

IGMP Version	Features	Reference
v1	<p>Features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Multicast Group Membership:</b> Host devices can join multicast groups, but there is no explicit leave message. The host will simply stop responding to membership queries.</li> <li>• <b>Membership Query:</b> Network devices periodically send membership queries to determine if any host devices are still interested in receiving multicast traffic.</li> <li>• <b>Membership Report:</b> When a host device wants to join a multicast group, it sends a membership report. If no reports are received for a multicast group, the network device assumes there are no interested hosts and stops forwarding traffic to that group.</li> </ul> <p>Limitations: No Leave Group Message: Hosts cannot explicitly leave a multicast group, which can lead to inefficient use of resources as routers have to rely on timeouts to determine if there are no more members.</p>	RFC-1112
v2	<p>Additional features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Leave Group Message:</b> Host devices can send a leave group message to notify the network device they are no longer interested in a multicast group, improving the efficiency of multicast traffic management.</li> <li>• <b>Group-Specific Queries:</b> Network devices can send group-specific queries to confirm if any members of a particular multicast group still exist, reducing overall network traffic compared to general queries.</li> <li>• <b>Query Election:</b> Introduces a mechanism to elect a single query router on a subnet to avoid redundant queries, thereby optimizing network bandwidth.</li> </ul>	RFC-2236
v3	<p>Additional Features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Source-Specific Multicast (SSM):</b> Supports source filtering, allowing host devices to specify from which sources they receive multicast traffic. This is useful for applications that need to filter out unwanted traffic from certain sources.</li> <li>• <b>Include/Exclude Mode:</b> Host devices can explicitly include or exclude traffic from specified sources, providing more granular control over multicast group membership.</li> <li>• <b>Membership Report Enhancements:</b> The membership report format is enhanced to support the new source filtering capabilities.</li> </ul>	RFC-3376

**Note**

Although most modern devices should support v3, there may be regulatory concerns or legacy deployments to consider.

## IGMP Snooping

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping

This page lets you configure IGMP snooping for your device.

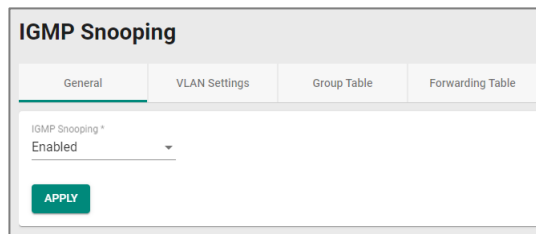
This page includes these tabs:

- General
- VLAN Settings
- Group Table
- Forwarding Table

### IGMP Snooping - General

#### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - General

This page lets you configure IGMP snooping general settings.




UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	Enable or disable IGMP snooping for the device. <b>Note</b> IGMP Snooping cannot be enabled when GMRP is enabled.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

## IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings**


This page lets you configure IGMP snooping VLAN settings.

General	VLAN Settings	Group Table	Forwarding Table				
↻							
VLAN ID	Enable	Version	Query Interval	Config Role	Active Role	Static Router Port	Dynamic Router Port
 1	Disabled	2	125	Querier	Non-Querier	--	--
Max. 255							

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN ID the entry is for.
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether IGMP snooping is enabled for the VLAN.
<b>Version</b>	Shows the IGMP version of the packets the VLAN will listen to and send queries for.
<b>Query Interval</b>	Shows the query interval for the Querier function globally for the VLAN, if the Querier is enabled.
<b>Config Role</b>	Shows the config role of the VLAN.
<b>Active Role</b>	Shows the active role of the VLAN.
<b>Static Router Port</b>	Shows the static router port for the VLAN. This is the port that connects to the upper level router (or IGMP querier), or to the upper level router of downstream multicast streams. All received IGMP signaling packets and multicast streams will be forwarded to the static router ports.
<b>Dynamic Router Port</b>	Shows the dynamic router port for the VLAN.

## IGMP Snooping - Edit VLAN Settings

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings**

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a VLAN on the **Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the IGMP snooping settings for the VLAN.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Edit VLAN 1 Settings**

IGMP Snooping \*  
Disabled ▼

Version \*  
2 ▼

Query Interval \*  
125  
20 - 600 sec.

Static Router Port ▼

Config Role \*  
Querier ▼

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	Enable or disable IGMP snooping for the VLAN.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Version</b>	Specify the IGMP version of the packets to listen to and send queries for.	1 / 2 / 3	2
<b>Query Interval</b>	Specify the query interval for the VLAN, if the Querier is enabled.	20 to 600 sec.	125 sec.
<b>Static Router Port</b>	Select a static router port for the VLAN. This is the port that connects to the upper level router (or IGMP querier), or to the upper level router of downstream multicast streams. All received IGMP signaling packets and multicast streams will be forwarded to the static router ports.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Config Role</b>	Select the config role for the VLAN.	Querier / Non-Querier	Querier

## Group Table

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - Group Table

This page lets you view the IGMP snooping group table.

#### 🔑 Limitations

There can be up to 2048 IGMP snooping group table entries.

## IGMP Snooping

General
VLAN Settings
Group Table
Forwarding Table

🔄 🏠
🔍 Search

VLAN ID	Group Address	Filter Mode	Port	Source Address
Max. 1024				

Items per page: 50
0 of 0
⏪ < > ⏩

Item	Description
<b>VLAN</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN the entry is for.
<b>Group Address</b>	Shows the registered multicast group address for the VLAN.
<b>Filter Mode</b>	Shows the filter mode for the VLAN. This is only applicable for IGMPv3. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Include:</b> Source-specific multicast address group</li> <li><b>Exclude:</b> Source-specific exclusive multicast address group</li> </ul>
<b>Port</b>	Shows the forwarding port for the VLAN.
<b>Source Address</b>	Shows the source address for the VLAN. This is only applicable for IGMPv3.

### IGMP Snooping - Forwarding Table

**Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - Forwarding Table**

This page lets you view the IGMP snooping forwarding table.

#### 🔔 Limitations

There can be up to 2048 IGMP snooping forwarding table entries.

### IGMP Snooping

General | VLAN Settings | Group Table | **Forwarding Table**

🔄 📄 🔍 Search

VLAN ID	Group Address	Source Address	Port
Max: 1024			
Items per page: 50 0 of 0  < < > >			

Item	Description
<b>VLAN</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN the entry is for.
<b>Group Address</b>	Shows the associated multicast group address for streaming data for the VLAN.
<b>Source Address</b>	Shows the source address for streaming data for the VLAN.
<b>Port</b>	Shows the forwarding port of the VLAN.

## About GMRP


GMRP stands for GARP Multicast Registration Protocol, which is a Generic Attribute Registration Protocol (GARP) application that can be used to prevent multicast from data flooding.

Both GMRP and GARP are defined by IEEE 802.1P, and widely used as a standard protocol in various industrial-related applications. GMRP allows bridges and the devices at the edge of the network to perform a dynamic group membership information registration with the MAC bridges connected to the same LAN section. The information can be transmitted among all bridges in the Bridge LAN that is implemented with extended filtering features. To operate GMRP, the GARP service must be established first.

GARP stands for **Generic Attribute Registration Protocol**, which is a communication protocol defined by IEEE 802.1, offering a generic framework for bridges to register and de-register an attribute value. In a LAN structure, two applications can be applied: **GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP)** is used to register VLAN trunking between multilayer switches, and **GARP Multicast Registration Protocol (GMRP)** for providing a constrained multicast flooding facility.

L2 switches exchange GMRP packets with each other to know the multicast entries on other switches so that it can also register the multicast entry on its own table. After exchanging the information, the multicast traffic will only be forwarded to the corresponding ports.

### Configuring GMRP

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > GMRP**.
3. Set **GMRP** to **Enabled**, and then click **Apply**.
4. Locate the port on which you want to enable GMRP, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]** button.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

5. Set **GMRP** to **Enabled**, and then click **Apply** to save your settings.

GMRP is now enabled.


### GMRP

#### Menu Path: [Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > GMRP](#)

This page lets you configure the GMRP settings of your device.


## GMRP Settings

GMRP \*










Disabled 

---

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>GMRP</b>	Enable or disable GMRP for the device.   <b>Note</b> GMRP cannot be enabled when IGMP Snooping is enabled.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## GMRP Port List


GMRP Port List				Search
Port	Enable	Group Restrict		
 1	Enabled	Disabled		
 2	Enabled	Disabled		
 3	Enabled	Disabled		
 4	Enabled	Disabled		
 5	Enabled	Disabled		
 6	Enabled	Disabled		
 7	Enabled	Disabled		
 8	Enabled	Disabled		
 9	Enabled	Disabled		

1 - 23 of 23

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether GMRP is enabled for the port.
<b>Group Restrict</b>	Shows whether group restrict is enabled for the port.

## GMRP - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > GMRP

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > GMRP** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the GMRP settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1/1 Settings

GMRP \*  
Disabled ▼

Group Restrict \*  
Disabled ▼

Copy configurations to ports  ▼ i

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>GMRP</b>	Enable or disable GMRP for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Group Restrict</b>	Enable or disable group restrict for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About Static Multicast

Static multicast is for configuring the multicast forwarding entries in the switch in a manual or predetermined manner.

In multicast networking, data packets are sent from one sender to multiple receivers efficiently, rather than sending individual packets to each receiver separately, as in unicast communication.

Network administrators manually configure the multicast forwarding entries in the device's multicast forwarding table. This involves specifying the multicast group addresses and the corresponding outbound interfaces or ports through which multicast traffic should be forwarded.

Benefits:

1. **Predictable Behavior:** Static multicast provides predictable behavior, as the forwarding paths for multicast traffic are predetermined by the administrator. This

can be advantageous in certain network environments where stability and control are prioritized over flexibility and adaptability.

2. **Resource Efficiency:** Since static multicast entries are manually configured and do not involve the overhead of dynamic routing protocols, they can be more resource-efficient in terms of processing power and network bandwidth, especially in small-scale deployments with relatively stable multicast group memberships.

## How Static Multicast works

If the user wants to restrict some of the multicast groups to be forwarded to specific ports for devices that don't support IGMP, users can use static multicast setting.

Users can manually register the multicast forwarding entries, including multicast MAC address and forwarding/forbidden port on the table, and the switch will forward the multicast traffic following the table rather than flooding.

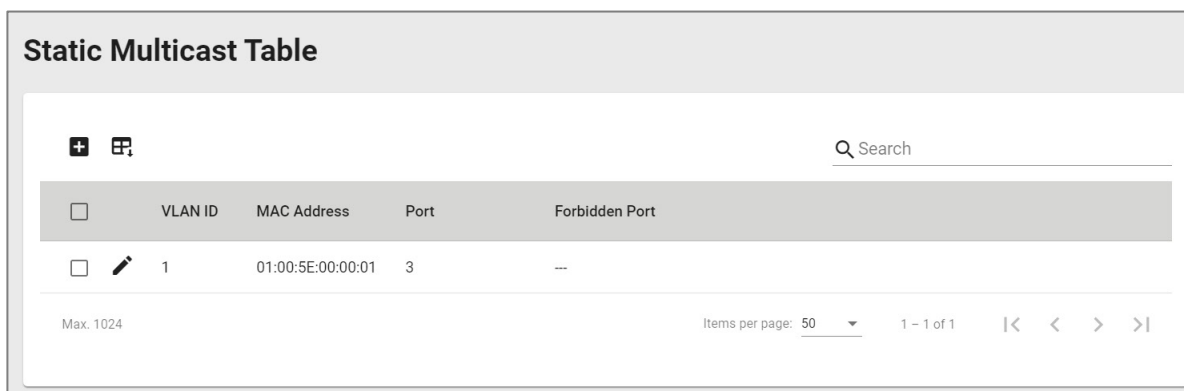
## Static Multicast


### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast

This page lets you view and manage your device's static multicast table.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 1024 static multicast entries.



	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Port	Forbidden Port
<input type="checkbox"/> 	1	01:00:5E:00:00:01	3	---

Max. 1024      Items per page: 50      1 - 1 of 1      << < > >>

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN used for the multicast group entry.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address for the multicast group entry.
<b>Port</b>	Shows the egress ports that multicast streams will forward to for the multicast group entry.
<b>Forbidden Port</b>	Show the forbidden ports that packets will not be forwarded to for the multicast group entry.

## Add a Static Multicast Entry

### Menu Path: Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a static multicast entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

**Add a Static Multicast Entry**

VLAN ID \*     MAC Address \*

Port \*

Forbidden Port

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Select a VLAN ID for the multicast entry.	Drop-down list of VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the MAC address for the multicast entry.	Valid multicast MAC address	N/A
<b>Port</b>	Select the ports to use as egress ports for multicast streams to be forwarded to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Forbidden Port</b>	Select which ports are forbidden so packets cannot be forwarded to them.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

# Network Interface

## Menu Path: Network Interface

This page lets you manage the network interfaces of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

## Network Interface - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Network Interface	R/W	R/W	R

## Network Interface - Settings

### Menu Path: Network Interface - Settings

This page lets you manage your device's network interfaces.

#### 🔔 Limitations

You can create up to 8 loopback interfaces.

### 🔔 Limitations

You can create up to 512 VLAN interfaces.

## Loopback Interface Table

	Name	Interface	Loopback ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask
<input type="checkbox"/>	loopback1	Enabled	1	1	255.223.12.11	255.255.255.255

Max. 4 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the loopback interface the entry is for.
<b>Interface</b>	Shows whether the loopback interface is enabled.
<b>Loopback ID</b>	Shows the ID for the loopback interface.
<b>Alias</b>	Shows the alias for the loopback interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the loopback interface.
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the netmask for the loopback interface.

## Create Loopback Interface Settings

### Menu Path: Network Interface - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon in the **Loopback Interface** table on the **Network Interface - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a loopback interface.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new loopback interface.

### Create Loopback Interface Settings

Loopback Interface \*

Loopback ID \*

Alias

IP Address \* Netmask  
 ▼

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Loopback Interface</b>	Enable or disable the loopback interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Loopback ID</b>	Specify the ID for the loopback interface.	1 to 10 characters	N/A
<b>Alias</b>	Specify an alias for the loopback interface.	0 to 64 characters	N/A
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address for the loopback interface.	Valid IP Address	N/A
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the netmask for the loopback interface. This is fixed to 255.255.255.255 and cannot be changed.	N/A	N/A

## VLAN Interface Table

### VLAN Interface

Q Search

	Name	Interface	VLAN ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask
<input type="checkbox"/>	vlan1	Enabled	1		192.168.127.251	255.255.255.0

Max. 256
Items per page:  1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the VLAN interface the entry is for.
<b>Interface</b>	Shows whether the VLAN interface is enabled.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID for the VLAN interface.
<b>Alias</b>	Shows the alias for the VLAN interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the VLAN interface.
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the netmask for the VLAN interface.

## Create VLAN Interface Settings

### Menu Path: Network Interface - Settings

Clicking the **Add** (+) icon in the **VLAN Interface** table on the **Network Interface - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a VLAN interface.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new VLAN interface.

### Create VLAN Interface Settings

#### Create VLAN Interface Settings

VLAN Interface \*

VLAN ID \* i

Alias

IP Address \*      Netmask \* v

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VLAN Interface</b>	Enable or disable the VLAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the ID for the VLAN interface.	1 to 4094	N/A
<b>Alias</b>	Specify an alias for the VLAN interface.	0 to 64	N/A
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address for the VLAN interface.	Valid IP Address	N/A
<b>Netmask</b>	Select a netmask for the VLAN interface.	Drop-down list of netmasks	N/A

## Network Interface - Status

### Menu Path: Network Interface - Status

This page lets you see the status of your network interfaces.

## Loopback Interface List

Loopback Interface

🔄 🔍
🔍 Search

Name	Admin Status	Operation Status	Loopback ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask
loopback1	Enabled	Up	1	1	255.223.12.11	255.255.255.255

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the loopback interface the entry is for.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Show whether the loopback interface is enabled.
<b>Operation Status</b>	Shows the current operating status of the loopback interface.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Lookback ID</b>	Shows the ID of the loopback interface.
<b>Alias</b>	Shows the alias for the loopback interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the loopback interface.
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the netmask for the loopback interface.

## VLAN Interface List

VLAN Interface

🔄 🔍
🔍 Search

Name	Admin Status	Operation Status	VLAN ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask
vlan1	Enabled	Up	1		192.168.127.251	255.255.255.0

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the VLAN interface the entry is for.
<b>Admin Status</b>	Shows whether the VLAN interface is enabled.
<b>Operation Status</b>	Shows the operating status of the VLAN interface.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID for the VLAN interface.
<b>Alias</b>	Shows the alias for the VLAN interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the VLAN interface.
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the netmask for the VLAN interface.

# Redundancy

## Menu Path: Redundancy

This section lets you configure the redundancy settings for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Layer 2 Redundancy
- Layer 3 Redundancy
- Tracking

## Redundancy - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Layer 2 Redundancy</b>			
<b>Spanning Tree</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Turbo Ring v2</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Turbo Chain</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MRP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Multiple Dual Homing</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Multiple Network Coupling</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>ERPS V2</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Layer 3 Redundancy</b>			
<b>VRRP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Tracking</b>	R/W	R/W	R

# Layer 2 Redundancy

## Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy

This section lets you manage the Layer 2 redundancy features of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Spanning Tree
- Turbo Ring V2
- Turbo Chain
- MRP
- Multiple Dual Homing
- Multiple Network Coupling
- ERPS V2

## About Layer 2 Redundancy Protocols

Selecting the appropriate Layer 2 redundancy protocol for your network depends on several factors, including:

- The topology and size of your network
- The applications and services you are running
- Your availability and performance requirements

Here's a brief summary of each protocol to help you make an informed decision.

Category		RSTP	Turbo Ring v2	Turbo Chain	MRP
<b>Specification Needs</b>	Diameter	40 pcs	<b>V</b> 250 nodes per ring	<b>V</b> 250 nodes per chain	50 pcs

Category	RSTP	Turbo Ring v2	Turbo Chain	MRP
Recovery Time		<b>V</b> Fast Ethernet: 20ms Gigabit Ethernet: 50ms	<b>V</b> Fast Ethernet: 20 ms Gigabit Ethernet: 50 ms	200 ms  <b>Note</b> We recommend using fiber interfaces on 1G and 2.5G interfaces to ensure 200 ms recovery times; using copper for 1G and 2.5G interfaces may cause recovery times to exceed 200 ms due to cable limitations.
Link Health Check (Packet Detection Mechanism)	<b>V</b> 2 sec/1 RSTP BPDU (default)	<b>O</b> Gigabit Ethernet: 10 ms/LHC pkt.	<b>O</b> Gigabit Ethernet: 10 ms/LHC pkt.	20 ms / test frame pkt.
<b>Application Needs</b>				
Multi-vendor Support	<b>V</b> Public Standard	Moxa proprietary	Moxa proprietary	Public standard
Easy Deployment	Mesh	<b>V</b> Ring Topology	<b>V</b> Chain Topology	Ring topology
Flexible Scalability		<b>O</b> Turbo Ring + Ring Coupling	<b>V</b> Directly connected to existing network without any changes.	MRP Ring + MRP Interconnection
<b>Supported Versions</b>	MX-NOS v1.x, v2.x, v3.x, v4.x, v5.x MX-NOS Rail Version v1.x	MX-NOS v1.x, v2.x, v3.x, v4.x, v5.x MX-NOS Rail Version v1.x	MX-NOS v1.x, v2.x, v3.x, v4.x, v5.x	MX-NOS v4.x, v5.x MX-NOS Rail Version v1.x  <b>Note</b> Currently, MX-NOS Rail Version v1.0 supports MRP but does not support MRP interconnection.

**V:** Most appropriate

**O:** Partially applicable

## About Scenarios for Turbo Chain and Turbo Ring

### Large Semiconductor Network

A semiconductor factory plans to construct a new facility to increase chip production capacity for future electric vehicles. They require a large automated network (100+ switches) with redundant mechanisms to prevent unexpected downtime that could impact production lines. Additionally, their network must balance traffic across multiple links to prevent congestion and improve overall performance.

#### Analysis

1. This is a new project with no existing infrastructure.
2. A redundancy protocol is required and must support a network with at least 100 switches.
3. Link aggregation is needed to increase total throughput beyond what a single connection can sustain.

### Solution: Turbo Ring v2

Turbo Ring v2 is suitable in situations where extremely fast failover times are required, such as in mission-critical industrial control systems. Turbo Ring v2 facilitates easy ring topology deployment. With Moxa Turbo Ring technology, networks can recover within 20 ms (Fast Ethernet/fiber) or 50ms (gigabit copper) on a network with up to 250 nodes.

### Legacy Rapid Transit Network

A Phase II Metro project needs to build 15 new metro stations in an existing transit system, each requiring networking infrastructure. This project not only establishes its own system with a redundant topology but also ensures compatibility with the Phase I system. The Phase I system comprises a mesh topology with RSTP protocol, consisting of over 30 switches, with cabling that is outdated and no longer replaceable. Nevertheless, Phase II must be interconnected with Phase I without any modifications to the latter.

#### Analysis

1. This is a rebuilt project and it should be interconnected with RSTP topology.
2. Redundancy protocol is required and support 100+ switches network.

## **Solution: Turbo Chain**

Turbo Chain is most suitable for this situation. One of the key advantages of Turbo Chain is its simplicity and ease of deployment. It can be directly interconnected to RSTP topology with any change on RSTP network.

Note:

The following two alternative solutions would also work in this scenario:

1. Turbo Ring v2 with Ring coupling to RSTP is also an alternate solution. This would depend on network physical deployment.
2. RSTP could be used to expand an existing RSTP network.

## **Inter-Consist Rail Network**

A well-known railway vehicle manufacturer needs to plan a new on-board network, planning a ring network via Turbo Ring for multiple vehicles to form a consist. The consists also need to be interconnected with each other when connected as a train, and a redundant backup mechanism should be provided between consists.

## **Solution: Ring Coupling**

Connection between Turbo Ring networks can be connected with ring coupling. This will allow consists with their own rings to be dynamically uncoupled and recoupled without reconfiguration.

## **About Spanning Tree**

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) was designed to help construct a loop-free logical topology on an Ethernet network and provide an automatic means of avoiding any network loops. This is particularly important for networks that have a complicated architecture, since unintended loops in the network can cause broadcast storms. Moxa switches' STP feature is disabled by default. To be completely effective, you must enable STP/RSTP on every Moxa switch connected to your network.

STP (802.1D) is a bridge-based system that is used to implement parallel paths for network traffic. STP uses a loop-detection process to:

- Locate and then disable less efficient paths (e.g., paths that have lower bandwidth).

- Enable one of the less efficient paths if a more efficient path fails.

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) is an IEEE 802.1w network protocol that enhances the speed and stability of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP). RSTP promotes high availability and a "loop-free" topology, similar to STP, but more quickly within Ethernet networks. It provides faster convergence and is backward compatible with STP. While STP takes 30-50 seconds to converge, RSTP can achieve sub-second convergence.

For applications that require redundancy, but require use of only open-standard protocols and no proprietary protocols, RSTP is a good choice.

## **Difference Between STP and RSTP**

RSTP is similar to STP but includes additional information in the BPDUs that allow each bridge to confirm that it has taken action to prevent loops from forming when it decides to enable a link to a neighboring bridge. Adjacent bridges connected via point-to-point links will be able to enable a link without waiting to ensure that all other bridges in the network have had time to react to the change. The main benefit of RSTP is that the configuration decision is made locally rather than network-wide, allowing RSTP to carry out automatic configuration and restore a link faster than STP.

STP and RSTP spanning tree protocols operate without regard to a network's VLAN configuration and maintain one common spanning tree throughout a bridged network. Thus, these protocols map one loop-free, logical topology on a given physical topology.

## **About BPDU Guard**

### **About BPDU Guard**

BDPUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) are the network communication frames used in the STP (Spanning Tree Protocol). When two switches exchange messages, BDPUs are used to calculate the STP topology, and determine the network communication route. A BPDU filter is often used to screen sending or receiving BDPUs on a specific port of the switch.

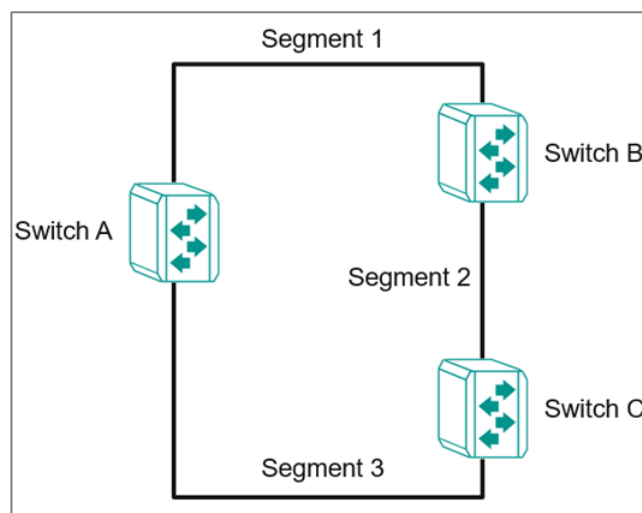
BPDU Guard is a protection mechanism that prevents a port from receiving BDPUs. When an RSTP-enabled port receives BDPUs, it will automatically be in the error-disable state, which means the port will in turn switch to Block state. When STP is enabled, all ports are involved in the STP domain, sending and receiving BDPUs. However, when BPDU Guard is enabled, all ports will not receive or send any BDPUs, as all computers and

unmanaged switches do not support STP. When BPDU Guard is enabled, all communications will be treated as error-disabled, and the related ports will be blocked, therefore no more data will be sent or received, protecting the network from a loop chain.

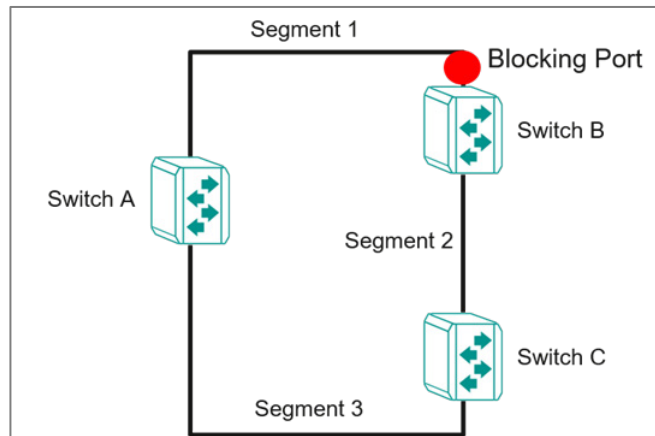
- **Root Guard:** Root Guard prevents a designated port role from changing to root port role on reception of superior information.
- **Loop Guard:** Loop Guard prevents temporary loops in a network caused by **non-designated ports** changing to the spanning-tree **forwarding** state due to a link failure in the topology.
- **BPDU Filter:** BPDU Filter prevents a port from sending and processing BPDUs. A BPDU filter enabled port cannot transmit any BPDUs and drop all received BPDU either.

## About STP Operations

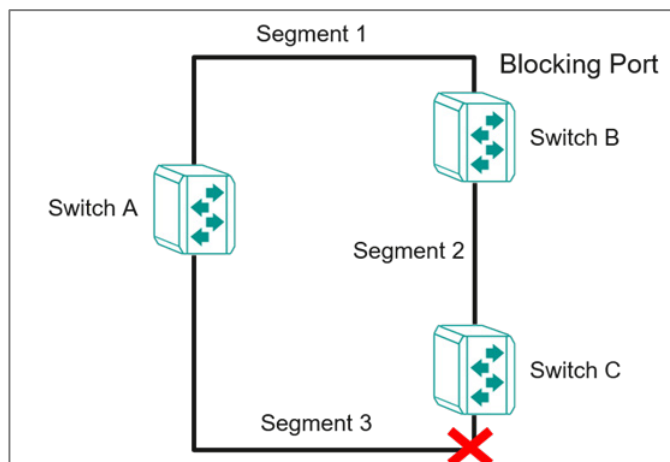
The figure below shows a network made up of three LANs separated by three bridges. Each segment uses at most two paths to communicate with the other segments. Since this configuration can give rise to loops, the network will overload if STP is not enabled.



If STP is enabled, it will detect duplicate paths or block one of the paths from forwarding traffic. In the following example, STP determined that traffic from segment 2 to segment 1 flows through switches C and A since this path is in a forwarding state and is processing BPDUs. However, switch B on segment 1 is in a blocking state.



What happens if a link failure is detected? As shown in the figure below, the STP will change the blocking state to a forwarding state so that traffic from segment 2 flows through switch B to segment 1 through a redundant path.



STP will determine which path between each segment is most efficient, and then assign a specific reference point on the network. When the most efficient path has been identified, the other paths are blocked. In the previous three figures, STP first determined that the path through switch C was the most efficient, and as a result, blocked the path through switch B. After the failure of switch C, STP re-evaluated the situation and opened the path through switch B.

## About RSTP

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) is an enhancement of the original Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) designed to speed up network convergence and improve overall network

performance. RSTP ensures there is only one active path between devices in a network, with backup paths ready to activate if the primary path fails.

Each port is assigned a cost that indicates the efficiency of its link. Typically, this cost is determined by the link's bandwidth, with less efficient links assigned a higher cost.

The RSTP path cost default was originally calculated after detecting the bandwidth as follows.

Link Speed	RSTP/MSTP cost
100 Mbit/s	200,000
1 Gbit/s	20,000
10 Gbit/s	2,000

This can be overwritten from the UI.

### Key Features of RSTP

- **Faster Convergence:** RSTP reduces the time required to detect and respond to network topology changes compared to STP. It eliminates the lengthy listening and learning states of STP, allowing for quicker transitions to active states.
- **Localized Decision-Making:** Unlike STP, where decisions are made network-wide, RSTP enables switches to make local configuration decisions. This allows for faster automatic configuration and quicker restoration of network links.
- **Simplified Port Roles:** RSTP uses only three primary port roles—Root Port, Designated Port, and Alternate Port—streamlining the network's operation and improving convergence speed.
- **Proposal/Agreement Mechanism:** RSTP introduces the Proposal/Agreement process to quickly determine designated ports during topology changes, further accelerating convergence.

### How RSTP Works

RSTP operates in the following sequence:

1. **Root Bridge Selection:** The switch with the lowest bridge priority or MAC address is designated as the root bridge, forming the base of the spanning tree.

2. **Root Port Selection:** Non-root switches select their root port, which provides the best path to the root bridge based on path cost.
3. **Designated Ports Assignment:** Each network segment designates a port to forward traffic, ensuring optimal paths are used.
4. **Blocking State:** Non-designated or non-root ports remain in a blocking state, preventing loops.

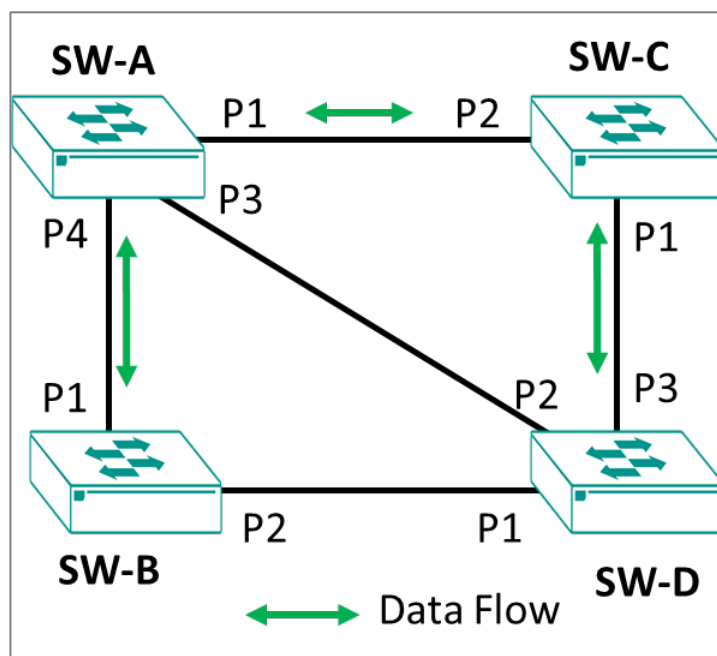
### Benefits of RSTP

- **Improved Network Stability:** RSTP's fast convergence mechanisms reduce the risk of network outages by adapting quickly to changes in the network topology.
- **Backward Compatibility:** RSTP is fully compatible with STP, allowing a smooth transition in mixed networks where some devices still use the older protocol.

Overall, RSTP offers significant improvements over STP, making networks more resilient and responsive to changes, thereby enhancing overall reliability and performance.

### Scenario: Configuring 4 Devices with RSTP

A user wants to configure 4 network devices in an RSTP topology.



Ordinarily, data will flow from SW-A directly to SW-B and SW-C. SW-D data will transit SW-D. However, if something happens that breaks links, data flow can be rerouted without administrator intervention. Follow the subsequent examples to configure each switch.

### Example: Configuring RSTP on SW-A

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.
3. Under **STP Mode**, select **STP/RSTP** from the drop-down list.


If this option was previously **Disabled**, numerous new features will appear.

4. Under **Compatibility**, select **RSTP**.
5. Set **Bridge Priority** to 28672.

This must be lower than other switches on the network to establish SW-A as the root of the topology.


6. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The list of ports becomes available.

7. Find Port **1/1** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.


The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

8. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
9. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

10. Find Port **1/3** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.


11. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
12. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

13. Find Port **1/3** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

14. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.

15. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

16. Find Port **1/4** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

17. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.

18. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

SW-A has been configured. You can now move on to configuring SW-B.

### **Example: Configuring RSTP on SW-B**

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.

2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.


3. Under **STP Mode**, select **STP/RSTP** from the drop-down list.

If this option was previously **Disabled**, numerous new features will appear.

4. Under **Compatibility**, select **RSTP**.


5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The list of ports becomes available.

6. Find Port **1/1** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

7. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.

8. Find Port **1/2** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

9. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.

10. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

SW-B has been configured. You can now move on to configuring SW-C.


### Example: Configuring RSTP on SW-C


1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.
3. Under **STP Mode**, select **STP/RSTP** from the drop-down list.

If this option was previously **Disabled**, numerous new features will appear.

4. Under **Compatibility**, select **RSTP**.
5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The list of ports becomes available.

6. Find Port **1/1** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.
7. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.

8. Find Port **1/2** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

9. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
10. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

SW-C has been configured. You can now move on to configuring SW-D.

### Example: Configuring RSTP on SW-D


SW-D requires specific configuration to ensure that the correct paths are followed.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.
3. Under **STP Mode**, select **STP/RSTP** from the drop-down list.

If this option was previously **Disabled**, numerous new features will appear.


4. Under **Compatibility**, select **RSTP**.
5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The list of ports becomes available.

6. Find Port **1/1** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.


The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

7. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
8. Verify that there is a value in the **Path Cost** field. If there is no value, enter a tentative value of 20,000.
9. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

10. Find Port **1/4** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

11. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
12. Verify that there is a value in the **Path Cost** field. If there is no value, enter a tentative value of 20,000.
13. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

14. Find Port **1/4** on the list of ports, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]**.

15. Under **Enable**, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.

16. Set **Path Cost** to 0.

17. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

With SW-D completed, all devices in the topology are complete.

## Spanning Tree Settings

### Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#) > [Spanning Tree](#)

This page lets you configure the spanning tree settings of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Guard
- Status

## Spanning Tree - General

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General

This page lets you configure the STP mode and its related settings.

### Spanning Tree Settings - STP/RSTP

If **STP Mode** is set to **STP/RSTP**, the following settings will appear.

The screenshot shows a configuration panel with the following settings:

- STP Mode \***: STP/RSTP (dropdown)
- Compatibility \***: RSTP (dropdown)
- Bridge Priority \***: 32768 (text input)
- Forward Delay Time \***: 15 (text input, range 4-30 sec)
- Hello Time \***: 2 (text input, range 1-2 sec)
- Max. Age \***: 20 (text input, range 6-40 sec)
- Error Recovery Time \***: 300 (text input, range 30-65535 sec)










An **APPLY** button is located at the bottom left of the configuration area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>STP Mode</b>	Specify the spanning tree protocol (STP) to use.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>MSTP and GVRP are both VLAN-related functions. When VLAN changes dynamically, MSTP needs to re-converge, which can make the system unstable due to running complex operations. When both MSTP and GVRP are used together, this can result in network instability.</p> <p>Therefore, it is recommended that network administrators avoid enabling both MSTP and GVRP.</p> </div>	Disabled / STP/RSTP/ MSTP	Disabled
<b>Compatibility</b>	Specify the compatibility mode to use.	STP / RSTP	RSTP
<b>Bridge Priority</b>	Specify the bridge priority number, which must be a multiple of 4096. Lower numbers have higher priority. A device with a higher bridge priority (e.g., a lower value) has a greater chance of being established as the root of the spanning tree topology.	Multiples of 4096 from 0 to 61440	32768
<b>Forward Delay Time</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device waits before checking to see if it should change to a different state.	4 to 30	15
<b>Hello Time</b>	Specify the hello time in seconds. This is the amount of time the root waits between sending hello messages. The root of the spanning tree topology periodically sends out a "hello" message to other devices on the network to check if the topology is healthy.	1 to 2	2

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Max. Age</b>	Specify the max age in seconds. If this device is not the root, and it has not received a hello message from the root for longer than the max age time, then this device will reconfigure itself as a root. Once two or more devices on the network are recognized as a root, the devices will renegotiate a new spanning tree topology.	6 to 40	20
<b>Error Recovery Time</b>	Specify the error recovery time in seconds. If BPDU guard is triggered on a port, it will automatically recover to the normal state after the error recovery time.	30 to 65535	300

## STP/RSTP - Port Table

If **STP Mode** is set to **STP/RSTP**, this table will appear.

Q Search						
Port	Enable	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	Link Type	
 1	Enabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 2	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 3	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 4	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 5	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 6	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 7	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 8	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	
 9	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto	

1 - 23 of 23

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether the spanning tree protocol is enabled for the port.
<b>Edge</b>	Shows the current edge port configuration for the port.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Priority</b>	Show the bridge priority number for the port.
<b>Path Cost</b>	Show the path cost value for the port.
<b>Link Type</b>	Show the link type configuration for the port.

## STP/RSTP Port Table - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port in the Port Table on the **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the STP/RSTP settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enable</b>	Enable or disable spanning tree protocol for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Edge</b>	Select the edge port configuration for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Auto:</b> Auto-detect whether to configure the port as an edge port.</li> <li><b>Yes:</b> The port will be configured as an edge port.</li> <li><b>No:</b> The port will not be configured as an edge port.</li> </ul>	Auto / Yes / No	Auto

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the priority of the port as a multiple of 16. Lower numbers have higher priority. A port with a higher priority (e.g., a lower value) has a greater chance of being a root port.	Multiples of 16 from 0 to 240	128
<b>Path Cost</b>	Specify the path cost value. If this is set to 0, the path cost value will be automatically assigned according to the port speed.	0 to 20000000	0
<b>Link Type</b>	Select the link type for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Point-to-point:</b> Use this when the port is operating in full-duplex mode.</li> <li><b>Shared:</b> Use this when the port is operating in half-duplex mode.</li> <li><b>Auto:</b> Auto-detect which mode to use for the port.</li> </ul>	Point-to-point / Shared / Auto	Auto
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Spanning Tree Settings - MSTP

If **STP Mode** is set to **MSTP**, the following settings will appear.

The screenshot shows the MSTP configuration interface with the following settings:

- STP Mode: MSTP
- Compatibility: MSTP
- Forward Delay Time: 15 (range: 4-30 sec)
- Hello Time: 2 (range: 1-2 sec)
- Max. Age: 20 (range: 5-40 sec)
- Error Recovery Time: 300 (range: 30-65535 sec)
- Region Name: MSTP
- Region Revision: 0 (range: 0-65535)
- Max. Hops: 20 (range: 6-40)

An **APPLY** button is visible at the bottom left of the configuration area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>STP Mode</b>	Specify the spanning tree protocol (STP) to use. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>MSTP and GVRP are both VLAN-related functions. When VLAN changes dynamically, MSTP needs to re-converge, which can make the system unstable due to running complex operations. When both MSTP and GVRP are used together, this can result in network instability.</p> <p>Therefore, it is recommended that network administrators avoid enabling both MSTP and GVRP.</p> </div>	Disabled / STP/RSTP/ MSTP	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Compatibility</b>	Specify the compatibility mode to use.	RSTP / STP / MSTP	MSTP
<b>Forward Delay Time</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device waits before checking to see if it should change to a different state.	4 to 30	15
<b>Hello Time</b>	Specify the hello time in seconds. This is the amount of time the root waits between sending hello messages. The root of the spanning tree topology periodically sends out a "hello" message to other devices on the network to check if the topology is healthy.	1 to 2	2
<b>Max. Age</b>	Specify the max age in seconds. If this device is not the root, and it has not received a hello message from the root for longer than the max age time, then this device will reconfigure itself as a root. Once two or more devices on the network are recognized as a root, the devices will renegotiate a new spanning tree topology.	6 to 40	20
<b>Error Recovery Time</b>	Specify the error recovery time in seconds. If BPDU guard is triggered on a port, it will automatically recover to the normal state after the error recovery time.	30 to 65535	300
<b>Region Name</b>	Specify the MSTP region name.	0 to 32 characters	MSTP
<b>Region Revision</b>	Specify the MSTP region revision.	0 to 65535	0
<b>Max. Hops</b>	Specify the maximum number of hops allowed.	6 to 40	20

## MSTP - Instance List

If **STP Mode** is set to **MSTP**, the following table will appear.

**Instance List**

🔍 Search

	Instance ID	VLAN List	Bridge Priority
<input type="checkbox"/>	CIST	Other VLANs	32768

Max. 16 Except for CIST. 1 - 1 of 1 < >

UI Setting	Description
<b>Instance ID</b>	Shows the of the instance the entry is for.
<b>VLAN List</b>	Show the VLAN list configured for the instance.
<b>Bridge Priority</b>	Show the bridge priority value for the instance.

## Instance List - Create Instance

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon for the Instance List on the **Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an MSTP instance.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Create Instance**

Instance ID \*

VLAN List \*  ⓘ

Bridge Priority \*   
0 - 61440, Multiples of 4096

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Instance ID</b>	Select an ID for the instance.	Drop-down list of ID numbers.	N/A
<b>VLAN List</b>	Specify the VLAN IDs to use for the instance. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs by separating them with commas or by using ranges (e.g., 2, 4-8, 10-13).	Valid VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>Bridge Priority</b>	Specify the bridge priority value for the instance as a multiple of 4096. Lower values have higher priority.	Multiples of 4096 from 0 to 61440	N/A

## Instance List - Edit Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an instance on the **Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the instance settings.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Edit CIST Settings

Bridge Priority \*  
  
0 - 61440, Multiples of 4096

CANCEL APPLY

#### Edit Instance 1 Settings

VLAN List \*  
 ⓘ

Bridge Priority \*  
  
0 - 61440, Multiples of 4096


CANCEL APPLY










UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VLAN List</b>	Specify the VLAN IDs to use for the instance. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs by separating them with commas or by using ranges (e.g., 2, 4-8, 10-13).	N/A	N/A
	<div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>This setting is not available for the CIST instance.</p> </div>		
<b>Bridge Priority</b>	Specify the bridge priority value for the instance as a multiple of 4096. Lower values have higher priority.	Multiples of 4096 from 0 to 61440	32768 for CIST N/A for other instances

## Spanning Tree - Port Table

If **STP Mode** is set to **MSTP**, the following table will appear. Clicking on the drop-down list at the top left will let you select which instance's port table you want to view.

Port Table of CIST ▼

 🔍 Search


<input type="checkbox"/>	Port	Enable	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	Link Type
<input type="checkbox"/> 	1	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	2	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	3	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	4	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	5	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	6	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	7	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	8	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto
<input type="checkbox"/> 	9	Disabled	Auto	128	0	Auto

1 – 23 of 23

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether the spanning tree protocol is enabled for the port.
<b>Edge</b>	Shows the current edge port configuration for the port.
<b>Priority</b>	Show the bridge priority number for the port.
<b>Path Cost</b>	Show the path cost value for the port.
<b>Link Type</b>	Show the link type configuration for the port.

## MSTP Port Table - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the port's settings for the selected instance.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit CIST Port 1 Settings

Enable \*  
Disabled ▼

Edge \*  
Auto ▼

Priority \*  
128

0 - 240, Multiples of 16

Path Cost \*  
0 ⓘ

0 - 200000000

Link Type \*  
Auto ▼

Copy configurations to ports ▼ ⓘ

CANCEL
APPLY










UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enable</b>	Enable or disable spanning tree protocol for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Edge</b>	Select the edge port configuration for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Auto:</b> Auto-detect whether to configure the port as an edge port.</li> <li><b>Yes:</b> The port will be configured as an edge port.</li> <li><b>No:</b> The port will not be configured as an edge port.</li> </ul>	Auto / Yes / No	Auto
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the priority of the port as a multiple of 16. Lower numbers have higher priority. A port with a higher priority (e.g., a lower value) has a greater chance of being a root port.	Multiples of 16 from 0 to 240	128
<b>Path Cost</b>	Specify the path cost value. If this is set to 0, the path cost value will be automatically assigned according to the port speed.	0 to 20000000	0
<b>Link Type</b>	Select the link type for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Point-to-point:</b> Use this when the port is operating in full-duplex mode.</li> <li><b>Shared:</b> Use this when the port is operating in half-duplex mode.</li> <li><b>Auto:</b> Auto-detect which mode to use for the port.</li> </ul>	Point-to-point / Shared / Auto	Auto

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Spanning Tree - Guard

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Spanning Tree - Guard

This page lets you configure BPDU Guard by port.

Q Search					
Port	BPDU Guard	rootGuard	Loop Guard	BPDU Filter	
 1	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 2	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 3	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 5	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 6	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 7	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 8	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	
 9	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	

1 - 23 of 23

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>BPDU Guard</b>	Show whether BPDU Guard is enabled for the port.
<b>Root Guard</b>	Show whether Root Guard is enabled for the port.
<b>Loop Guard</b>	Show whether Loop Guard is enabled for the port.
<b>BPDU Filter</b>	Show whether the BPDU Filter is enabled for the port.

## BPDU Guard - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Spanning Tree - Guard

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Redundancy > Spanning Tree - Guard** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the BPDU settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Edit Port 1 Settings**

BPDU Guard \*  
Disabled

Root Guard \*  
Disabled

Loop Guard \*  
Disabled

BPDU Filter \*  
Disabled

Copy configurations to ports

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>BPDU Guard</b>	Enable/disable BPDU Guard on the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Root Guard</b>	Enable/disable Root Guard on the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Loop Guard</b>	Enable/disable Loop Guard on the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>BPDU Filter</b>	Enable/disable BPDU Filter on the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

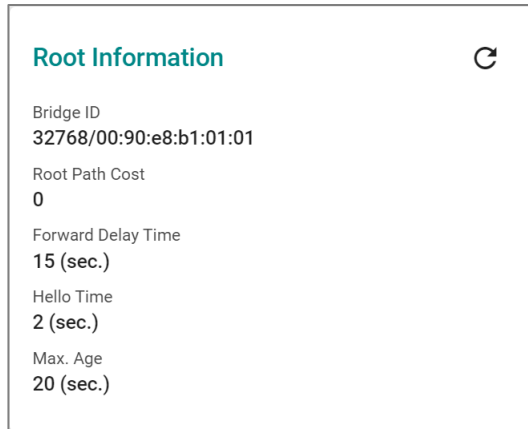
## Spanning Tree - Status

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Spanning Tree - Status

This page lets you view the current spanning tree status of your device.

## Root Information

If **STP Mode** is set to **STP/RSTP**, this display will appear.



UI Setting	Description
<b>Bridge ID</b>	Shows the bridge ID.
<b>Root Path Cost</b>	Shows the root path cost.
<b>Forward Delay Time</b>	Shows the forward delay time in seconds.
<b>Hello Time</b>	Shows the hello time in seconds.
<b>Max. Age</b>	Shows the max. age time in seconds.

## Bridge Information

If **STP Mode** is set to **STP/RSTP**, this display will appear.

**Bridge Information** ↻

Bridge ID  
32768/00:90:E8:B1:01:01

Running Protocol  
**RSTP**

Forward Delay Time  
**15 (sec.)**

Hello Time  
**2 (sec.)**

Max. Age  
**20 (sec.)**

UI Setting	Description
<b>Bridge ID</b>	Shows the bridge ID.
<b>Running Protocol</b>	Shows the current configured spanning tree protocol.
<b>Forward Delay Time</b>	Shows the forward delay time in seconds.
<b>Hello Time</b>	Shows the hello time in seconds.
<b>Max. Age</b>	Shows the max. age time in seconds.

### Spanning Tree - Port Status

If **STP Mode** is set to **STP/RSTP**, the following table will appear.

Port	Edge	Port Role	Port State	Root Path Cost	Path Cost	Link Type
1	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
2	No	Disabled	Forwarding	0	200000	Point-to-point
3	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
4	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
5	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
6	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
7	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
8	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
9	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
10	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
11	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
12	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point
13	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point


1 - 16 of 16

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Edge</b>	Shows whether this port is connected to an edge device.
<b>Port Role</b>	Shows the role for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Root:</b> The port is connected directly or indirectly to the root device.</li> <li>• <b>Designated:</b> The port is designated if it can send the best BPDU on the segment to which it is connected.</li> <li>• <b>Alternate:</b> The alternate port receives more useful BPDU from another bridge and is a blocked port.</li> <li>• <b>Backup:</b> The backup port receives more useful BPDU from the same bridge and is a blocked port.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The port is disabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Port State</b>	Show the port state. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Forwarding:</b> Traffic can be forwarded through this port.</li> <li>• <b>Blocked:</b> Traffic will be blocked.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The port is disabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Root Path Cost</b>	Shows the total path cost to the root bridge for the port.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Path Cost</b>	Shows the path cost for the port.
<b>Link Type</b>	Show the link type for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Edge Port:</b> The port is connected to an edge device.</li> <li>• <b>Point-to-point:</b> The port is connected to another bridge and is full duplex.</li> <li>• <b>Shared:</b> The port is connected to another bridge and is half duplex.</li> </ul>

## General Information

If **STP Mode** is set to **MSTP**, this display will appear.

General Information 			
Running Protocol	Forward Delay Time	Hello Time	Max. Age
MSTP	15 (sec.)	2 (sec.)	20 (sec.)

UI Setting	Description
<b>Running Protocol</b>	Shows the current configured spanning tree protocol.
<b>Forward Delay Time</b>	Shows the forward delay time in seconds.
<b>Hello Time</b>	Shows the hello time in seconds.
<b>Max. Age</b>	Shows the max. age time in seconds.

## Spanning Tree - Port Status

If **STP Mode** is set to **MSTP**, the following table will appear.

You can use the drop-down list at the top-left to select which instance's status you want to view.

**Information of CIST** ⊞

Bridge ID: 32768/00:90:e8:b1:01:01    Regional Root ID: 32768/00:90:e8:b1:01:01    CIST Root ID: 32768/00:90:e8:b1:01:01    CIST Path Cost: 0

**Port Status** Q Search

Port	Edge	Port Role	Port State	Root Path Cost	Path Cost	Link Type	BPDU Inconsistency	Root Inconsistency	Loop Inconsistency
1	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
2	No	Disabled	Forwarding	0	200000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
3	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
4	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
5	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
6	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
7	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No
8	No	Disabled	Discarding	0	20000	Point-to-point	No	No	No

## Information of Instance

When viewing the CIST instance, this information will appear:

UI Setting	Description
<b>Bridge ID</b>	Shows the bridge ID for the CIST instance.
<b>Regional Root ID</b>	Shows the regional root ID for the CIST instance.
<b>CIST Root ID</b>	Shows the bridge ID for the CIST instance.
<b>CIST Path Cost</b>	Shows the bridge ID for the CIST instance.

When viewing an instance other than the CIST instance, this information will appear:

UI Setting	Description
<b>Bridge ID</b>	Shows the bridge ID for the instance.
<b>VLAN List</b>	Shows the VLAN IDs for the instance.
<b>Designated Root ID</b>	Shows the designated root ID for the instance.
<b>Root Path Cost</b>	Shows the root path cost for the instance.

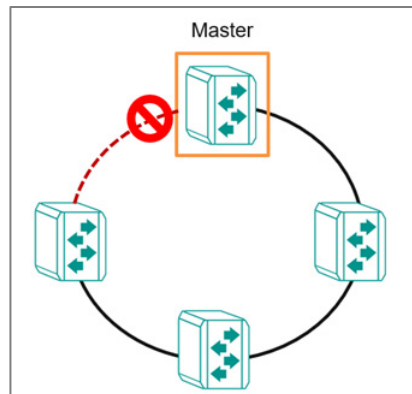
## Port Status

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Edge</b>	Shows whether this port is connected to an edge device.
<b>Port Role</b>	Shows the role for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Root:</b> The port is connected directly or indirectly to the root device.</li><li>• <b>Designated:</b> The port is designated if it can send the best BPDU on the segment to which it is connected.</li><li>• <b>Alternate:</b> The alternate port receives more useful BPDU from another bridge and is a blocked port.</li><li>• <b>Backup:</b> The backup port receives more useful BPDU from the same bridge and is a blocked port.</li><li>• <b>Disabled:</b> MSTP is disabled for the port.</li></ul>
<b>Port State</b>	Show the port state. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Forwarding:</b> Traffic can be forwarded through this port.</li><li>• <b>Blocked:</b> Traffic will be blocked.</li><li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The port is disabled.</li></ul>
<b>Root Path Cost</b>	Shows the total path cost to the root bridge for the port.
<b>Path Cost</b>	Shows the path cost for the port.
<b>Link Type</b>	Show the link type for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Edge Port:</b> The port is connected to an edge device.</li><li>• <b>Point-to-point:</b> The port is connected to another bridge and is full duplex.</li><li>• <b>Shared:</b> The port is connected to another bridge and is half duplex.</li></ul>
<b>BPDU Inconsistency</b>	Shows whether BPDU is received on a port enabled by a BPDU guard.
<b>Root Inconsistency</b>	Shows whether the port is changed to a root port when enabled by a loop guard.
<b>Loop Inconsistency</b>	Shows whether a loop is detected on this port by a loop guard.

## About Turbo Ring v2

Turbo Ring v2 is a high-performance, redundant network topology developed by Moxa for configuring network devices in redundant loops.

In the event of a link failure, the network can automatically reconfigure itself to maintain uninterrupted communication. Recovery times are within 20 ms for Fast Ethernet and 50 ms for Gigabit Ethernet on a network of up to 250 nodes.



Turbo Ring v2 allows connected network devices to elect a "master" switch, which blocks packets from traveling through any of the network's redundant loops and manages the network. If a section breaks, the protocol adjusts the ring so that the disconnected parts of the network establish contact. This enables continuous network operations, even when there is a fault in the network.

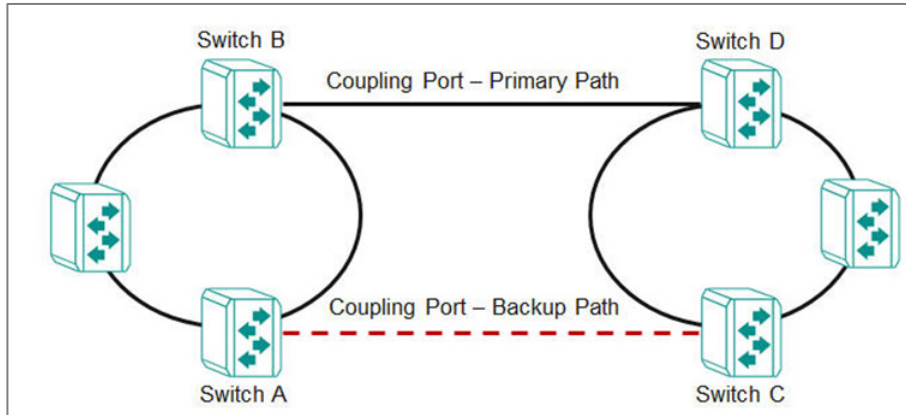
Furthermore, the election mechanism is redundant. If the "master" device itself fails, the network devices detect the failure and automatically elect another. The process occurs quickly, ensuring no interruption.

Turbo Ring v2 supports a backup segment connected to the redundant port (secondary port) on the ring "master". In this case, the backup path is easily identifiable for troubleshooting and replacement.

## About Ring Coupling

Ring Coupling refers to the practice of coupling two rings together.

This may be useful when creating a large redundant ring is inconvenient or impractical, such as for devices in remote areas. Smaller redundant rings can be coupled together for inter-ring communication while still maintaining redundancy of constituent rings and couplings.



Ring coupling uses extra ports on each pair of coupled switches. In this example, that means:

- The (Primary) coupling port on Switch B monitors the main path and connects directly to the port on Switch D.
- The (Backup) coupling port on Switch A monitors the main path and connects directly to the port on Switch C.

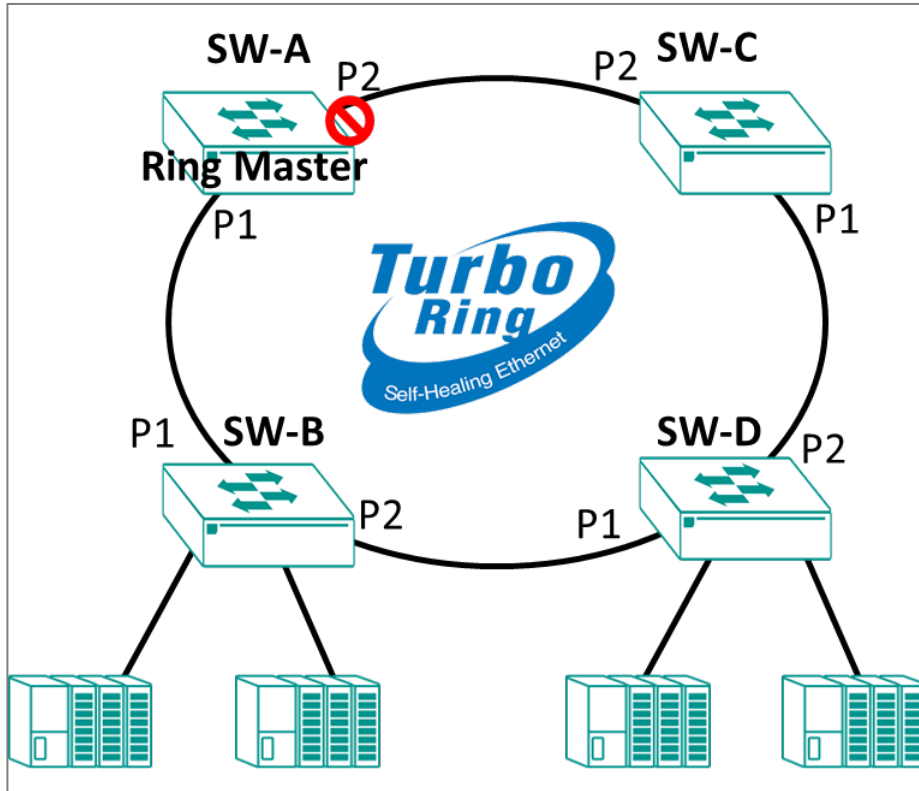
**Note**

Only one coupling (primary + backup) per ring pair.

### Scenario: Using Turbo Ring in a Manufacturing Plant

In this scenario, we describe a factory using a simple ring topology.

A manufacturing plant has a complex network of machines and devices that communicate with each other to keep the production line running smoothly. To ensure that the network remains stable and reliable, the plant needs to use Turbo Ring v2 to create a fault-tolerant network by forming a ring topology.



Set up Turbo Ring v2 to connect multiple networks of machines and devices to create a fault-tolerant network and achieve continuous operations.

Ensure that switches are installed and powered. Wait to connect them until the end.

To configure this scenario, do the following:

1. Configure the settings each network device for Turbo Ring v2.

See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure each device.


2. Connect the network devices in a ring topology, using ports 1 and 2 for ring segments.

If the master network device fails, the other devices in the ring will automatically detect the problem and initiate a new election process to select a new master switch, ensuring that there is no significant interruption in communication.

### **Example: Configuring the Master for Turbo Ring v2 in a Manufacturing Plant**

Configure the device labeled SW-A for Turbo Ring v2 in our factory example.

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1/1** and **1/2** as ring ports.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Set **Turbo Ring V2** to **Enabled**.
4. Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

5. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Master</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	<b>1/1</b>
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	<b>1/2</b>

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
<b>Multiple devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of <b>Enabled</b> devices
<b>No devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
<b>Single device set to Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b> device always master, failure of <b>Enabled</b> device results in ring election


6. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Repeat this step on devices SW-B, SW-C, and SW-D, but with the **Master** setting set to **Disabled**. This process is outlined in the subsequent section.

### **Example: Configuring Non-Master Network Devices for Turbo Ring v2 in a Manufacturing Plant**

Follow these steps to configure devices SW-B through SW-D in our scenario.

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1/1** and **1/2** as ring ports.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Set **Turbo Ring V2** to **Enabled**.
4. Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

5. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Master</b>	<b>Disabled</b>
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	<b>1/1</b>
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	<b>1/2</b>

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
<b>Multiple devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of <b>Enabled</b> devices
<b>No devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
<b>Single device set to Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b> device always master, failure of <b>Enabled</b> device results in ring election

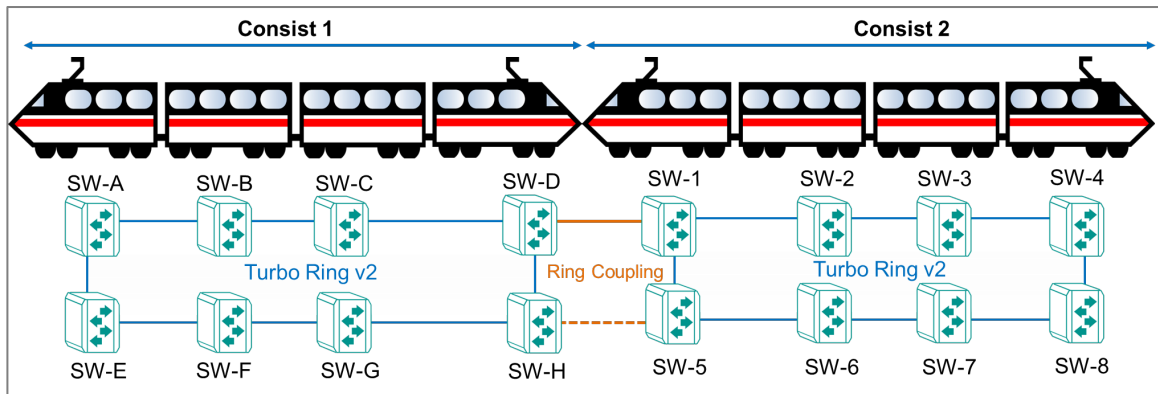
6. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Once all devices in the ring are configured and enabled, you can connect the ring ports.

### Scenario: Using Turbo Ring in an On-board Train Application

In this scenario, we describe setting up Turbo Ring v2 with ring coupling between train consists.

A railway vehicle manufacturer needs to plan a new on-board network with redundancy and flexible inter-consist communication. The customer plans a ring network with Turbo Ring v2 between multiple vehicles to form one ring per consist. Multiple consists will then use ring coupling for inter-consist communication.



This structure allows for easy administration as consists are coupled and uncoupled.

To configure this scenario, do the following:


1. Configure the settings each network device for Turbo Ring v2.  
See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure each device.
2. Connect the network devices SW-A through SW-H in a ring topology, using ports 1 and 2 for segments of the ring. Do the same for SW-1 through SW-8. Do not connect the ring coupling yet.
3. Configure the Primary Coupling Path path on SW-D.  
See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure ring coupling.
4. Configure the Backup Ring Coupling on SW-H.  
See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure ring coupling.

Once all devices have been configured, you can connect the ring ports and coupling ports.

### Example: Configuring the Master for Turbo Ring v2 in an On-board Rail Application

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1/1** and **1/2** as ring ports.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.

2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Set **Turbo Ring V2** to **Enabled**.
4. Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

5. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Master</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	<b>1/1</b>
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	<b>1/2</b>

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
<b>Multiple devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of <b>Enabled</b> devices
<b>No devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
<b>Single device set to Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b> device always master, failure of <b>Enabled</b> device results in ring election


6. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Once all devices in the ring are configured and enabled, you can connect the ring ports.

Continue to the next section to see how to configure ring coupling. Do not connect coupling ports until network devices have been configured.

### **Example: Configuring non-Master devices for Turbo Ring v2 in an On-board Rail Application**

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1/1** and **1/2** as ring ports.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Set **Turbo Ring V2** to **Enabled**.
4. Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

5. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Master</b>	<b>Disabled</b>
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	<b>1/1</b>
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	<b>1/2</b>

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
<b>Multiple devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of <b>Enabled</b> devices
<b>No devices set to Enabled</b>	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
<b>Single device set to Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b> device always master, failure of <b>Enabled</b> device results in ring election

6. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Once all devices in the ring are configured and enabled, you can connect the ring ports. Once all

Continue to the next section to see how to configure ring coupling. Do not connect coupling ports until network devices have been configured.


### Example: Configuring the Primary Ring Coupling Between Consists

Both network devices that make up the ring coupling must be configured as coupling devices.

- Make sure that you have configured both rings in the scenario.
- Do not connect the coupling ports until completing setup on both devices. Our scenario assumes port **1/5** will serve as coupling port.
- Couplers should only be configured on one ring. Our example uses SW-D as the primary and SW-H as the backup. Do not configure SW-1 or SW-5 as couplers.

To configure SW-D as the primary ring coupler:

The procedure on each device is identical. To configure each device, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Under Ring Coupling Settings, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring Coupling Settings screen appears.

4. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	<b>Coupling Primary Path</b>
<b>Coupling Port</b>	<b>1/5</b>

5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The device has been configured as a primary ring coupling.


Connect the ring coupling ports. Once both devices are connected, you can move on to configuring the backup coupling.

## Example: Configuring the Backup Ring Coupling Between Consists

Both network devices that make up the backup ring coupling must be configured as coupling devices.

- Make sure that you have configured both rings in the scenario.
- Do not connect the coupling ports until completing setup on both devices. Our scenario assumes port **1/5** will serve as coupling port.
- Couplers should only be configured on one ring. Our example uses SW-D as the primary and SW-H as the backup. Do not configure SW-1 or SW-5 as couplers.

To configure SW-H as the backup coupler:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Under Ring Coupling Settings, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring Coupling Settings screen appears.

4. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Enabled</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	<b>Coupling Backup Path</b>
<b>Coupling Port</b>	<b>1/5</b>

5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The device has been configured as a backup ring coupling.

Once the device has been configured, connect the ring coupling ports. Your coupling configuration will be complete.

## Turbo Ring V2

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2

This page lets you set up and configure Turbo Ring v2 redundancy for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

## Turbo Ring V2 - Settings

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings**

This page lets you configure the Turbo Ring V2 settings.

### Turbo Ring V2 Settings

Turbo Ring V2 \*

Disabled ▼



---

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Turbo Ring V2</b>	Enable or disable Turbo Ring V2 for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

### Ring Settings

Ring Settings

Ring ID	Status	Master	Ring Port 1	Ring Port 2
 Ring 1	Enabled	Enabled	1	2
 Ring 2	Disabled	Disabled	3	4

1 - 2 of 2

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ring ID</b>	Shows the ID of the ring the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether Turbo Ring V2 is enabled for the ring.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Master</b>	Shows whether the device is designated as the master for the ring.
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	Shows which port will act as ring port 1. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the primary ring connection.
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	Shows which port will act as ring port 2. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the backup ring connection and will be blocked normally.

## Edit Ring Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a ring on the **Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the Turbo Ring V2 settings for the ring.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Ring 1 Settings

Status \*  
Enabled ▾

Master \*  
Enabled ▾

Ring Port 1 \*  
1 ▾


Ring Port 2 \*  
2 ▾

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable Turbo Ring V2 for the ring.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Master</b>	Enable or disable whether the device will be designated as the master for the ring.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	Specify which port will act as ring port 1. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the primary ring connection.	Drop-down list of ports	1
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	Specify which port will act as ring port 2. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the backup ring connection and will be blocked normally.	Drop-down list of ports	2

## Ring Coupling Settings


Ring Coupling Settings		
Coupling Mode	Status	Coupling Port
 Primary Path	Disabled	2/1

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Shows which coupling mode the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether ring coupling is enabled or disabled.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the port used for ring coupling.

## Edit Ring Coupling Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for an entry on the **Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the ring coupling settings for the entry.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enabled</b>	Enable or disable ring coupling for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Specify whether this device will be designated as primary or backup path for ring coupling.	Coupling Primary Path / Coupling Backup Path	Coupling Primary Path
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Specify the port to use for ring coupling.	Drop-down list of ports	5

### Static Ring Coupling Settings

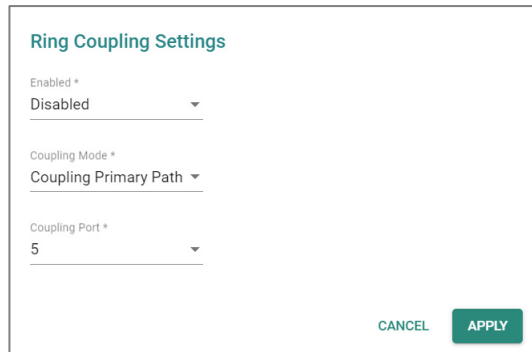
UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Shows which coupling mode the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether ring coupling is enabled or disabled.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the port used for ring coupling.

## Edit Static Ring Coupling Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry in the Static Ring Coupling Settings list on the **Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the ring coupling settings for the entry.

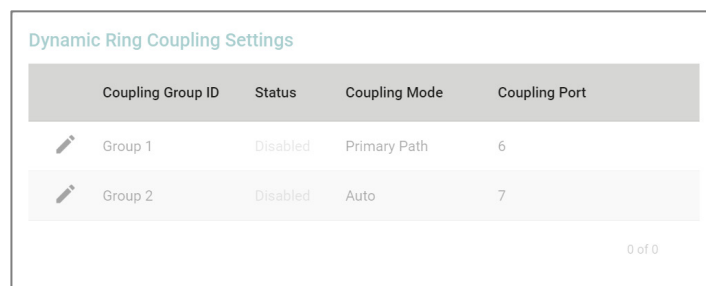
Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



The dialog box titled "Ring Coupling Settings" contains three dropdown menus. The first is labeled "Enabled\*" and is currently set to "Disabled". The second is labeled "Coupling Mode\*" and is currently set to "Coupling Primary Path". The third is labeled "Coupling Port\*" and is currently set to "5". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "CANCEL" and "APPLY".

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enabled</b>	Enable or disable ring coupling for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Specify whether this device will be designated as primary or backup path for ring coupling.	Coupling Primary Path / Coupling Backup Path	Coupling Primary Path
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Specify the port to use for ring coupling.	Drop-down list of ports	5

## Dynamic Ring Coupling Settings



The table titled "Dynamic Ring Coupling Settings" has four columns: "Coupling Group ID", "Status", "Coupling Mode", and "Coupling Port". It contains two rows of data. Each row has an edit icon (✎) to the left of the "Coupling Group ID" cell. The first row shows "Group 1", "Disabled", "Primary Path", and "6". The second row shows "Group 2", "Disabled", "Auto", and "7". At the bottom right of the table, it says "0 of 0".

Coupling Group ID	Status	Coupling Mode	Coupling Port
✎ Group 1	Disabled	Primary Path	6
✎ Group 2	Disabled	Auto	7

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Group ID</b>	Shows the ID of the coupling group the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether the ring coupling group is enabled or disabled.
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Shows the coupling mode used for the group.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows which port is the coupling port for the group.

## Edit Dynamic Ring Coupling Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry in the Dynamic Ring Coupling Settings list on the **Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the ring coupling settings for the entry.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.


**Coupling Group 1 Settings**

Status \*

Coupling Mode \*

Coupling Port \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable the dynamic ring coupling group.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	<p>Specify the mode used to determine the coupling mode for the group.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Coupling Backup Path:</b> This group will act as the backup path.</li> <li>• <b>Coupling Primary Path:</b> This group will act as the primary path.</li> <li>• <b>Auto:</b> The ring master will collect packets from all ring coupling switches to determine whether the group will act as the primary or backup path.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If both ports in the same group have the same role, the port with the smaller MAC address will be the backup port, and the other port will be the primary port.</p> </div>	Coupling Backup Path / Coupling Primary Path / Auto	Auto
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Specify which port will act as the coupling port for the group.	Drop-down list of ports	Group 1: 6 Group 2: 7

## Turbo Ring V2 - Status

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Status

This page lets you view the Turbo Ring V2 ring and ring coupling status.

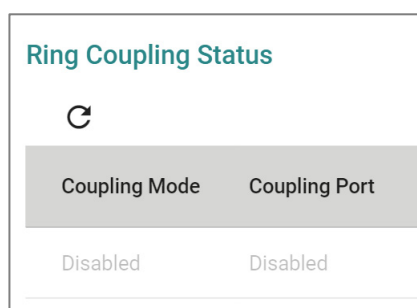
### Ring Status

Ring Status					
Ring ID	Master ID	Status	Role	Ring Port 1	Ring Port 2
Ring 1	00:00:00:00:00:00	Disabled	Slave	Disabled	Disabled
Ring 2	00:00:00:00:00:00	Disabled	Slave	Disabled	Disabled

1 - 2 of 2

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ring ID</b>	Shows the ID of the ring the entry is for.
<b>Master ID</b>	Shows the MAC address of the ring master.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the ring. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Healthy:</b> The ring and the ports are working properly.</li> <li>• <b>Break:</b> One or more rings are currently broken.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The ring is disabled.</li> </ul>
<b>Role</b>	Shows whether the device is configured as a master or slave for the ring.
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	Shows which port will act as ring port 1. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the primary ring connection.
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	Shows which port will act as ring port 2. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the backup ring connection and will be blocked normally.

## Ring Coupling Status



UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Shows whether the device is the primary or backup path for ring coupling.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the status of the port used for ring coupling.

## Static Ring Coupling Status

Static Ring Coupling Status	
↻	
Coupling Mode	Coupling Port
Primary Path	Link Down
1 - 1 of 1	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Mode</b>	Shows whether the device is the primary or backup path for ring coupling.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the status of the port used for ring coupling.

## Dynamic Ring Coupling Status

Dynamic Ring Coupling Status		
Role	Ring Index	Total Ring Number
Master	1	1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Role</b>	Shows the device role for Turbo Ring V2.
<b>Ring Index</b>	Shows the ring index for dynamic ring coupling. This allows the device to determine its order within the dynamic ring coupling mechanism.
<b>Total Ring Number</b>	Shows the the total ring number for dynamic ring coupling. This allows the device to determine its order within the dynamic ring coupling mechanism.

## Dynamic Ring Coupling Status List - Master

If the device role is **Master**, this table will appear.

↻							
Coupling Group ID	Coupling Group Status	Primary MAC	Primary Port	Primary Port Status	Backup MAC	Backup Port	Backup
Group 1	Inactive	---	---	---	---	---	---
Group 2	Inactive	---	---	---	---	---	---
1 - 2 of 2							

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Group ID</b>	Shows the ID of the coupling group which the entry is for.
<b>Coupling Group Status</b>	Shows whether the group is active or inactive.
<b>Primary MAC</b>	Shows the MAC address of the primary port used for the group.
<b>Primary Port</b>	Shows the primary port used for the group.
<b>Primary Port Status</b>	Shows the status of the primary port used for the group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Remote coupler switch:</b> Shows the status of the coupling port as <b>Link Up</b> or <b>Link Down</b>.</li> <li>• <b>Local coupling port:</b> Shows the status of the coupling port as <b>Link Down, Forwarding,</b> or <b>Blocking</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Backup MAC</b>	Shows the MAC address of the backup port used for the group.
<b>Backup Port</b>	Shows the backup port used for the group.
<b>Backup Port Status</b>	Shows the status of the backup port used for the group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Remote coupler switch:</b> Shows the status of the coupling port as <b>Link Up</b> or <b>Link Down</b>.</li> <li>• <b>Local coupling port:</b> Shows the status of the coupling port as <b>Link Down, Forwarding,</b> or <b>Blocking</b>.</li> </ul>

### Dynamic Ring Coupling Status List - Slave

If the device role is **Slave**, this table will appear.

C			
Coupling Group ID	Coupling Group Status	Coupling Port	Coupling Port Status
Group 1	Active	1	Blocking
Group 2	Inactive	--	--

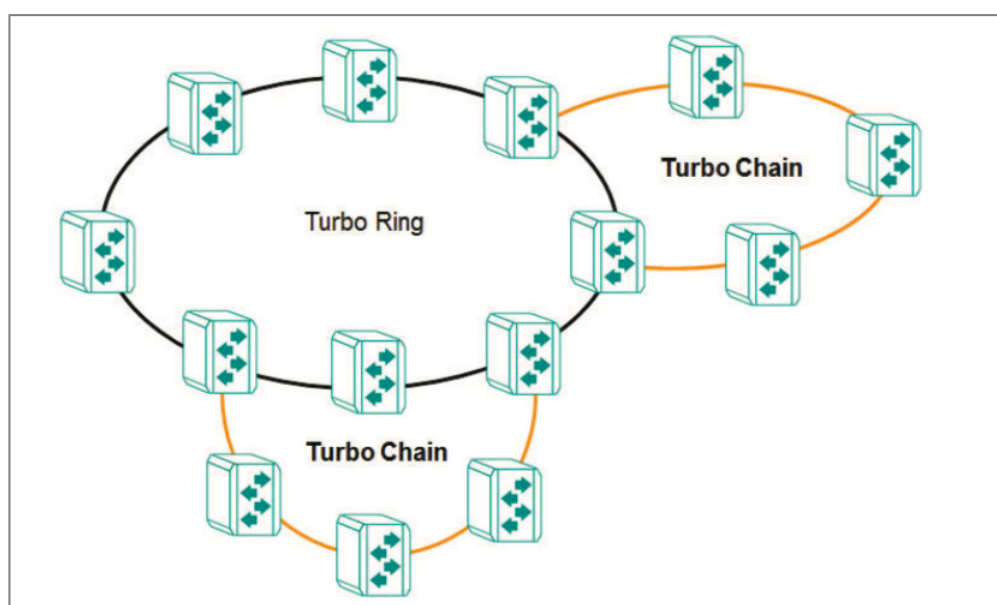
UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Group ID</b>	Shows the ID of the coupling group which the entry is for.
<b>Coupling Group Status</b>	Shows whether the group is active or inactive.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the coupling port used for the group.
<b>Coupling Port Status</b>	Shows the status of the local coupling port used for the group as <b>Link Down</b> , <b>Forwarding</b> , or <b>Blocking</b> .

## About Turbo Chain

Turbo Chain allows flexible expansion on top of an existing topology

This allows for flexible, cost-effective expansions. This allows you to grow existing networks without replacement the main ring while still maintaining reliability and redundancy.

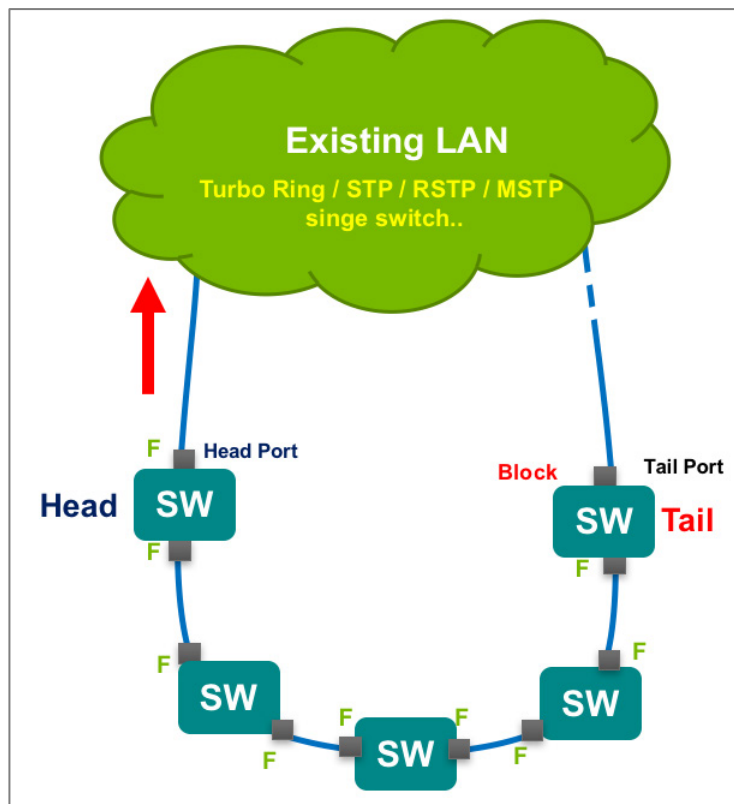


Turbo Chain is a proprietary redundancy technology developed by Moxa, designed for use in widely distributed networks. It enables Ethernet switches to be connected in a daisy-chain configuration, where each switch serves as a backup path for connected devices. Turbo Chain supports system recovery times of under 20 ms for Fast Ethernet and 50 ms for Gigabit Ethernet in member port link environments.

Turbo Chain is suitable for industrial networks with complex topologies, particularly those utilizing multi-ring architectures. It allows the creation of flexible and scalable topologies with rapid media recovery.

In a typical Turbo Chain setup, each Ethernet switch is connected to two others in a daisy-chain configuration. The switches are categorized into three types: Head, Tail, and Member switches. The Head switch connects the chain to the external network, while the Tail switch provides redundancy. If the Head port is disconnected, the Tail port immediately assumes the role of data transfer, ensuring continuous communication.

This technology ensures that in the event of a link or switch failure, Turbo Chain quickly reroutes traffic to an available backup path, minimizing network downtime and maintaining uninterrupted communication.



Turbo Chain is often used in industrial automation, transportation, and surveillance applications where network reliability is critical. It is compatible with other Moxa networking technologies, such as Turbo Ring, and other Redundancy protocols like STP/RSTP, MSTP etc, to provide further redundancy and resilience for industrial networks.

To sum up, here are some of the features of Turbo Chain technology:

1. **Topology:** Turbo Chain uses a daisy-chain topology to connect Ethernet switches in a loop-free configuration.
2. **Redundancy:** Turbo Chain provides a backup path on the tail switch to ensure network availability and reduce downtime in the event of a switch or link failure.

3. **Fast failover:** Turbo Chain has a fast failover mechanism that can detect and activate backup paths in a matter of milliseconds (< 20 ms) to ensure uninterrupted communication between devices.
4. **Compatibility:** Turbo Chain is compatible with other redundancy technologies, such as Turbo Ring and RSTP, to provide even greater redundancy and resilience for industrial networks.

## Turbo Chain

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Chain

This page lets you manage the Turbo Chain feature for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

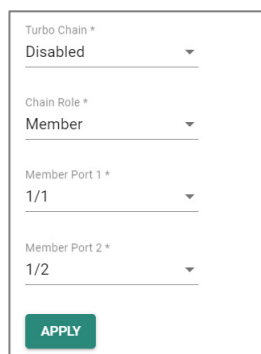
- Settings
- Status

### Turbo Chain - Settings

#### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Chain - Settings

This page lets you configure the Turbo Chain settings.

### Turbo Chain Settings



The screenshot shows a configuration form for Turbo Chain. It contains four dropdown menus: 'Turbo Chain \*' set to 'Disabled', 'Chain Role \*' set to 'Member', 'Member Port 1 \*' set to '1/1', and 'Member Port 2 \*' set to '1/2'. A green 'APPLY' button is located at the bottom of the form.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Turbo Chain</b>	Enable/disable Turbo Chain for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Chain Role</b>	Specify the chain role for your device.	Head / Member / Tail	Member
<b>Member Port 1</b>	Specify the port to use as member port 1.	Drop-down list of ports	1
<b>Member Port 2</b>	Specify the port to use as member port 2.	Drop-down list of ports	2

## Turbo Chain - Status

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Turbo Chain - Status

This page lets you view the Turbo Chain status of your device.

## Turbo Chain Status

Chain Information	
Turbo Chain	Chain Role
Disabled	Member
Member 1 Port Status	Member 2 Port Status
Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
<b>Turbo Chain</b>	Shows whether Turbo Chain is enabled for your device.
<b>Chain Role</b>	Shows the chain role of your device.
<b>Member Port 1</b>	Shows the status of member port 1.
<b>Member Port 2</b>	Shows the status of member port 2.

## About MRP (Media Redundancy Protocol)

MRP (Media Redundancy Protocol) is a network protocol based on the IEC 62439-2 that allows users to create a redundant ring system. With a recovery time of less than 200 ms, it can support up to 50 devices in each ring.

MRP includes the following roles:

## **MRM (Media Redundancy Manager)**

MRM, also known as the Ring Manager, is a node in the network topology that manages and monitors the health of the entire ring. There is only one MRM in the network. In the event of a Link Down scenario, the MRM diagnoses the issue and notifies all MRCs (Media Redundancy Clients) to flush their MAC address table and relearn the path. Additionally, the MRM changes the port status of the primary port from blocking to forwarding to restore connectivity.

## **MRC (Media Redundancy Client)**

MRC, also known as the Ring Client, is a node in the network topology that is monitored by the MRM (Media Redundancy Manager). However, the MRCs do not solely rely on the MRM to detect the health of the ring, they also automatically notify the MRM in the event of a Link Down or Recovery situation. The MRC flushes its MAC address table and relearns the path when requested by the MRM.

## **MIM (Media Redundancy Interconnection Manager)**

The function of the MIM is to observe and to control the redundant interconnection topology in order to react on interconnection faults. To cover a maximum of applications, two detection methods are provided by this international standard. The MIM can observe the interconnection topology by either:

- **LC-mode (Link check mode):** The MRP interconnection manager can observe the interconnection topology by reacting directly on interconnection port link change notification messages
- **RC-mode (Ring check mode):** The MRP interconnection manager can observe the interconnection topology by sending test frames on the interconnection port over the connected rings and receiving them over its ring ports, checking in both directions

## **MIC (Media Redundancy Interconnection Client)**

The other three nodes in the interconnection topology have the role of media redundancy interconnection clients (MIC), in addition to the role of a MRC or MRM. The MIC reacts on received reconfiguration frames from the MIM, it can detect and signal link changes of its interconnection port, and it can issue link change notification messages.

## Configuring Ring Managers and Clients

MRP Managers and Clients must be configured before the rings can be used.

- Determine which devices will be the Manager and the Clients. There can only be a single manager.
- Do not connect any of the devices until configuration of all devices is complete.
- Do not use any of the ring ports until configuration is completed. Do not use these ports for administration, as applying the chain configuration to these ports will disconnect you from the web GUI.

Choose a device to configure and do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > MRP**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Under Media Redundancy Protocol, choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
4. Specify the following based on the **Role**:

Ring Manager Option	Ring Manager Value
<b>Role</b>	<b>Ring Manager</b>
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID for the ring
<b>Domain UUID</b>	Choose either <b>Default</b> or <b>PROFITNET (Siemens)</b> according to your network configuration
<b>React on Link Change</b>	It is recommended to set this to <b>Enabled</b> . This setting allows the Ring Manager to quickly respond to topology changes, both when a link goes down and when the original topology is restored.
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	Specify the first redundant ring port
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	Specify the second redundant ring port

Ring Client Option	Ring Client Value
<b>Role</b>	<b>Ring Client</b>
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID for the ring

Ring Client Option	Ring Client Value
<b>Domain UUID</b>	Choose either <b>Default</b> or <b>PROFITNET (Siemens)</b> according to your network configuration
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	Specify the first redundant ring port
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	Specify the second redundant ring port

5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Once all devices are configured, you can connect the ring ports.

## MRP

### Menu Path: Redundancy > MRP

This page lets you configure the MRP parameters of the switch and view the MRP protocol operation status of the switch.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

### MRP - Settings

#### Menu Path: Redundancy > MRP - Settings

This page lets you enable and configure MRP for your device.

### Media Redundancy Protocol

Settings
Status

---

Media Redundancy Protocol \*  
 Enabled ▾

Role \*  
 Ring Client ▾

VLAN ID \*  
 1

Domain UUID \*  
 Default ▾

Ring Port 1 \*  
 1/1 ▾

Ring Port 2 \*  
 1/2 ▾

**Interconnection**  
 Interconnection \*  
 Enabled ▾

Interconnection Role \*  
 Interconnection Client ▾



Interconnection Mod... ▾

Interconnection ID \*  
 0


Interconnection Port \*  
 1/3 ▾


**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Media Redundancy Protocol</b>	Enable or disable Media Redundancy Protocol (MRP) for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Role</b>	Specify the role for the device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ring Client:</b> The device will act as a ring client.</li> <li><b>Ring Manager:</b> The device will act as a ring manager, and can manage and monitor the ring's health status.</li> </ul>	Ring Client / Ring Manager	Ring Client
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to use for MRP. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The VLAN ID should align with the ring port settings.</p> </div>	1 to 4094	1
<b>Domain UUID</b>	Select whether to use a default or PROFINET domain UUID.	Default / PROFINET	Default

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>React on Link Change</b> (If Role is Ring Manager)	Enable or disable reacting on link change. Enable reaction on link change for faster recovery speeds.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Ring Port 1</b>	Specify the port to use as the 1st redundant port.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> Only select the port in VLAN Trunk/Hybrid mode.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Ring Port 2</b>	Specify the port to use as the 2nd redundant port.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> Only select the port in VLAN Trunk/Hybrid mode.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Interconnection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Interconnection</b>	Enable or disable MRP interconnection for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Interconnection Role</b>	Select the interconnection role for the device.	Interconnection Manager / Interconnection Client	Interconnection Client
<b>Interconnection Mode</b>	Select the interconnection mode to use for the device.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> The Interconnection Manager and all Interconnection Clients in the same MRP interconnection topology must use the same interconnection mode.</p> </div>	LC-Mode / RC-Mode (RKS-G4000-L3 Series: RC-Mode)	LC-Mode (RKS-G4000-L3 Series: N/A)
<b>Interconnection ID</b>	Specify an ID for the interconnection.	0 to 65535	0

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Interconnection Port</b>	Select a port to use for the interconnection.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Only select the port in VLAN Trunk/Hybrid mode.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	3 or 1/3, depending on the model

## MRP - Status

### Menu Path: Redundancy > MRP - Status

This page lets you view the overall status of the MRP ring and ring ports.

### Ring Status

Settings
Status

### Ring Status ↻

MRP Ring  
**Enabled**

Role  
**Ring Client**

Ring State  
**Data Exchange Idle**

React on Link Change  
**Disabled**

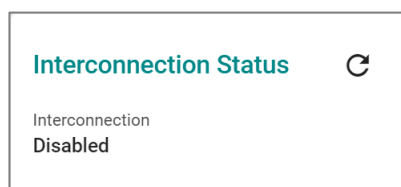
VLAN ID  
**1**

Domain ID  
**FFFFFFFF-FFFF-FFFF-FFFF-FFFFFFFFFFFFFF**

UI Setting	Description
<b>MRP Ring</b>	Shows whether the MRP ring is enabled.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Role</b>	Shows the role of the device.
<b>Ring State</b>	Shows the current ring state.
<b>React on Link Change</b>	Shows whether reaction on link change is enabled.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID for the ring.
<b>Domain ID</b>	Shows the domain UUID for the ring.

### Interconnection Status



UI Setting	Description
<b>Interconnection</b>	Shows whether MRP interconnection is enabled.

### MRP Port Status List

Interface	Port	Port Status
Ring Port 1	1	Link Down
Ring Port 2	2	Forwarding

UI Setting	Description
<b>Interface</b>	Shows the interface the entry is for.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port used for the interface.
<b>Port Status</b>	Shows the port status of the interface.

## About Multiple Dual Homing

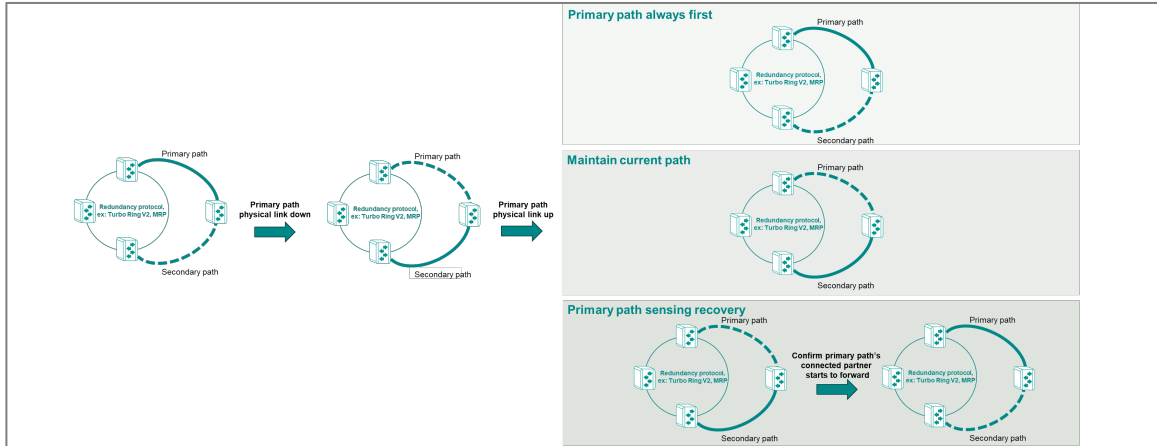
Multiple Dual Homing is a layer 2 function that connects two network topologies using a single Ethernet switch, enabling redundancy protocols on each topology. It links either two devices or two rings to two independent connection points, activating a secondary path if the primary path fails. Multiple Dual Homing allows for several dual-homing sessions simultaneously, supporting multiple redundant connections.

### Multiple Dual Homing In Depth

To configure Multiple Dual Homing, you must specify the primary port and secondary (fallback) port for the switch, which correspond to the primary and secondary paths respectively. The primary path serves as the default forwarding path, with the secondary path blocked until the primary goes down.

Multiple dual homing supports three path switching modes:

- **Primary path always first** (default). Automatically switches back to the primary path when it recovers, blocking the secondary path regardless of its status. Recovery time depends on the connected partner's data and physical link timing.
- **Maintain current path.** Maintains the current (secondary) path even if the primary path recovers, until the secondary path disconnects. Reduces the cost of frequent switching.
- **Primary path sensing recovery.** Switches to the primary path once the primary port confirms that the partner device is forwarding, immediately blocking the secondary port. This mode minimizes recovery time.



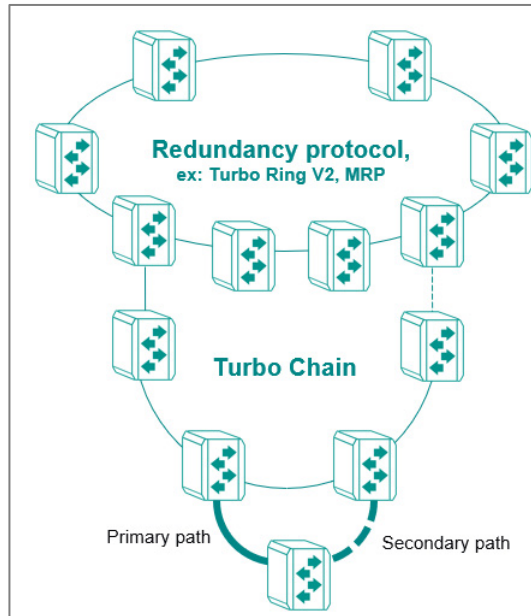
**Note**

It is highly recommended to configure Linkup Delay to avoid rapid oscillation between primary and secondary paths.

When used in conjunction with other Moxa redundancy protocols, such as Turbo Ring v2 and Turbo Chain, Multiple Dual Homing can significantly reduce fault recovery costs.

	Fast Ethernet	Gigabit Copper	SFP
<b>Turbo Ring/Turbo Chain</b>	20 ms	800 ms	50 ms

Multiple Dual Homing can coexist with other redundancy protocols provided these protocols are configured on different ports. Dual Homing and other redundancy protocols are mutually exclusive on any logical port, including trunking ports.



**Note**

Port-Channel ports can be used with Dual-homing, but have the following limitations:

1. Port-Channel and member ports can not be deleted while set as a Primary or Secondary port.
2. Ports assigned as a Primary or Secondary port cannot be assigned to Port-Channel member ports while Multiple Dual Homing is enabled.

**Note**

Ports with IEEE 802.1X or MAB enabled cannot be specified as Primary or Secondary ports due to the possibility of interruption. Port authorization and redundancy serve different purposes, and should remain on separate ports.

## Configuring Multiple Dual Homing


Do not connect homing ports until setup is complete, otherwise you may risk network looping.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Dual Homing**, and then choose **Settings**.
3. Under **Settings**, click **Multiple Dual Homing** and choose **Enabled** from the drop-down list.

4. Specify a **Path Switching Mode**:

Option	Description
<b>Primary path always first</b>	Reconnects as soon as physical media is available, with recovery time determined by data link responsiveness.
<b>Maintain current path</b>	After switching paths, device will not switch back unless the secondary becomes unavailable, minimizing recovery time.
<b>Primary path sensing recovery</b>	Reconnects when primary path data link goes back up, reducing recovery time.

5. Click **Apply** to save your changes.

6. To edit a Session, under Dual Homing Table Settings, click  **[Edit]** next to the corresponding **Session ID**.

The Edit Session Settings screen appears.

7. Specify all of the following, and click **Apply** to save your changes:

Option	Value
<b>Status</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Primary Port</b>	Specify the Port used as the primary path. This port will be the default link to the network.
<b>Secondary Port</b>	Specify the Port used as the secondary path. This port will be the backup link to the network.

The corresponding **Session ID** updates.


8. Repeat this step to configure additional sessions.

Multiple Dual Homing has been configured. You can now connect ports.

It is highly recommended to configure **Linkup Delay** to avoid rapid oscillation between primary and secondary paths.

### Configuring Linkup Delay

Linkup Delay adds a brief pause before establishing a link, which can be useful to avoid oscillation or "flapping" in complex network setups.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Port > Port Interface > Linkup Delay**.
3. Under **Linkup Delay**, select **Enable** from the drop down list, and then click **Apply**.
4. Configure Linkup Delay on each port by clicking  **[Edit]** next to the corresponding **Port**, configuring the following, and then clicking **Apply**:

Linkup Delay	Enabled
<b>Delay Time</b>	2 seconds is the default and recommended setting.
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Optionally, duplicate configuration on other ports. For users configuring Multiple Dual Homing, we recommend configuring both primary and backup ports with Linkup Delay.

Linkup Delay settings will be shown in the table.

## Multiple Dual Homing

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Dual Homing**

This page lets you manage the Multiple Dual Homing feature for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

### Multiple Dual Homing - Settings

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Dual Homing - Settings**

This page lets you enable and configure Multiple Dual Homing for your device.

## 🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 8 multiple dual homing sessions.

## Multiple Dual Homing Settings

**Multiple Dual Homing**

Settings      Status

Multiple Dual Homing \*  
Enabled

Path Switching Mode \*  
Primary path sensing recovery

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Multiple Dual Homing</b>	Enable or disable Multiple Dual Homing for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Path Switching Mode</b>	Select the path switching mode to use for Multiple Dual Homing based on whether or not you want to switch back to the primary path when the primary path recovers.	Primary path always first / Maintain current path / Primary path sensing recovery	Primary path always first

## Multiple Dual Homing Session List

	Session ID	Enabled	Primary Port	Secondary Port
	1	Enabled	1/1	1/2
	2	Disabled	1/3	1/4
	3	Disabled	2/1	2/2
	4	Disabled	2/3	2/4

UI Setting	Description
<b>Session ID</b>	Shows the Multiple Dual Homing session ID the entry is for.
<b>Enabled</b>	Shows whether Multiple Dual Homing is enabled for the session.
<b>Primary Port</b>	Shows the primary port for the session.
<b>Secondary Port</b>	Shows the secondary port for the session.

## Edit Session Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Dual Homing - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a session on the **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Dual Homing - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the Multiple Dual Homing settings for the session.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Session 1 Settings

Enabled \*

Primary Port \*

Secondary Port \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable Multiple Dual Homing for the session.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Primary Port</b>	Select the primary port to use for the session.	Drop-down list of ports	Depends on the product model

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Secondary Port</b>	Select the secondary port to use for the session.	Drop-down list of ports	Depends on the product model

## Multiple Dual Homing - Status

**Menu Path:** Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Dual Homing - Status

This page lets you view the status of Multiple Dual Homing for your device.

### Multiple Dual Homing Session Status List

Session ID	Primary Port	Primary Link Status	Primary Port Status	Secondary Port
1	1/1	Link Down	Link Down	1/2
2	1/3	Link Down	Disabled	1/4
3	2/1	Link Down	Disabled	2/2
4	2/3	Link Down	Disabled	2/4

UI Setting	Description
<b>Session ID</b>	Shows the session ID the entry is for.
<b>Primary Port</b>	Shows the primary port for the session.
<b>Primary Link Status</b>	Shows the current link status of the primary path for the session.
<b>Primary Port Status</b>	Shows the current status of the primary port for the session.
<b>Secondary Port</b>	Shows the secondary port for the session.
<b>Secondary Link Status</b>	Shows the current link status of the secondary path for the session.
<b>Secondary Port Status</b>	Shows the current status of the secondary port for the session.

## About Multiple Network Coupling

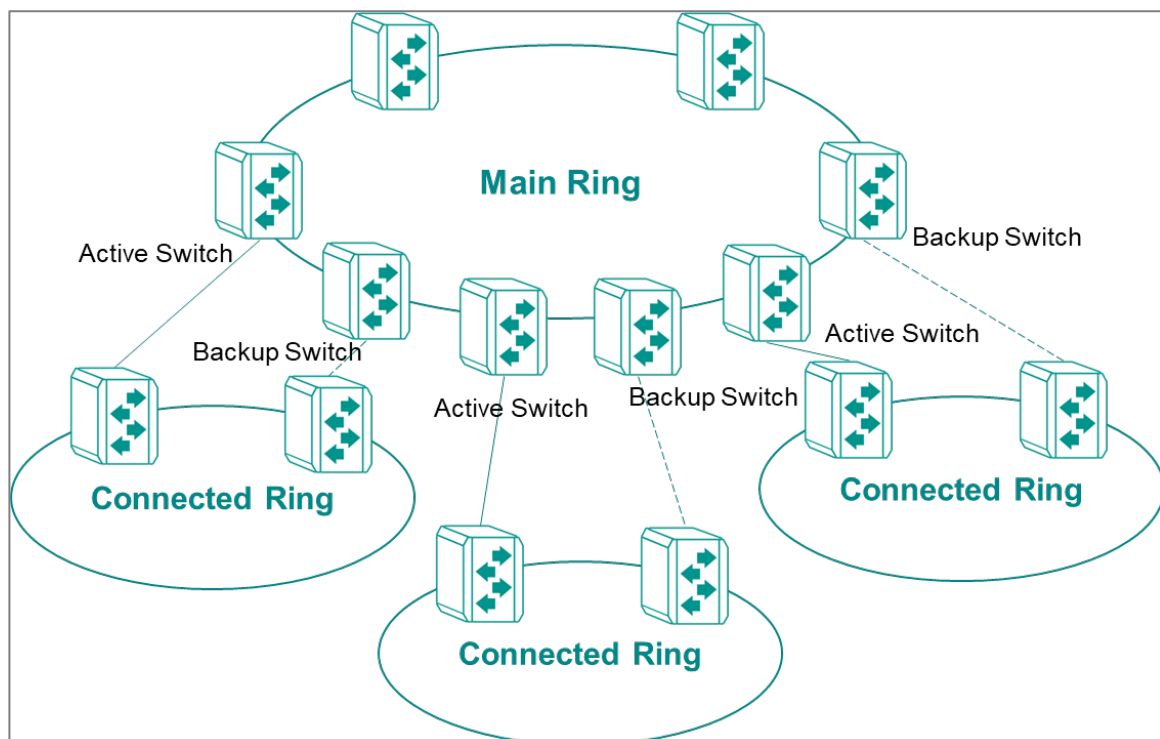
Multiple Network Coupling is a proprietary Moxa feature designed to address various scenarios where heterogeneous redundant networks need to be connected to operate together.

By connecting different redundant protocols, this feature not only provides flexibility for topologies applied in different applications, but also raises the level of overall network availability and stability by making sure the path between different redundant protocols is always unimpeded without looping.

Multiple Network Coupling includes a Main Ring and Connected Rings, and these rings can operate using the same or different redundancy protocols. This feature uses two switches to couple the two rings, and switches in the Main Ring control the coupling links to make sure communication between the two rings is smooth.

## Multiple Network Coupling In Depth

The structure of Multiple Network Coupling includes a Main Ring and Connected Rings.



MRX supports the following redundancy protocols for the Main Ring:

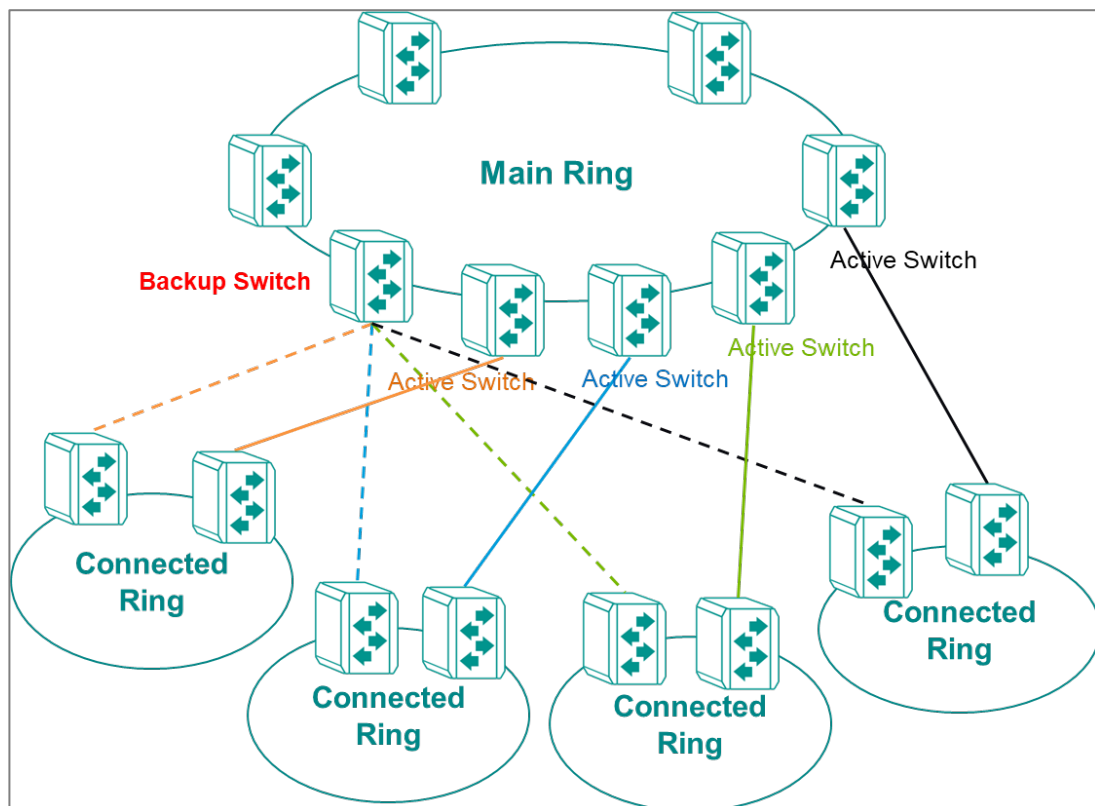
- Turbo Ring v2

- MRP
- HSR

MRX supports the following redundancy protocols for Connected Rings:

- Turbo Ring v2
- MRP
- RSTP

The redundancy protocol on the Main Ring is coupled with the redundancy protocols running on the Connected Rings. Switches in the Main Ring used to couple the Connected Rings are designated as Active Switches or Backup Switches. Active Switches are responsible for the primary path and Backup Switches are responsible for the backup path. The communication protocols designed for the Active Switch and Backup Switch ensure traffic moves smoothly between the rings without looping. The Backup path will take over when the Primary path link is down, and vice versa.



### Multiple Network Coupling Limitations

- The Main Ring can couple with up to 16 Connected Rings.

- A switch in the Main Ring can support up to 4 paths to Connected Rings.
- A Backup Switch can pair with up to 4 Active Switches.
- An Active Switch can only have one Backup Switch.

## **About Topologies for Multiple Network Coupling**

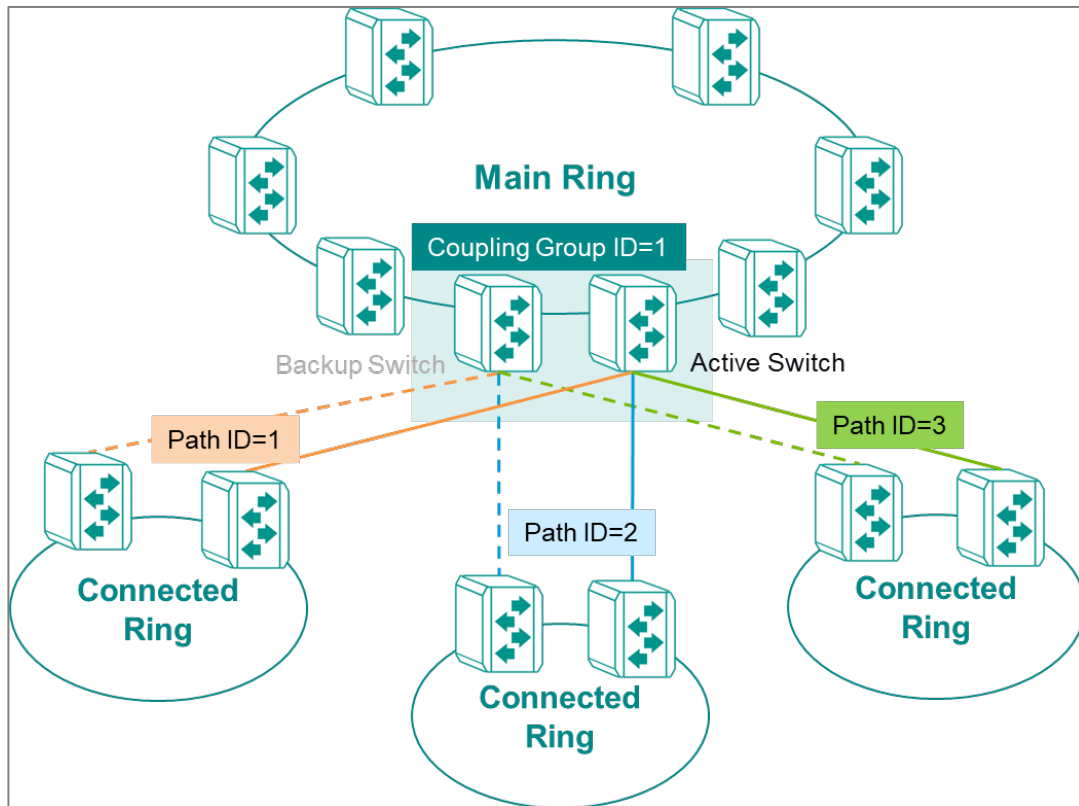
These are some examples of different Multiple Network Coupling deployments and guidelines for topology planning.

### **Guidelines for Topologies**

- Coupling Groups refer to switches on the Main Ring, and the Connected Ring switches attached to them.
  - Each Coupling Group can only have one backup switch.
- Path IDs uniquely identify Connected Rings within the same coupling group.
  - Multiple Connected Rings connected to the same Coupling Group require separate Path IDs.

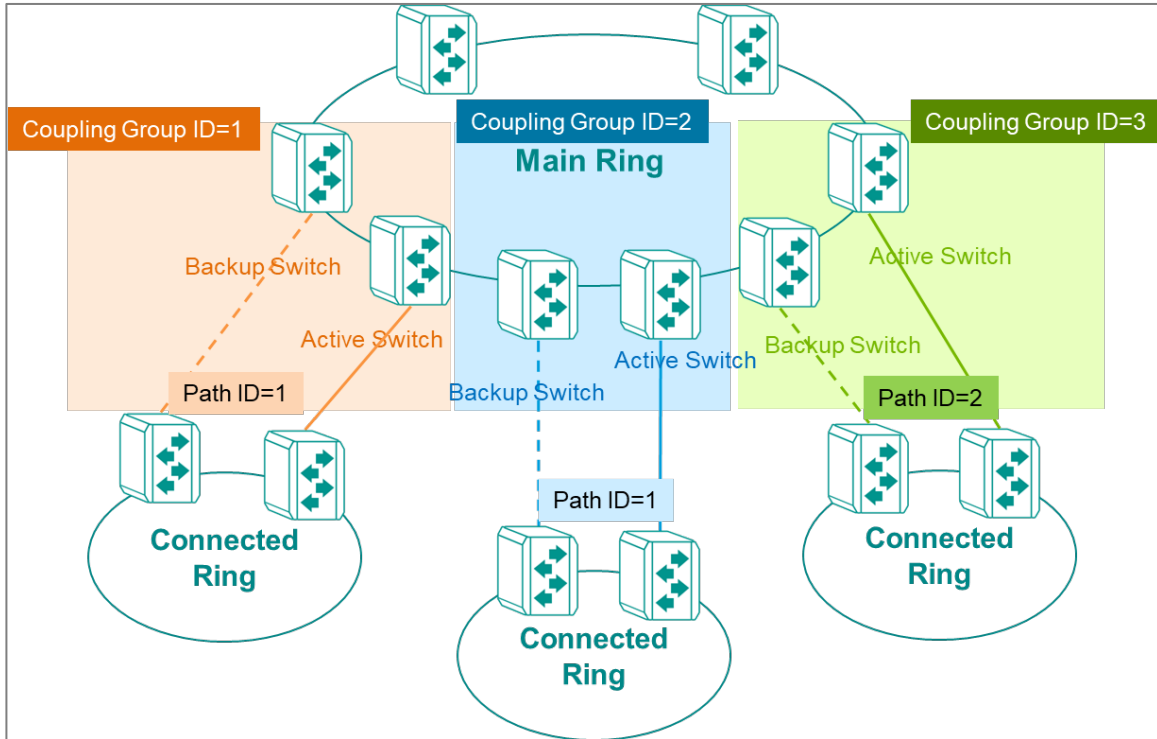
### **One Coupling Group, Shared Active and Backup Switches**

This topology shares the same Main Ring switches for all Connected Rings. This is a simple, centralized configuration.



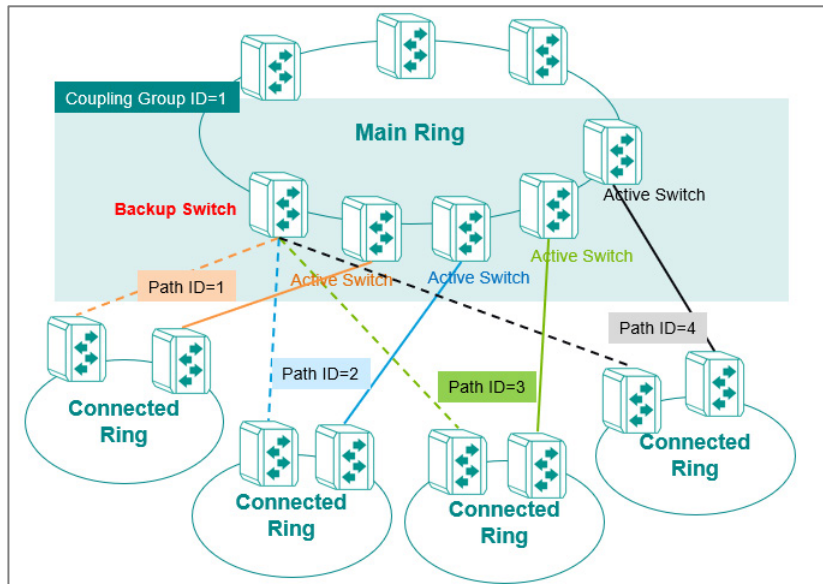
### Three Coupling Groups, Separate Active and Backup Switches

This topology uses separate pairs of Main Ring switches for each Connected Ring, providing maximum redundancy.



**One Coupling Group, Separate Active Switches, Shared Backup Switch**

In this hybrid topology, connected rings share a single Backup Switch while maintaining separate Active Switches.



## Configuring Multiple Network Coupling


Multiple Network Coupling generally only needs configuration on Main Ring switches.

- Do not connect Main Ring switches and Connected Ring switches until Multiple Network Coupling is configured.
- Make sure that compatible redundancy protocols have been configured on each ring. As of November 2024, Multiple Network Coupling supports Turbo Ring v2, MRP, and RSTP.

Configure Multiple Network coupling on each "Main Ring" device.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Network Coupling**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Configure all of the following, and then click **Apply**:

Option	Value
<b>Multiple Network Coupling</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Coupling switch role</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Active</b>: device will serve as the active switch</li><li>• <b>Backup</b>: device will serve as the backup switch</li></ul> <p>Only one backup switch supported per connected ring.</p>
<b>Coupling group ID</b>	Specify the coupling group ID from the dropdown list.
<b>Coupling polling interval</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>80</b> ms: recommended for up to 16 path IDs.</li><li>• <b>40</b> ms: recommended for up to 8 path IDs.</li></ul>

4. To configure Path IDs (corresponding to each Connected Ring), under Coupling Table Settings, click the corresponding  **[Edit]**. The Edit Path ID Settings screen appears.
5. Configure all of the following, and then click **Apply**:

Option	Value
<b>Status</b>	<b>Enabled</b>

Option	Value
<b>Path ID</b>	Specify the Path ID, corresponding to your Connected Ring
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Specify the port to which your Connected Ring will be connected.

- Repeat this step to configure additional Path IDs and corresponding Connected Rings.

Repeat this procedure for each switch in each coupling group.

For Connected Rings with non-Moxa switches that have RSTP enabled, make sure to enable edge ports on each port connected to the Main Ring.

## Multiple Network Coupling

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Network Coupling**

This page lets you manage the Multiple Network Coupling feature for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

### Multiple Network Coupling - Settings

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Network Coupling - Settings**

This page lets you enable and configure Multiple Network Coupling for your device.


## Multiple Network Coupling Settings

Multiple Network Coupling Settings interface showing the following configuration:

- Multiple Network Coupling: Enabled
- Main Ring Protocol: Turbo Ring V2
- Coupling switch role: Backup
- Coupling group ID: 3
- Coupling polling interval: 80 ms





An **APPLY** button is located at the bottom left of the settings panel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Multiple Network Coupling</b>	Enable or disable Multiple Network Coupling for your device. This should be enabled if you want the device act as an active switch or backup switch.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Main Ring Protocol</b>	Shows the redundant protocol being used for the Main Ring. This value cannot be changed here. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The redundant protocol you want to enable in the Main Ring must be enabled before enabling Multiple Network Coupling.</p> <p>The redundant protocols supported in the Main Ring include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turbo Ring V2</li> <li>MRP</li> <li>HSR</li> </ul> </div>	N/A	N/A
<b>Coupling switch role</b>	Specify the device's switch role in the Main Ring. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Active:</b> The device will act as the active switch responsible for the primary path.</li> <li><b>Backup:</b> The device will act as the backup switch responsible for the backup path to the Connected Ring.</li> </ul>	Active / Backup	Active
<b>Coupling group ID</b>	Specify the coupling group ID for the switch. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The coupling group ID for the paired active switch and backup switch must be the same.</p> </div>	1 to 16	1

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Coupling polling interval</b>	Specify the coupling polling interval in milliseconds used to check if the coupling path is forwarding.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; background-color: #f9f9f9;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The maximum number of active/backup switch pairs is 16. We suggest setting the Coupling polling interval to 80 ms if your topology has 16 pairs of active/backup switches to Connected Rings, and 40 ms if you have 8 pairs of active/backup switches.</p> </div>	40, 80	80

## Coupling Table Settings

**Coupling Table Settings**

Status	Path ID	Coupling Port
 Enabled	1	2/1
 Disabled	2	2/2
 Disabled	3	2/3
 Disabled	4	2/4

UI Setting	Description
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether Multiple Network Coupling is enabled for the entry.
<b>Path ID</b>	Shows the path ID for the entry.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the coupling port for the entry.

## Edit Path ID

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Network Coupling - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) for an entry allows you to enable and configure the coupling port for the entry.

#### Edit Path ID 1 Settings

Status \*  
Enabled ▾

Path ID \*  
1 ▾

Coupling Port \*  
2/1 ▾

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable the Path ID for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Path ID</b>	Select the Path ID for the entry. <div><p><b>Note</b></p><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>On an active or backup switch, you can configure a maximum of 4 Path ID/Coupling Port pairs.</li><li>Make sure each active/backup switch pair is using the same Path ID.</li></ul></div>	1 to 16	1
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Select the port to use as a coupling port for the Path ID.	Drop-down list of ports	Depends on the product model

## Multiple Network Coupling - Status

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Multiple Network Coupling - Status


This page lets you view the status of Multiple Network Coupling for your device.

#### Role Information

Role Information		
Coupling switch role	Coupling group ID	
Disabled	---	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling switch role</b>	Shows the coupling switch role of the device.
<b>Coupling group ID</b>	Shows the coupling group ID of the device.

#### Coupling Table Status

Coupling Table Status					
					
Path ID	Coupling Port	Coupling port state	Partner MAC	Connection Status	Error Status
1	2/1	Link Down	---	Disabled	---
2	2/2	Link Down	---	Disabled	---
3	2/3	Link Down	---	Disabled	---
4	2/4	Link Down	---	Disabled	---

UI Setting	Description
<b>Path ID</b>	Shows the Path ID for the entry.
<b>Coupling Port</b>	Shows the Coupling Port for the entry.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Coupling Port State</b>	Shows the current Coupling Port State for the entry.
<b>Partner MAC</b>	Shows the MAC address of the current partner for the entry, if there is one.
<b>Connection Status</b>	Shows the connection status of the current partner for the entry.
<b>Error Status</b>	Shows Error Status of the entry, if applicable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Multiple active switches:</b> There are duplicate active switches in same path ID and group ID</li> <li>• <b>Multiple backup switches:</b> There are duplicate backup switches in same path ID and group ID, or multiple backup switches for a single active switch.</li> </ul>

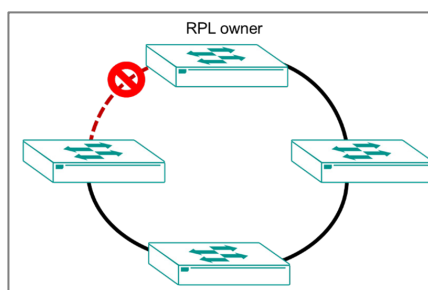
**Note**

If there is an error, check the configurations for the device and partner device to ensure there are no duplicates.

## About ERPS V2

The G.8032 Ethernet Ring Protection (ERP) protocol was defined in ITU-T G.8032 was designed to protect network loops in ring topology by blocking ports. ERPV2 is an open protocol that provides accelerated redundant path switching in the event of a link failure in industrial environments. ERPS supports multi-ring and ladder network topologies to easily expand networks with lower network cabling and planning costs.

In ERPS networks, one switch will be identified as the **RPL owner**, which acts as the primary switch. The link to one of its neighbors is designated as a Ring Protection Link (RPL), and the RPL owner will block the port for this link to keep it as a backup link (red line in below figure). When one of the other links in the ring is disconnected or goes down, ERPS will automatically readjust the ring and pass traffic through the RPL.



The ERPS function includes the following elements:

- **Major Ring:** This is the domain type used to form the ring topology.
- **Revertive/ Non-revertive Mode:** This mode determines the action to take after a failed link recovers. In revertive mode, the RPL link will be blocked and return to its role as a backup link after a failed link recovers. In non-revertive mode, the RPL link will continue to be active.
- **Forced Switch (FS) and Manual Switch (MS):** Provide administrative commands for blocking a particular ring port for testing and maintenance.

 **Note**


ERPS is disabled by default. Enabling ERPS should be done on every switch in the same topology for proper operation.

## How ERPS V2 Works

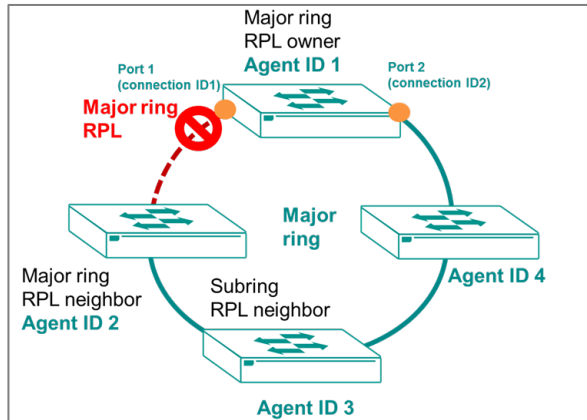
### RPL Roles

Ring Protection Link (RPL) roles consist of the following:

- **RPL Owner:** Blocks a port to a neighbor designated as an RPL Neighbor to form an RPL for a loop-free network. When another link in the ring fails, RPL owner will unblock the RPL port to allow traffic to pass through the RPL and maintain network availability. There can be only one RPL owner per ring.
- **RPL Neighbor:** A node adjacent to the RPL owner, connected through a blocked RPL port.

 **Note**

For ERPS V2, the user must determine and manually configure the role of nodes and ring ports to form an ERPS ring.



### Agent ID and Connection ID

To simplify ERPS ring settings, this feature implements an **Agent ID** and a **Connection ID** for establishing connections between each node.

- The Connection ID will be automatically assigned by a Moxa switch when creating an ERPS ring.
- The Agent ID is user-specified.

### Revertive and Non-revertive Mode

Revertive and Non-revertive Mode determine what happens after a failed link recovers.

- **Revertive Mode:** When a failed link recovers, the RPL will return to its original blocked status and its role as a backup link.
- **Non-revertive Mode:** When a failed link recovers, the RPL will continue to deliver traffic. This can be useful to avoid further traffic interruption that may happen when switching back to the original configuration.

### Control VLAN

Distinct from data VLANs, a control VLAN is used for transmitting R-APS PDUs. Each ERPS ring must be configured with a control VLAN ID, which should be distinct from VLAN IDs used by other ERPS rings.

## R-APS Messages

Ring Automatic Protection Switching (R-APS) messages are control messages that coordinate switching activities in ERPS rings. They are used to communicate with the RPL Owner in the event of a link failure or recovery event.

To avoid unnecessary switching processes or to wait for a stable link condition, ERPS provides the following timer options:

- **WTR Timer:** The Wait To Restore (WTR) timer causes the RPL Owner to wait before blocking the RPL port to return the RPL to its role as a backup link. The WTR timer is triggered when the RPL Owner receives an R-APS (NR) control message to indicate that a failed link is restored. This can be useful to ensure the network has stabilized after a failed link recovers before blocking the RPL port again.
- **Guard Timer:** The Guard Timer prevents nodes from processing further R-APS messages until the timer expires. The Guard timer is triggered on all nodes when an R-APS message is received. This can help prevent nodes from receiving outdated R-APS messages and processing unnecessary state changes, and helping to avoid unexpected impacts to the network.

## ERPS Port Commands

ERPS V2 supports these switch commands to manually block ports for maintenance:

- **Force switch (FS):** Executed with the highest priority, this command forcibly blocks the specified ring port to accommodate immediate needs.
- **Manual switch (MS):** A lower priority command that manually blocks the specified ring port. This command will have no effect when there is a link failure.
- **Clear:** Clears any existing FS or MS instructions affecting the ring port and forces the RPL owner to ignore the WRT timer, allowing the ERPS mechanism to recalculate and determine the current connection status.

## ERPS V2

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > ERPS V2**

This page lets you manage the ERPS V2 feature for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

## ERPS V2 Settings

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > ERPS V2 - Settings**

This page lets you configure ERPS V2 settings for your device.

### ⚠ Limitations

You can create up to 1 ERPS ring entry.

## ERPS V2 Settings

ERPS V2 \*  
 Disabled ▼

---

ERPS V2 Agent ID  
 1 - 128

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>ERPS V2</b>	Enable or disable ERPS V2 for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>ERPS V2 Agent ID</b>	Specify the ERPS V2 Agent ID to use for your device.	1 to 128	N/A


## ERPS Ring List

You can execute a Clear command on a ring by clicking its **Clear** (🗑) icon.

ERPS Ring List 🔍 Search

Ring ID	Status	Domain	Control VLAN ID	Ring Port 1 (Connection ID 1)	Neighbor ERPS V2 Agent ID 1	Neighbor Connection ID 1	Ring Port 2 (Connection ID 2)	Neighbor ERPS V2 Agent ID 2	Neighbor Connection ID 2	Ring Role	RPL Port	Revertive Mode	Guard Timer (ms)	WTR Timer (min)	Switch Command	Switch Port
100.1																

100.1 0 of 0

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ring ID</b>	Shows the ring ID of the ERPS ring the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the ERPS ring.
<b>Domain</b>	Shows the domain used for the ERPS ring.
<b>Control VLAN ID</b>	Shows the control VLAN ID used for the ERPS ring.
<b>Ring Port 1 (Connection ID 1)</b>	Shows the connection ID of ring port 1, which is the primary redundant port.
<b>Neighbor ERPS V2 Agent ID 1</b>	Shows the agent ID of the neighbor connected to ring port 1.
<b>Neighbor Connection ID 1</b>	Shows the connection ID of the neighbor connected to ring port 1.
<b>Ring Port 2 (Connection ID 2)</b>	Shows the connection ID of ring port 2, which is the secondary redundant port.
<b>Neighbor ERPS V2 Agent ID 2</b>	Shows the agent ID of the neighbor connected to ring port 2.
<b>Neighbor Connection ID 2</b>	Shows the connection ID of the neighbor connected to ring port 2.
<b>Ring Role</b>	Shows the ring role of the device.
<b>RPL Port</b>	Shows the port blocked by RPL.
<b>Revertive Mode</b>	Shows which mode is used for the RPL port.
<b>Guard Timer (ms)</b>	Shows how long in milliseconds the device will wait after receiving an R-APS message before processing R-APS messages again. All R-APS messages received before the timer expires will be ignored.
<b>WTR Timer (min.)</b>	Shows how long in minutes the device will wait after receiving an R-APS (NR) message before unblocking the RPL port.
	<p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The WTR timer is only used when Revertive Mode is Revertive and the Ring Role is RPL Owner.</p>
<b>Switch Command</b>	Shows the blocking action the device will take, if one is configured.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Switch Port</b>	Shows which port will be blocked by the switch command.

## Create an ERPS V2 Ring

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > ERPS V2 - Settings**

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > ERPS V2 - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an ERPS ring.


Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new ring.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Ring ID</b>	Specify an ID for the ring.	1 to 4096	N/A
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable the ring.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Domain</b>	Shows the domain for the ring. This is fixed to Major Ring.	Major Ring	Major Ring
<b>Control VLAN ID</b>	Select the Control VLAN ID to use for the ring.	Drop-down list of VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>Ring Port 1/2</b>	Select the port to use for ring port 1/2.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Neighbor ERPS V2 Agent ID 1/2</b>	Specify the Agent ID to use for ring port 1/2.	1 to 128	N/A
<b>Neighbor Connection ID 1/2</b>	Specify the Connection ID to use for ring port 1/2.	1 to 36	N/A
<b>Ring Role</b>	Specify the RPL role to use for this device.	None / RPL Owner / RPL Neighbor	None
<b>RPL Port</b> (If Ring Role is RPL Owner or RPL Neighbor)	Select the port to use as the RPL port for this device.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Advanced Settings

These settings only appear in Advanced Mode. Refer to [Change Mode](#) for more details.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Revertive Mode</b>	Select whether to use Revertive Mode or Non-revertive Mode.	Revertive / Non-revertive	Revertive
<b>Guard Timer</b>	Specify how long in milliseconds the device will wait after receiving an R-APS message before processing R-APS messages again. All R-APS messages received before the timer expires will be ignored.	10 to 2000, must be a multiple of 10	500
<b>WTR Timer</b>	Specify how long in minutes the device will wait after receiving an R-APS (NR) message before unblocking the RPL port.	1 to 12	5
<div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The WTR timer is only used when Revertive Mode is Revertive and the Ring Role is RPL Owner.</p> </div>			

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Switch Command</b>	Select a switch command to use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>None:</b> Clears any existing FS or MS instructions and recalculates the current connection status.</li> <li><b>Forced:</b> Force blocking of the specified port, even there is a link failure in the ring.</li> <li><b>Manual:</b> Block the specified port. This will have no effect when there is a link failure.</li> </ul>	None / Forced / Manual	None
<b>Switch Port (If Switch Command is Forced or Manual)</b>	Specify which port to block using the selected Switch Command.	Ring Port 1 / Ring Port 2	N/A


## ERPS V2 Status

**Menu Path:** [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#) > [ERPS V2 - Status](#)

This page lets you view the status of ERPS V2 rings and ports.

### ERPS V2 Ring Status

**ERPS V2 Ring Status**



Ring ID	Ring State	Ring Role	Remaining Guard Timer (ms)	Remaining WTR Timer (min.)
Max. 1		0 of 0		

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ring ID</b>	Shows the ID of the ring.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ring State</b>	Shows the current state of the ring. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Idle:</b> The ring is operating normally without any link failures.</li> <li>• <b>Protection:</b> The ring has a link failure and the RPL link is unblocked.</li> <li>• <b>Pending:</b> The ring is transitioning between states.</li> <li>• <b>FS:</b> A force switch port blocking command is in effect for the ring.</li> <li>• <b>MS:</b> A manual switch port blocking command is in effect for the ring.</li> </ul>
<b>Ring Role</b>	Shows the ring role of the device.
<b>Remaining Guard Timer (ms)</b>	Shows the remaining time in milliseconds the device will wait before processing R-APS messages again.
<b>Remaining WTR Timer (min.)</b>	Shows the remaining time in minutes the device will wait before blocking the RPL port again.

## ERPS V2 Ring Port Status

**ERPS V2 Ring Port Status**

↻
🔍 Search

Ring ID	Ring Port	Link Status	Port State	VLAN ID
Max. 1		0 of 0		

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ring ID</b>	Shows the ID of the ring.
<b>Ring Port</b>	Shows the ring port the entry is for.
<b>Link Status</b>	Shows the link status of the ring port.
<b>Port State</b>	Shows the current ring port state.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the ID of the VLAN the ring port is in.

# Layer 3 Redundancy

This section lets you configure the Layer 3 redundancy features of your device.

## About VRRP

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is a network protocol enabling multiple switches to collaborate as a group and share a virtual IP address. The main purpose of VRRP is to provide redundancy for the default gateway utilized by hosts on a LAN or VLAN.

In a VRRP setup, a single switch is designated as the "master" while the other switches are "backup" switches. The master switch is responsible for forwarding packets sent to the virtual IP address. On the other hand, the backup switches supervise the master switch and take over its tasks in case of failure. This feature facilitates automatic failover and redundancy, guaranteeing network connectivity even in the event of a switch failure.

To sum up, here are some benefits of VRRP:

1. **Increased Network Reliability:** VRRP enables multiple switches to work together in a group, sharing a virtual IP address. This provides redundancy for the default gateway, ensuring that network connectivity is maintained even if one of the switches fails. This increases the overall reliability of the network and helps prevent downtime.
2. **Automatic Failover:** VRRP facilitates automatic failover, where backup switches take over the tasks of the master switch in case of a failure. This ensures that there is no disruption to network services and users can continue to access resources without any interruption.
3. **Easy Network Management:** VRRP simplifies network management by allowing multiple switches to work together as a group, sharing a virtual IP address. This eliminates the need for complex routing protocols and reduces the risk of misconfigurations.

## VRRP States

In VRRP, switches are assigned different roles and states to ensure seamless failover and improved network availability.

The three primary states of VRRP are:

- **Init State:** This is the initial state when a VRRP switch starts up. The switch initializes its VRRP configuration and has not yet determined whether it should become a Master or a Backup switch. The switch remains in the Init state until it starts receiving VRRP advertisements from other switches in the same VRRP group or until it begins sending advertisements itself.
- **Master State:** In this state, the switch is responsible for forwarding packets sent to the virtual IP address and acts as the default gateway for the devices in the network. The switch with the highest priority (or lowest IP address in case of a tie) becomes the Master switch. The Master switch periodically sends VRRP advertisements to the other switches in the VRRP group to maintain its role. If the Master switch fails, one of the Backup switches will take over the role based on priority.
- **Backup State:** Switches in the Backup state are waiting to take over the Master role if the current Master switch fails. Backup switches listen for VRRP advertisements from the Master and update their timers accordingly. If a Backup switch stops receiving VRRP advertisements from the Master switch for a certain period (typically three times the advertisement interval), it assumes that the Master switch has failed and attempts to transition to the Master state based on its priority.

The VRRP states ensure that the network has a functioning default gateway at all times, providing redundancy and improving network availability in case of device failure. By implementing VRRP, network administrators can achieve increased network reliability, automatic failover, and easier network management.

## VRRP In Depth

VRRP enables several devices to share a virtual IP address and act as a unified virtual router. This feature provides backup capabilities in case one of the devices goes down or becomes unavailable. To accomplish this, VRRP group switches select a master switch based on priority, with the highest priority becoming the master. Each switch in the group announces its priority, and the master regularly sends out VRRP advertisements to the other switches to update its status.

The virtual IP address is linked with the VRRP group, and the master switch forwards network packets using the virtual IP address as the source address. The backup switches

stay inactive, listening to the VRRP messages from the master and are ready to take over if the master fails. The master switch sends advertisement packets to the backup ones to inform them that it is still operational. The advertisement interval is manually configured. If the master switch fails, the backup switch is unable to receive advertisement packets from the master. Once the advertisement down timer expires, backup switch will realize that the master is experiencing issues or has powered down and one of the backup switches with a higher priority takes over as the new master, ensuring there is no disruption in network connectivity.

 **Note**

1. The advertisement down timer is the time during which the Backup switch does not receive three consecutive advertisement packets from the Master.
2. The Backup switch will send GARP and advertisement packets to inform others that backup switch has become the new Master. After the switch update, their MAC tables are updated. (Refer to Figure. 2)
3. The VRRP standard protocol was defined in RFC 3768 and you can see the document on this website.
4. VRRP refers the active switch as the master and all other ones are in the backup state.
5. The virtual MAC address which is mapping to virtual IP is 00-00-5E-00-01-xx. (XX will depends on VRID.)
6. The master switch send the advertisement packet to 224.0.0.18 periodically in 1 second interval by default.

VRRP can also be set up to use preemption, which allows a higher-priority switch to take over as the master even if the current master device is still functional. This can be useful when the higher-priority switch is available again after a period of downtime.

In summary, VRRP is a valuable protocol that provides redundancy in network environments where high availability is critical. It enables multiple devices to act as a single virtual router, ensuring network traffic continues to flow in the event of a device failure.

## VRRP

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP**

This page lets you configure the VRRP settings for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

## VRRP - Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings

This page lets you configure the VRRP settings for your device.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 80 virtual routers.

## VRRP Settings



VRRP \*  
Disabled 

Version \*  
V2

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VRRP</b>	Enable or disable VRRP for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Version</b>	Select the VRRP version to use.	V2 / V3	V2

## VRRP List

<input type="checkbox"/>	Enable	Interface	VRID	Priority	Virtual Router IP Address	Advertisement Interval	Preempt Mode	Preempt Delay	Accept Mode	Auth Type	Tracking ID	Decrement
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Enabled	vlan1	4	2	192.168.127.250	30	Enabled	5	Enabled	None	--	--
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Enabled	vlan1	3	2	192.168.127.252	30	Enabled	4	Enabled	Simple	--	--

Max: 40

UI Setting	Description
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether the VRRP interface is enabled.
<b>Interface</b>	Shows which network interface is used for the VRRP interface.

UI Setting	Description
<b>VRID</b>	Shows the virtual router ID for the VRRP interface, which is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group.
<b>Priority</b>	Shows the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority, with 254 being the highest.
<b>Virtual Router IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the VRRP interface.
<b>Advertisement Interval (ms)</b>	Shows the advertisement interval for the VRRP interface in milliseconds.
<b>Preempt Mode</b>	Shows the preempt status of the VRRP interface.
<b>Preempt Delay</b>	Shows the preempt delay value of the VRRP interface.
<b>Accept Mode</b>	Shows whether Accept Mode is enabled for the VRRP interface. When enabled, the virtual router designated as the master will allow others to access its own virtual IP address.
<b>Auth Type</b>	Shows the auth type of the VRRP interface, if VRRP V2 is being used.
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the tracking ID of the VRRP interface.
<b>Decrement</b>	Shows the decrement value of the VRRP interface. Within a VRRP interface, the decrement feature dynamically adjusts the priority based on the status of tracked ports. If a tracked port becomes inactive (link down), the VRRP priority is reduced by a predefined decrement value. This ensures that a router with fewer active ports has a lower priority, minimizing the risk of a split brain scenario.

## VRRP - Create Virtual Router

### Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 3 Redundancy](#) > [VRRP - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new virtual router for your device.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new virtual router.

### Create a Virtual Router

Virtual Router \* ▼

Interface \* ▼ VRID \* 1 - 255

Priority \* 1 - 254

Virtual Router IP Address \* \_\_\_\_\_

Advertisement Interval \* 30 - 40000 ms

Preempt Mode \* ▼


Auth Type \* ▼ Authentication Key \* 🔒 0 / 8

Accept Mode \* ▼

Tracking ID ☰


CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Virtual Router</b>	Enable or disable the VRRP interface.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Interface</b>	Specify which network interface to use for the VRRP interface.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
<b>VRID (Virtual Router ID)</b>	Specify the virtual router ID to use for the VRRP interface. The virtual router ID is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Devices that operate as master/backup should have the same ID. Each interface supports one virtual router ID.</p> </div>	1 to 255	N/A
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority, with 254 being the highest.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If multiple devices have the same priority, the device with the highest IP address will have priority.</p> </div>	1 to 254	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Virtual Router IP Address</b>	Specify the virtual router IP address for the VRRP interface.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> <b>Note</b> Devices in the same VRRP group must be in the same subnet.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Advertisement Interval</b>	Specify the advertisement interval in milliseconds for the VRRP interface. This determines the interval for the master sending packets to all slave devices to inform them who the master device is.	30 to 40000	N/A
<b>Preempt Mode</b>	Enable or disable preemption for the VRRP interface. When enabled, preemption will decide if the master will retake authority or not after being unavailable.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Preempt Delay (if Preempt Mode is Enabled)</b>	Specify the preemption delay in seconds to use for the VRRP interface. The preempt delay is the amount of time the master will wait before retaking authority back in order to prevent the master from acting before the network connection is ready.	0 to 3600	N/A
<b>Auth Type</b>	Select the authentication type to use for the VRRP interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None:</b> No authentication will be used.</li> <li>• <b>Simple:</b> Simple authentication will be used.</li> </ul>	None / Simple	N/A
<b>Authentication Key</b>	Specify the authentication key to use for the VRRP interface.	0 to 8 characters	N/A
<b>Accept Mode</b>	Enable or disable Accept Mode for the VRRP interface. When enabled, the virtual router designated as the master will allow others to access its own virtual IP address.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Select a tracking ID for the virtual router. Click on the select icon and choose a tracking ID.	Link to the Tracking ID List	N/A

## VRRP - Edit Virtual Router

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a VRRP interface on the **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing virtual router.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This Virtual Router

Virtual Router \*  
Enabled

Interface  
vlan1

VRID  
4

1 - 255

Priority \*  
2

1 - 254

Virtual Router IP Address \*  
192.168.127.250

Advertisement Interval \*  
30

30 - 40000 ms

Preempt Mode \*  
Enabled

Preempt Delay \*  
5

0 - 3600 sec.



Auth Type \*  
None

Accept Mode \*  
Enabled

Tracking ID

CANCEL
APPLY

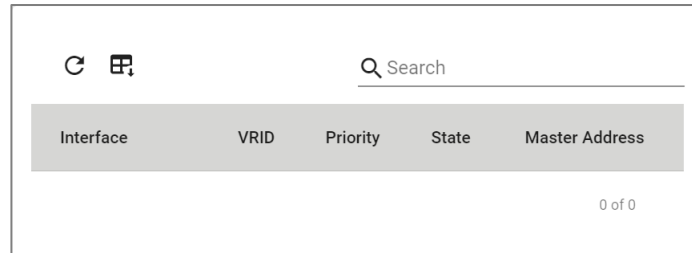
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Virtual Router</b>	Enable or disable the VRRP interface.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Interface</b>	Specify which network interface to use for the VRRP interface.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
<b>VRID (Virtual Router ID)</b>	Specify the virtual router ID to use for the VRRP interface. The virtual router ID is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group.	1 to 255	N/A
<p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Devices that operate as master/backup should have the same ID. Each interface supports one virtual router ID.</p>			

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority, with 254 being the highest.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If multiple devices have the same priority, the device with the highest IP address will have priority.</p> </div>	1 to 254	N/A
<b>Virtual Router IP Address</b>	Specify the virtual router IP address for the VRRP interface.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Devices in the same VRRP group must be in the same subnet.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Advertisement Interval</b>	Specify the advertisement interval in milliseconds for the VRRP interface. This determines the interval for the master sending packets to all slave devices to inform them who the master device is.	30 to 40000	N/A
<b>Preempt Mode</b>	Enable or disable preemption for the VRRP interface. When enabled, preemption will decide if the master will retake authority or not after being unavailable.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Preempt Delay (if Preempt Mode is Enabled)</b>	Specify the preemption delay in seconds to use for the VRRP interface. The preempt delay is the amount of time the master will wait before retaking authority back in order to prevent the master from acting before the network connection is ready.	0 to 3600	N/A
<b>Auth Type</b>	Select the authentication type to use for the VRRP interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None:</b> No authentication will be used.</li> <li>• <b>Simple:</b> Simple authentication will be used.</li> </ul>	None / Simple	N/A
<b>Authentication Key</b>	Specify the authentication key to use for the VRRP interface.	0 to 8 characters	N/A
<b>Accept Mode</b>	Enable or disable Accept Mode for the VRRP interface. When enabled, the virtual router designated as the master will allow others to access its own virtual IP address.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Select a tracking ID for the virtual router. Click on the select icon and choose a tracking ID.	Link to the Tracking ID List	N/A

## VRRP - Status

**Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Status**

This page lets you see the status of your device's VRRP interfaces.



Interface	VRID	Priority	State	Master Address
0 of 0				

UI Setting	Description
<b>Interface</b>	Shows which network interface is used for the VRRP interface.
<b>VRID</b>	Shows the virtual router ID for the VRRP interface, which is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group.
<b>Priority</b>	Shows the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.
<b>State</b>	Shows the state of the VRRP interface. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Init State:</b> This is the initial state when a virtual router starts up.</li><li>• <b>Master State:</b> The virtual router is acting as a master, and is responsible for forwarding packets sent to the virtual IP address and acting as the default gateway for the devices in the network.</li><li>• <b>Backup State:</b> The virtual router is in the backup state, and waiting to take over the master role if the current master fails.</li></ul>
<b>Master Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the current master for the VRRP interface.

## About Tracking

Tracking monitors connectivity status, and is leveraged by multiple redundancy protocols to trigger fallback actions. For example, when using the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), tracking features can detect when the primary router becomes unavailable, triggering the backup router.

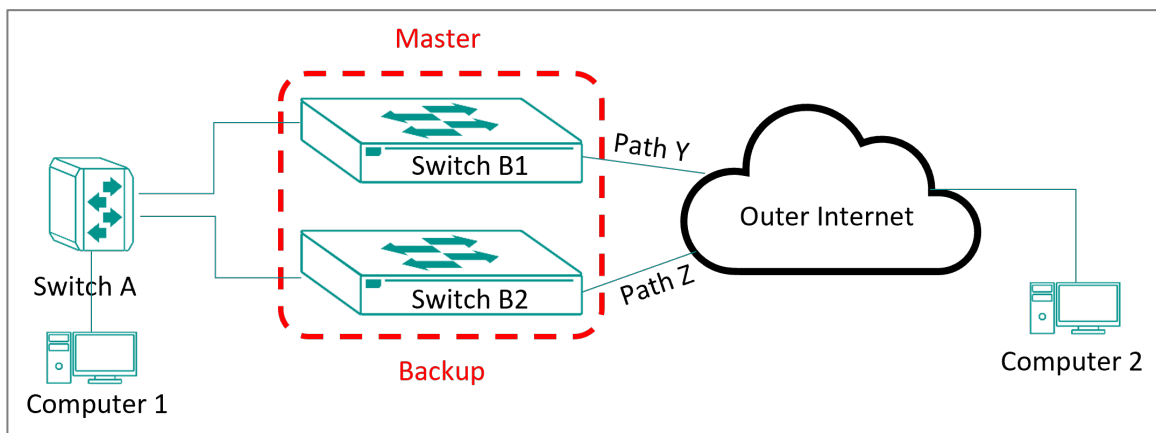
Tracking entries determine how tracking actions are triggered. The device supports three kinds of entries:

- **Interface tracking:** Monitors whether an interface or port is up or down.
- **Ping tracking:** Monitors whether a specified IP address responds to ping packets.
- **Logical tracking:** Compares the status of other tracking entries using AND, OR, NAND, or NOR operators.

Tracking operates at both Layer 2 and Layer 3.

## Layer 3 Tracking: VRRP

VRRP is commonly used in conjunction with tracking for L3 switch redundancy. However, VRRP's tracking ability is limited to protecting traffic from L3 to L2, and cannot not track traffic from L3 to outside networks like the internet.



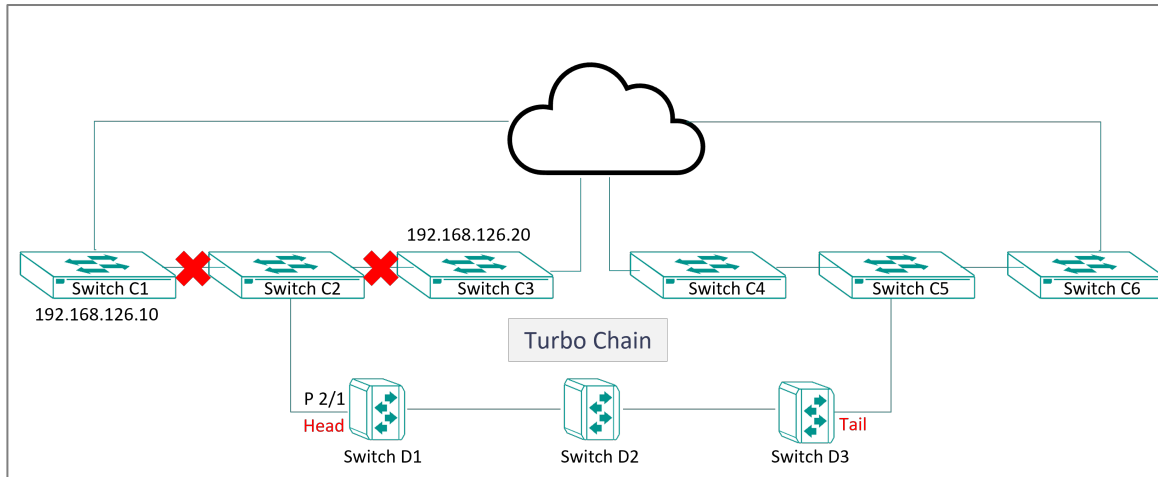
VRRP can protect traffic between L2 switches (Switch A) and L3 switches (Switches B1 and B2), but it cannot safeguard traffic from the L3 switches to the cloud. We can use a tracking to monitor **Path Y**, and if it fails, change the priority of the Master switch, rerouting through the backup switch and preventing disruption.

## Layer 3 Tracking: Static Route

Static routes rely on manually configuring the next hop in the route. However, the state of the next hop may not always be known. To address this, ping tracking can monitor the IP address of the next hop, allowing the device to automatically disable the primary static route and move to a backup, ensuring that routes and subnets remain intact.

## Layer 2 Tracking: Port Tracking

In Turbo Chain deployments, it can be hard to determine when pathways further than one level beyond the tail/head of the chain are down.



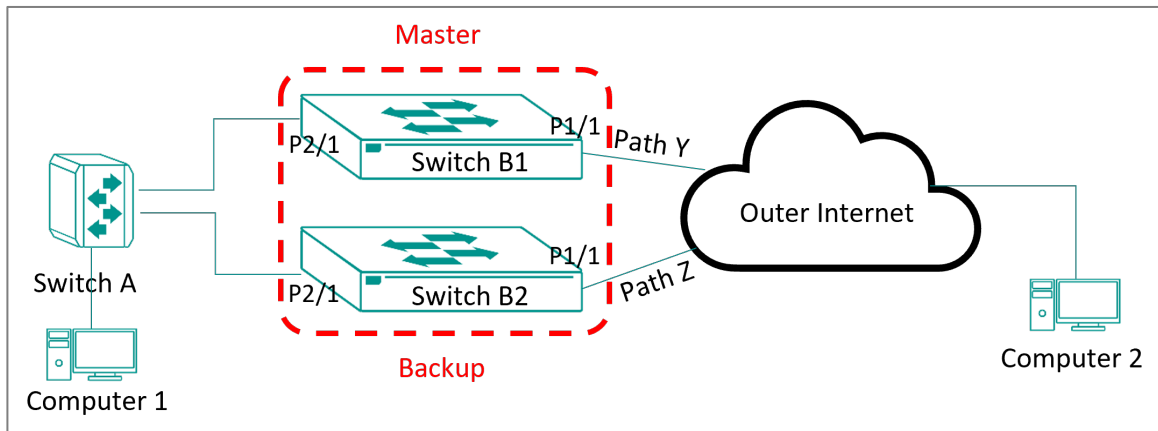
Turbo Chain only detects breaks in paths directly connected to the chain. With Tracking, we can expand this fault detection to monitor traffic from Switch C2 to Switches C1 and C3. If both paths are broken, Tracking can disable the port of Switch D1, triggering Turbo Chain to:

1. Change the head port of Switch D1 from forwarding to blocking
2. Change the tail port of Switch D3 from blocking to forwarding

This ensures that Turbo Chain doesn't maintain connections to switches that lack upstream connectivity.

## Scenario: Configuring Interface Tracking for VRRP

Monitor connectivity to the outside internet to trigger VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol).



1. On both switches, configure VRRP

At this stage, we set **Priority** values for the virtual routers: 250 for Switch B1 and 200 for Switch B2. The B1 **Priority** value will be decremented by the Tracking Entry

2. On Switch B1, Enable Tracking.
3. On Switch B1, create an interface tracking entry.

This entry will monitor Path Y connectivity to the internet.

4. On Switch B1, assign the **Tracking ID** to the Virtual Router.

This step will assign **Decrement** values to the tracking entry, which change the **Priority** values from Step 1. The reduced priority will cause Switch B2 to take priority over switch B1, routing all traffic over Path Z until Path Y is restored.

See the subsequent sections for examples and detailed instructions to configure this scenario.

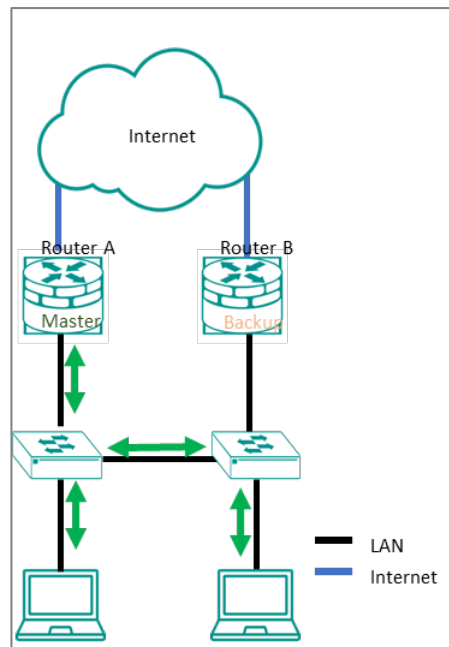
## Scenario: VRRP on Two Devices

In this scenario, we'll configure two devices connected to the same LAN (Local Area Network). We will configure VRRP to ensure that if one of the devices fails, the other device will continue to forward traffic to the LAN.

For example, suppose Device A (LAN interface IP: 192.168.127.1) is initially configured as the master and Device B (LAN interface IP: 192.168.127.2) as the backup in the VRRP group. Device A is responsible for forwarding packets to the LAN. The master should

keep tracking the interface by pinging the device (IP 192.168.127.100) in order to make sure of the LAN communication.

If Device A were to fail by ping lost or any link down event, Device B would detect this and assume the role of the master. It would then begin forwarding packets to the LAN, ensuring that there is no disruption in network connectivity. Once Device A becomes available, it can take over as the master, and Device B reverts to its backup role.



### Example: Configuring VRRP on Device A

This task assumes that each device has already configured an interface called LAN1 with the following IP addresses:

- Device A: 192.168.127.1
- Device B: 192.168.127.2

To configure Device A, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP**, and then click **Settings**.
3. On the lower table of the screen, click **+ Add**.

The Create Virtual Router screen appears.

4. Configure the following, and then click **Create**.

Option	Value
<b>Interface</b>	LAN1
<b>Virtual IP</b>	192.168.127.3
<b>Priority</b>	200
<b>Preemption</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Preemption Delay</b>	120
<b>Target IP</b>	192.168.127.100

The **Virtual Router** settings appear in the list.

- Under the Virtual Router list, click **Apply**.
- At the top of the page, under **VRRP**, select **Enabled** from the dropdown list, and then click **Apply**.

Device A is now configured for VRRP.

Continue to configure Device B.

### Example: Configuring VRRP on Device B

This task assumes that each device has already configured an interface called LAN1 with the following IP addresses:

- Device A: 192.168.127.1
- Device B: 192.168.127.2

To configure Device B, do the following:

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP**, and then click **Settings**.
- On the lower table of the screen, click **+ Add**.

The Create Virtual Router screen appears.

- Configure the following, and then click **Create**.

Option	Value
<b>Interface</b>	LAN1
<b>Virtual IP</b>	192.168.127.3
<b>Priority</b>	100
<b>Preemption</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Preemption Delay</b>	120
<b>Target IP</b>	192.168.127.100

The **Virtual Router** settings appear in the list.

- Under the Virtual Router list, click **Apply**.
- At the top of the page, under **VRRP**, select **Enabled** from the dropdown list, and then click **Apply**.

Both devices are now configured for VRRP. In the event of a failure of one device, the other can take over using the same virtual IP address, ensuring continued function without reconfiguration.

## Example: Creating an Interface Tracking Entry

Create an interface tracking entry to monitor port status and enable failover actions. You can select tracking entries from redundancy protocols to trigger backup or prioritization actions.

Make sure you assigned a **Tracking ID** in the previous task.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.
- Next to **Tracking of...**, click **Select**, choose **Interface**, and then click **+ Add**.
- Configure all of the following, and then click **Create**:

Option	Value
<b>Interface Tracking</b>	<b>Enabled</b>

Option	Value
Tracking ID	1
Interface Type	Port
Port	1/1

The Interface Tracking Entry appears on the list.

Continue to add the interface tracking entry to the virtual router.

### Example: Enabling Tracking

Turn on tracking to allow the system to monitor interfaces and trigger redundancy actions.


1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.
3. Set **Tracking** to **Enabled**, and then click **Apply**.

### Example: Adding an Interface Tracking Entry to a Virtual Router

Add the tracking entry to a virtual router to enable automatic failover when connectivity is lost.

Make sure you assigned a **Tracking ID** in the previous task.

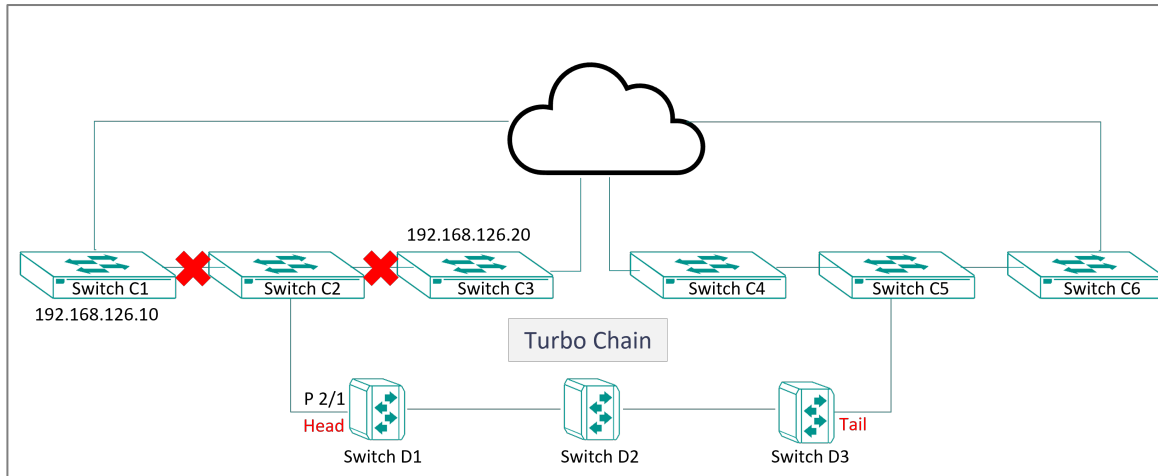
On Switch B1, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP**, and then click **Settings**.
3. Click  **Edit** next to the corresponding **Virtual Router**.
4. Click **Tracking ID**, and then choose the **Tracking ID** created in the preceding task, and then click **Select**.
5. Specify a **Decrement** of 100, and then click **Apply**.

The tracking entry allows changing to the backup virtual router. If an internet connection is no longer detecting, the **Decrement** value is subtracted from the **Priority** value of the virtual router, causing the backup to take over and restoring the network connection.

## Scenario: Configuring Logical Tracking for Turbo Chain

In this example, we will create ping tracking entries on Switch D1 to monitor traffic by pinging two different target IP addresses. We will then combine these tracking entries by using a logical tracking entry, and use the logical tracking entry to control a port.



This task presumes that Turbo Chain has already been configured inline with the above scenario. Refer to About Turbo Chain for information about configuring Turbo Chain.

Configure all of the following on Switch D1:

1. Enable Tracking.
2. Create the Ping Tracking Entries targeting Switches C1 and C3.
3. Create Logical Tracking Entries using the Ping Tracking Entries.
4. Assign the Tracking ID to the Port from **Port Interface**.

### Example: Enabling Tracking

Turn on tracking to allow the system to monitor interfaces and trigger redundancy actions.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.
3. Set **Tracking** to **Enabled**, and then click **Apply**.

## Example: Creating Ping Tracking Entries

Create ping tracking entries to monitor IP reachability and support logical tracking for redundancy decisions.

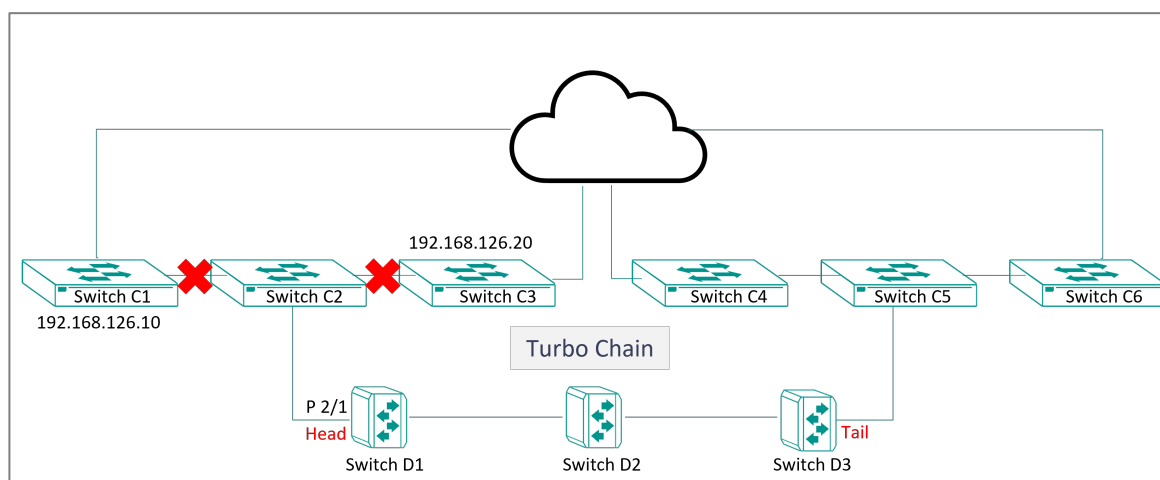
1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.
3. Next to **Tracking of...**, click **Select**, choose **Ping**, and then click **+ Add**.
4. Configure all of the following, and then click **Create**:

Option	Value
<b>Ping Tracking</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Tracking ID</b>	2
<b>IP Address</b>	192.168.126.10

5. Add a second entry by clicking **+ Add**, specifying all of the following, and then clicking **Create**:

Option	Value
<b>Ping Tracking</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Tracking ID</b>	3
<b>IP Address</b>	192.168.126.20

These ping tracking entries separately monitor connectivity to C1 and C3.



Continue to create a logical tracking entry, which will combine the two ping tracking entries to determine when switch C2 is completely disconnected. The logical entry can then switch the Turbo Ring tail from blocking to forwarding, rerouting traffic over switch C5.

### Example: Creating Logical Tracking Entries for Turbo Chain

Logical Entries are made up of one or more other kinds of tracking entries. These rules can accommodate more complex situations encompassing multiple tracking entries.

To combine the ping tracking entries 2 and 3 you just created:

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.
3. Next to **Tracking of...**, click **▼ Select**, choose **Logical**, and then click **+ Add**.
4. Configure all of the following, and then click **Create**:

<b>Interface Tracking</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Tracking ID</b>	4
<b>Logical List</b>	Choose <b>2</b> and <b>3</b>
<b>Logical Operator</b>	<b>AND</b>

Continue to assign tracking entries to ports.

### Example: Adding Tracking Entries to Ports

Assign the logical tracking entry to a port to enable automatic failover if both routes fail.

Make sure you assigned a **Tracking ID** in the previous task.

On Switch B1, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Port > Port Interface > Port Settings**.
3. Next to **Port 2/1**, click **Edit**.

4. Click **Tracking ID**, and then choose the **Tracking ID** created in the preceding task, and then click **Select**.
5. Click **Apply**.

Now that the logical tracking entry has been assigned, if both routes fail, the Turbo Chain tail can be triggered to allow traffic.

## Scenario: Configuring Tracking for Static Route

Create an interface tracking entry to monitor an interface, then use that tracking entry to control a static route. Static routes offer fine control over traffic flows, but often suffer from a single point of failure. When coupled with Interface Tracking, static routes can be reconfigured based on network changes, without the complexity or unpredictability of dynamic routing.

This scenario requires a working static route. Refer to [Static Routes](#) for details about configuring static routes.

To configure this scenario:

1. Enable tracking.
2. Create an Interface Tracking Entry
3. Assign the Tracking Entry to the Static Route.

### Example: Enabling Tracking

Turn on tracking to allow the system to monitor interfaces and trigger redundancy actions.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.
3. Set **Tracking** to **Enabled**, and then click **Apply**.

### Example: Creating an Interface Tracking Entry for a Static Route

Create an interface tracking entry to monitor port status and enable failover actions.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Redundancy > Tracking**.

- Next to **Tracking of...**, click **▼ Select**, choose **Interface**, and then click **+ Add**.
- Configure all of the following, and then click **Create**:

Option	Value
<b>Interface Tracking</b>	<b>Enabled</b>
<b>Tracking ID</b>	5
<b>Interface Type</b>	<b>Network Interface</b>
<b>Network Interface</b>	Select the interface to which the static route is bound

The Interface Tracking Entry appears on the list.

Continue to add the interface tracking entry to the Static Route.

## Example: Adding Interface Tracking Entry to a Static Route

Add the tracking entry to a static route to disable the route automatically when connectivity is lost.

Make sure you assigned a **Tracking ID** in the previous task.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing**.
- Locate the Static Route to track, and then click **✎ Edit**.
- Click **Tracking ID**, and then choose the **Tracking ID** created in the preceding task, and then click **Select**.
- Click **Apply**.

The tracking entry will disable the static route when not available.

## Tracking

### Menu Path: [Redundancy > Tracking](#)

This page lets you manage the status tracking feature of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings

- Status

## Tracking - Settings

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

This page lets you create and manage status tracking entries.

#### ⚙ Limitations

You can create up to 16 tracking entries.

## Tracking Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Tracking</b>	Enable or disable status tracking for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## Tracking List of Interface

If **Tracking List of Interface** is selected from the drop-down menu, this table will appear.

Tracking ID	Status	Interface	Down to Up	Up Delay (sec.)	Up to Down	Down Delay (sec.)
1	Enabled	Port 1/1	Enabled	0	Enabled	0
2	Enabled	vlan1	Enabled	10	Enabled	0

UI Setting	Description
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the tracking ID for entry.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether the entry is enabled.
<b>Interface</b>	Shows the interface monitored by the tracking ID.
<b>Down to Up</b>	Shows whether down to up state change is enabled for the entry. When enabled, the state for the tracking ID will change to Up if the interface status changes from down to up.
<b>Up Delay (sec.)</b>	Shows the delay in seconds the interface status must stay up to be detected as a down to up status change.
<b>Up to Down</b>	Shows whether up to down state change is enabled for the entry. When enabled, the state for the tracking ID will change to Down if the interface status changes from up to down.
<b>Down Delay (sec.)</b>	Shows the delay in seconds the interface status must stay down to be detected as an up to down status change.

## Creating an Interface Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Redundancy > Tracking - Settings** page when **Tracking List of Interface** is selected will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new interface tracking entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

### Create an Interface Tracking Entry

Interface Tracking \*

Tracking ID \*

Interface Type \*

State Change (Down to Up) *	Up Delay *
<input type="text" value="Enabled"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	0 - 99 sec.
State Change (Up to Down) *	Down Delay *
<input type="text" value="Enabled"/>	<input type="text" value="0"/>
	0 - 99 sec.

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Interface Tracking</b>	Enable or disable the interface tracking ID.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Specify the tracking ID to use for this entry.	Drop-down list of tracking IDs	N/A
<b>Interface Type</b>	Select the interface type to monitor with this entry.	Port / Network Interface	N/A
<b>Port (If Interface Type is Port)</b>	Specify which port to monitor with this entry.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Network Interface (If Interface Type is Network Interface)</b>	Specify which network interface to monitor with this entry.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
<b>State Change (Down to Up)</b>	<p>Enable or disable down to up state change with this entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Up when the interface status transitions from down to up.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the interface status transitions from down to up.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Up Delay</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interface status must remain up after detecting a change from down to up in order to trigger a Down to Up state change (if enabled).	0 to 99	0
<b>State Change (Up to Down)</b>	<p>Enable or disable up to down state change with this entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Down when the interface status transitions from up to down.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the interface status transitions from up to down.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Down Delay</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interface status must remain down after detecting a change from up to down in order to trigger an Up to Down state change (if enabled).	0 to 99	0

## Editing an Interface Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Redundancy > Tracking - Settings** page when **Tracking List of Interface** is selected will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing interface tracking entry.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Edit This Interface Tracking Entry**

Interface Tracking \*  
Enabled

Tracking ID \*  
1

Interface Type \*  
Port

Port \*  
1/1

State Change (Down to Up) \*  
Enabled

Up Delay \*  
0  
0 - 99 sec.

State Change (Up to Down) \*  
Enabled

Down Delay \*  
0  
0 - 99 sec.


CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Interface Tracking</b>	Enable or disable the interface tracking ID.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Specify the tracking ID to use for this entry.	Drop-down list of tracking IDs	N/A
<b>Interface Type</b>	Select the interface type to monitor with this entry.	Port / Network Interface	N/A
<b>Port (If Interface Type is Port)</b>	Specify which port to monitor with this entry.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Network Interface (If Interface Type is Network Interface)</b>	Specify which network interface to monitor with this entry.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>State Change (Down to Up)</b>	<p>Enable or disable down to up state change with this entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Up when the interface status transitions from down to up.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the interface status transitions from down to up.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Up Delay</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interface status must remain up after detecting a change from down to up in order to trigger a Down to Up state change (if enabled).	0 to 99	0
<b>State Change (Up to Down)</b>	<p>Enable or disable up to down state change with this entry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Down when the interface status transitions from up to down.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the interface status transitions from up to down.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Down Delay</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interface status must remain down after detecting a change from up to down in order to trigger an Up to Down state change (if enabled).	0 to 99	0

## Deleting an Interface Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (  ) icon.

## Tracking List of Ping

If **Tracking List of Ping** is selected from the drop-down menu, this table will appear.

Tracking List of Ping ▾

**+**

<input type="checkbox"/>	Tracking ID	Status	IP Address	Interval (ms)	Timeout (ms)	Down to Up	Received (packets)	Up to Down	Lost (packets)
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Enabled	192.168.127.26	1000	1000	Enabled	3	Disabled	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Enabled	192.168.126.10	1000	1000	Enabled	5	Enabled	5

UI Setting	Description
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the ID for the tracking rule.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the tracking rule.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP Address monitored by the tracking rule.
<b>Interval (ms)</b>	Shows the interval in milliseconds between state checks for the tracking rule.
<b>Timeout (ms)</b>	Shows the timeout in milliseconds to wait for the IP address to respond to a ping packet before detecting a timeout and setting the status to down.
<b>Down to Up</b>	Shows whether down to up state change is enabled for the entry. When enabled, the state for the tracking ID will change to Up if the IP address status changes from down to up.
<b>Received (packets)</b>	Shows the number of ping response packets that must be received before the status of the IP address changes to up.
<b>Up to Down</b>	Shows whether up to down state change is enabled for the entry. When enabled, the state for the tracking ID will change to Down if the IP address status changes from up to down.
<b>Lost (packets)</b>	Shows the number of ping request packets that must be lost before the status of the IP address changes to down.

## Creating a Ping Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Redundancy > Tracking - Settings** page when **Tracking List of Ping** is selected will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new ping tracking entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

### Create a Ping Tracking Entry

Ping Tracking \*  
Disabled ▼

Tracking ID \*  
 ▼

IP Address \*

Interval \*  
1000  
500 - 100000 ms

Timeout \*  
1000  
500 - 100000 ms

State Change (Down to Up) \*  
Enabled ▼

Received \*  
3  
1 - 99 packets

State Change (Up to Down) \*  
Enabled ▼

Lost \*  
3  
1 - 99 packets

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Ping Tracking</b>	Enable or disable the ping tracking ID.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Specify the tracking ID to use for this entry.	Drop-down list of Tracking IDs	N/A
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP Address to monitor with this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Interval</b>	Specify the interval in milliseconds between state checks for the tracking rule.	500 to 100000	1000
<b>Timeout</b>	Specify the timeout in milliseconds to wait for the IP address to respond to a ping packet before detecting a timeout and detecting the IP address as down.	500 to 100000	1000
<b>State Change (Down to Up)</b>	Enable or disable down to up state change with this entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Up when the IP address status transitions from down to up.</li> <li><b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the IP address status transitions from down to up.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Received</b>	Specify the number of ping response packets that must be received before the status of the IP address changes to up.	1 to 99	3
<b>State Change (Up to Down)</b>	Enable or disable up to down state change with this entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Down when the IP address status transitions from up to down.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the IP address status transitions from up to down.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Lost</b>	Specify the number of ping request packets that must be lost before the status of the IP address changes to down.	1 to 99	3

## Editing a Ping Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Redundancy > Tracking - Settings** page when **Tracking List of Ping** is selected will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing ping tracking entry.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This Ping Tracking Entry

Ping Tracking \*  
Enabled

Tracking ID \*  
3

IP Address \*  
192.168.127.26

Interval \*  
1000  
500 - 100000 ms

Timeout \*  
1000  
500 - 100000 ms

State Change (Down to Up) \*  
Enabled

Received \*  
3  
1 - 99 packets

State Change (Up to Down) \*  
Disabled

Lost \*  
3  
1 - 99 packets

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Ping Tracking</b>	Enable or disable the ping tracking ID.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Specify the tracking ID to use for this entry.	Drop-down list of Tracking IDs	N/A
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP Address to monitor with this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Interval</b>	Specify the interval in milliseconds between state checks for the tracking rule.	500 to 100000	1000
<b>Timeout</b>	Specify the timeout in milliseconds to wait for the IP address to respond to a ping packet before detecting a timeout and detecting the IP address as down.	500 to 100000	1000
<b>State Change (Down to Up)</b>	Enable or disable down to up state change with this entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Up when the IP address status transitions from down to up.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the IP address status transitions from down to up.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Received</b>	Specify the number of ping response packets that must be received before the status of the IP address changes to up.	1 to 99	3
<b>State Change (Up to Down)</b>	Enable or disable up to down state change with this entry. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will change to Down when the IP address status transitions from up to down.</li> <li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The state for the tracking ID will not change when the IP address status transitions from up to down.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Lost</b>	Specify the number of ping request packets that must be lost before the status of the IP address changes to down.	1 to 99	3

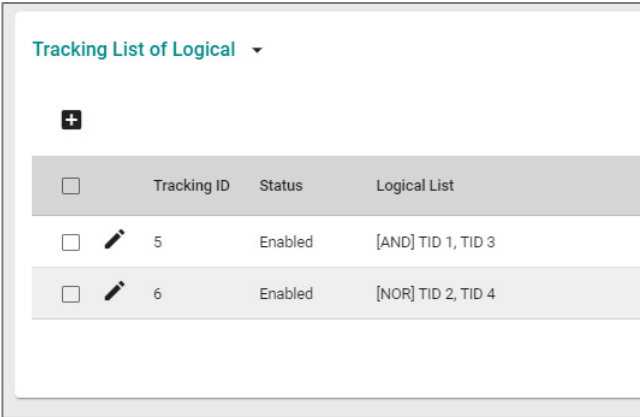
## Deleting a Ping Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.

## Tracking List of Logical

If **Tracking List of Logical** is selected from the drop-down menu, this table will appear.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Tracking List of Logical" with a dropdown arrow. Below the title is an "Add (+)" icon. A table is displayed with the following columns: Tracking ID, Status, and Logical List. The table contains two entries:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Tracking ID	Status	Logical List
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Enabled	[AND] TID 1, TID 3
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	Enabled	[NOR] TID 2, TID 4

UI Setting	Description
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the ID for the tracking rule.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the tracking rule.
<b>Logical List</b>	Shows the logical rule and the Tracking IDs it contains.

## Creating a Logical Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Redundancy > Tracking - Settings** page when **Tracking List of Logical** is selected will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new logical tracking entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

### Create a Logical Tracking Entry

Logical Tracking \*  
Disabled ▼

Tracking ID \*  
 ▼

Logical List \*  
 ▼

Logical Operator \*  
AND ▼

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Logical Tracking</b>	Enable or disable the logical tracking ID.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Specify the tracking ID to use for this entry. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The tracking ID for a logical tracking rule must be higher than the tracking IDs used in the logical list for the rule.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of Tracking IDs	N/A
<b>Logical List</b>	Specify which tracking IDs you want to monitor for this entry. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>You need to set up a tracking ID before you can include it in a logical list.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of existing Tracking IDs	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Logical Operator</b>	<p>Specify how the state of the logical tracking rule should change based on the state of the tracking IDs in the logical list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AND:</b> When all tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Up. Otherwise, the state will be Down.</li> <li>• <b>OR:</b> If any of the tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Up. Otherwise, the state will be Down.</li> <li>• <b>NAND:</b> When all tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Down. Otherwise, the state will be Up.</li> <li>• <b>NOR:</b> If any of the tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Down. Otherwise, the state will be Up.</li> </ul>	AND / OR / NAND / NOR	AND

## Editing a Logical Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Redundancy > Tracking - Settings** page when **Tracking List of Logical** is selected will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing logical tracking entry.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This Logical Tracking Entry



Logical Tracking \*  
Enabled ▾

Tracking ID \*  
5 ▾

Logical List \*  
1, 3 ▾


Logical Operator \*  
AND ▾

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Logical Tracking</b>	Enable or disable the logical tracking ID.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Specify the tracking ID to use for this entry.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The tracking ID for a logical tracking rule must be higher than the tracking IDs used in the logical list for the rule.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of Tracking IDs	N/A
<b>Logical List</b>	Specify which tracking IDs you want to monitor for this entry.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>You need to set up a tracking ID before you can include it in a logical list.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of existing Tracking IDs	N/A
<b>Logical Operator</b>	Specify how the state of the logical tracking rule should change based on the state of the tracking IDs in the logical list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>AND:</b> When all tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Up. Otherwise, the state will be Down.</li> <li>• <b>OR:</b> If any of the tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Up. Otherwise, the state will be Down.</li> <li>• <b>NAND:</b> When all tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Down. Otherwise, the state will be Up.</li> <li>• <b>NOR:</b> If any of the tracking IDs in the logical list are Up, the state will be Down. Otherwise, the state will be Up.</li> </ul>	AND / OR / NAND / NOR	AND

## Deleting a Logical Tracking Entry

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Settings

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (  ) icon.

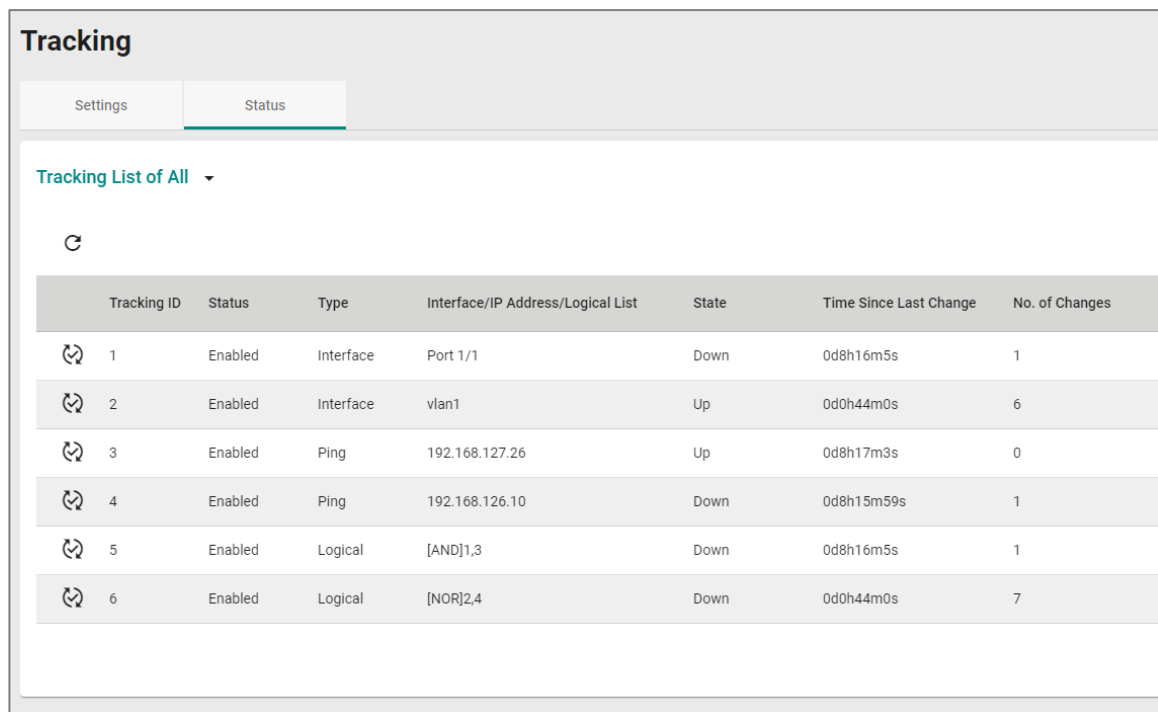
## Tracking - Status

### Menu Path: Redundancy > Tracking - Status

This page lets you see the status of your tracking entries.

### Tracking Status List

You can use the drop-down menu at the top of the table to filter the list to show all tracking entries, or only tracking entries of a specific type.



Tracking ID	Status	Type	Interface/IP Address/Logical List	State	Time Since Last Change	No. of Changes
1	Enabled	Interface	Port 1/1	Down	0d8h16m5s	1
2	Enabled	Interface	vlan1	Up	0d0h44m0s	6
3	Enabled	Ping	192.168.127.26	Up	0d8h17m3s	0
4	Enabled	Ping	192.168.126.10	Down	0d8h15m59s	1
5	Enabled	Logical	[AND]1,3	Down	0d8h16m5s	1
6	Enabled	Logical	[NOR]2,4	Down	0d0h44m0s	7

UI Setting	Description
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the tracking ID for entry.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether the tracking ID enabled.
<b>Type</b>	Shows the type of the tracking entry.
<b>Interface/ IP Address/Logical List</b>	Shows the interface, IP address, logical list this entry is monitoring, based on the tracking entry's type.
<b>State</b>	Shows the current state of the tracking ID.
<b>Time Since Last Change</b>	Shows the time since the last state change for the tracking ID.

UI Setting	Description
<b>No. of Changes</b>	Shows the number of times the tracking ID has changed state since the device was booted.

# Network Service

## Menu Path: Network Service

This section lets you configure your device's network services.

This section includes these pages:

- DHCP Relay Agent
- DNS Settings

## Network Service - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
DHCP Relay Agent	R/W	R/W	R
DNS Settings	R/W	R/W	R

## Configuring DHCP Relay Agent

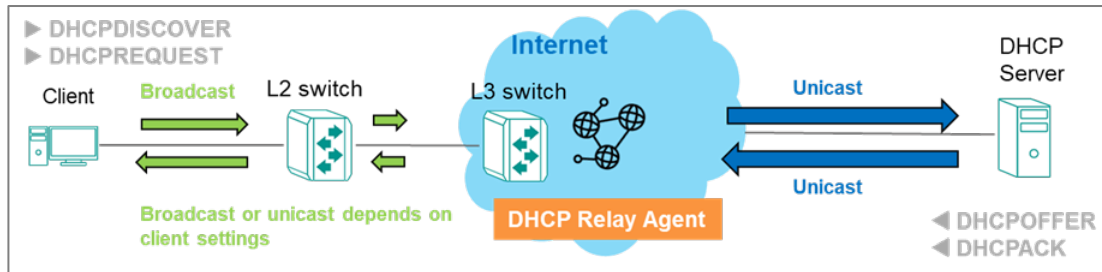
DHCP Relays can help reduce broadcast DHCP requests by relaying DHCP requests between networks.

### About DHCP Relay Agents

DHCP relay agents can provide a bridge for DHCP communication across network segments.

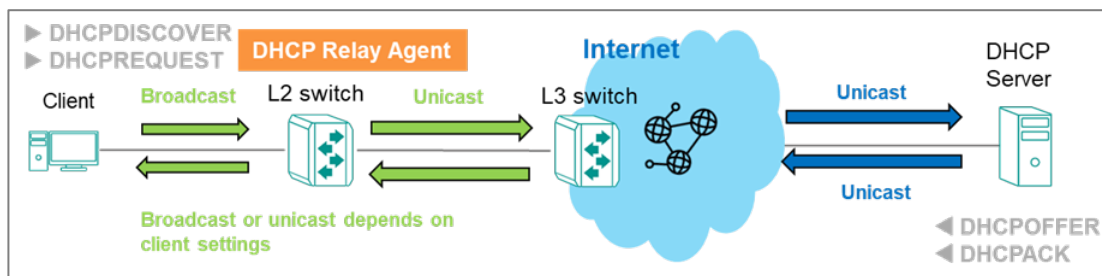
## DHCP Relays on L3 Switches

A DHCP Relay Agent on an L3 switch converts broadcast DHCP packets to unicast packets, and then routes them to the DHCP server.



## DHCP Relays on L2 Switches

On an L2 switch, the switch would convert DHCP broadcast packets to DHCP unicast packets, forward them to an L3 switch, which would then route them to the DHCP server.




## Configuring Option 82


Option 82 provides additional information in relayed packets that can make DHCP server address allocation more effective. If your DHCP server supports it, it can provide additional information that can facilitate context-aware address allocation, as well as more flexible tracking and management.

To configure Option 82:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Service > DHCP Relay Agent > General**, and then click **Option 82**.
3. Specify the ID that will be sent to the relay by clicking **Remote ID Type**, and then choosing an option from the drop-down menu.

For the **Other** option, you can specify a static value of up to 64 characters.

4. To enable **Option 82** on a given **Port**, click  **[Edit]** next to the corresponding **Port**.

 **Note**

Choose a Port connected to client devices. Do not choose an outbound Port.

The **Edit Port** screen appears.

5. Click **Option 82** and choose **Enable** from the drop-down menu.
6. Click **Apply** to save your settings.

## DHCP Relay Agent

**Menu Path:** [Network Service](#) > [DHCP Relay Agent](#)

This page lets you manage the DHCP Relay Agent feature of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Option 82

### DHCP Relay Agent - General

**Menu Path:** [Network Service](#) > [DHCP Relay Agent - General](#)

This page lets you enable the DHCP Relay Agent feature and configure its related settings.

## DHCP Relay Agent Settings

### DHCP Relay Agent







General

Option 82

DHCP Relay Agent \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>DHCP Relay Agent</b>	Enable or disable the DHCP Relay Agent feature on your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>1st/2nd/3rd/4th Server IP Address</b>	Specify the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th server IP address.	Valid IP address	N/A

## DHCP Relay Agent - Port List

	Port	Relay	Status
	1	Disabled	Trusted
	2	Disabled	Trusted
	3	Disabled	Trusted
	4	Disabled	Trusted
	5	Disabled	Trusted
	6	Disabled	Trusted

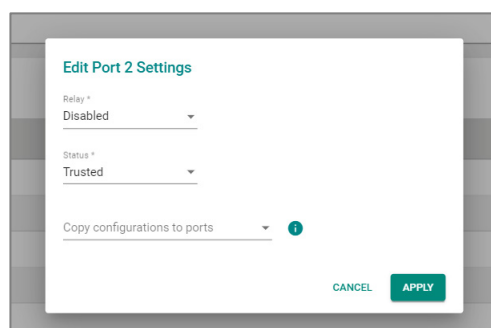
UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Relay</b>	Shows whether the relay function is enabled for the port.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the relay on the port.

## DHCP Relay Agent - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Relay Agent - General

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Network Service > DHCP Relay Agent - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you manage DHCP relay settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Relay</b>	Enable or disable the relay function for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Status</b>	Specify the relay status for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Trusted:</b> DHCP packets with Option 82 or with a non-zero giaddr will be accepted.</li> <li>• <b>Untrusted:</b> DHCP packets with Option 82 or with a non-zero giaddr will be discarded.</li> </ul>	Trusted / Untrusted	Trusted
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Option 82

### Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Relay Agent - Option 82







This page lets you manage Option 82 and its related settings.

### Option 82 Settings

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Relay Agent' configuration page with the 'Option 82' tab selected. The 'Remote ID Type' is set to 'IP', the 'Remote ID Value' is '192.168.127.252', and the 'Remote ID Display' is 'C0A87FFC'. An 'APPLY' button is visible at the bottom left of the form area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Remote ID Type</b>	Specify the remote ID type.	IP / MAC / Client ID / Other	IP
<b>Remote ID Value</b>	If the <b>Remote ID Type</b> is <b>Other</b> , specify the remote ID value to use.  For all other types, this shows the remote ID value for the selected remote ID type and cannot be edited.	N/A	Varies depending on different options
<b>Remote ID Display</b>	Shows the remote ID. This field is read-only and cannot be changed.	N/A	Remote ID


## Option 82 - Port List

	Port	Option 82
	1	Disabled
	2	Disabled
	3	Disabled
	4	Disabled
	5	Disabled
	6	Disabled

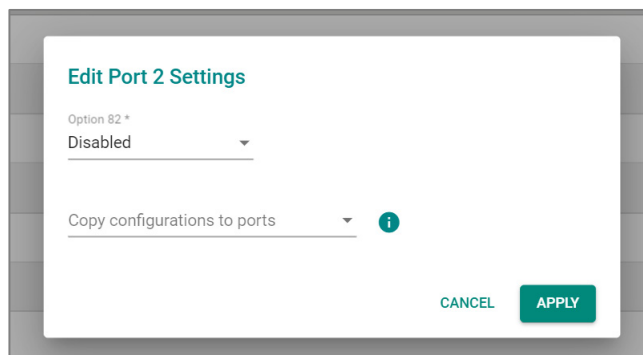
UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Option 82</b>	Shows whether Option 82 is enabled for the port.

## Option 82 - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Relay Agent - Option 82

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Network Service > DHCP Relay Agent - Option 82** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you enable or disable Option 82 for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Option 82</b>	Enable or disable Option 82 for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About DNS

A Domain Name System (DNS) is a hierarchical decentralized naming system for computers, services, or other resources connected to the Internet or a private network. It translates domain names, which are human-readable identifiers for resources, into IP addresses, which are numerical identifiers used to locate and communicate with these resources.

## DNS Settings

**Menu Path:** [Network Service](#) > [DNS Settings](#)

This page lets you specify the DNS servers your device will use. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## DNS Settings

### DNS Settings

Primary DNS Server  
\_\_\_\_\_

Secondary DNS Server  
\_\_\_\_\_

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Primary DNS Server</b>	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server used by your network.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Secondary DNS Server</b>	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server used by your network.  The switch will use the secondary DNS server if the primary DNS server fails to connect.	Valid IP address	N/A

# Routing

## Menu Path: Routing

This section lets you configure the routing settings for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Unicast Route

## Routing - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Unicast Route</b>			
<b>Static Routing</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>OSPF Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>OSPF Status</b>	R	R	R
<b>Routing Table</b>	R	R	R

## About Unicast Routes

A static route is a manually configured network path used to deliver network traffic to a specific destination network or host. Unlike dynamic routes established by routing protocols, static routes are created and managed by a network administrator. They are typically used in small networks or situations where there is a limited number of destinations that need to be reached.

Among these static routes, a special type known as the default route, or 'gateway of last resort', plays a critical role. This default route, often designated as 0.0.0.0/0, represents

a catch-all path. When a device doesn't have a specific route for a packet's destination IP address, it will utilize the default route, sending the data along this path. This ensures that all data, regardless of its destination, has a route to follow.

While both default and static routes are manually configured, they serve different purposes. Static routes are used for specific, predefined network paths, while the default route is a catch-all, used when no other path is available for a specific data packet. This allows for increased control over network traffic while ensuring that data can reach otherwise unspecified networks, typically including the public Internet.

Static routes, including default routes, offer several advantages, including:

- More control over network traffic, allowing administrators to direct traffic along specific paths.
- Less overhead and resource usage, as static routes don't require routers to exchange routing information.
- Faster convergence, since there are no routing updates to process.

However, static routes also have some disadvantages:

- May be time-consuming and prone to human error, as administrators must manually configure and update routes.
- Unable to adapt to network changes automatically, requiring manual intervention to update routing tables when network topology changes.
- May not scale well in large networks with numerous destinations and frequent changes.

In summary, static routing is a method for unicast communication in which network paths are manually configured by network administrators. While they offer more control over network traffic and can improve performance in some cases, static routes can be time-consuming to manage and may not be well-suited for large, dynamic networks.

## Unicast Route

**Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#)**

This section lets you manage unicast routes for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- [Static Routing](#)

- OSPF
- Routing Table

## Static Routing

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing

This page lets you manage static routes for your device, which allows you to specify the next hop (or router) that the device will forward data to for a specific subnet. Static routes will be added to the routing table and stored on the device.

#### 🔑 Limitations

You can create up to 256 unicast static routes.

### Static Route List

#### Static Routing

+ Add
🔍 Search

	Destination	Netmask	Next Hop IP	Next Hop Interface	Distance	Tracking ID
<input type="checkbox"/>	192.168.122.2	255.255.255.254	--	vlan1	1	--

Max. 128
Items per page: 50
1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Destination</b>	Shows the destination IP address for the static route.
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the subnet mask for the destination IP address.
<b>Next Hop IP</b>	Shows the next hop IP on the path to the destination IP address.
<b>Next Hop Interface</b>	Shows the next hop Interface on the path to the destination IP address.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Distance</b>	Shows the distance value used to determine the priority of the static route. Lower values have higher priority.
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Shows the tracking ID selected for the route. When the status of the tracking ID is up, the route will be enabled. When the status of the tracking ID is down, the route will be disabled.

## Create a Static Route

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new static route.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

**Create a Static Route**

Destination \*

Netmask \*

Next Hop Type \* i

Next Hop IP  Next Hop Interface


Distance \*   
1 - 255

Tracking ID

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Destination</b>	Specify the destination IP address for the static route.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Netmask</b>	Specify the subnet mask for the destination IP address.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Next Hop IP</b>	Specify the next hop on the path to the destination IP.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Next Hop Interface</b>	Select a previously created VLAN interface or leave this field blank.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
<b>Distance</b>	Specify the distance value to determine the priority of the static route. Lower values have higher priority.	1 to 255	N/A
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Select a tracking ID for the static route. When the status of the tracking ID is up, the route will be enabled. When the status of the tracking ID is down, the route will be disabled.	List of existing tracking IDs	N/A

 **Note**

You need to create a tracking ID before you can select it. Refer to Tracking for more information.

## Edit This Static Route

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing


Clicking the **Edit** () icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing static route.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This Static Route


Destination \*  
192.168.122.2

Netmask \*  
31 (255.255.255.254) ▾

Next Hop Type \* 


Next Hop IP \_\_\_\_\_ Next Hop Interface  
vlan1 ▾

Distance \*  
1  
1 - 255

Tracking ID 

CANCEL APPLY


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Destination</b>	Specify the destination IP address for the static route.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Netmask</b>	Specify the subnet mask for the destination IP address.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A
<b>Next Hop IP</b>	Specify the next hop on the path to the destination IP.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Next Hop Interface</b>	Select a previously created VLAN interface or leave this field blank.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
<b>Distance</b>	Specify the distance value to determine the priority of the static route. Lower values have higher priority.	1 to 255	N/A
<b>Tracking ID</b>	Select a tracking ID for the static route. When the status of the tracking ID is up, the route will be enabled. When the status of the tracking ID is down, the route will be disabled.	List of existing tracking IDs	N/A

 **Note**

You need to create a tracking ID before you can select it. Refer to Tracking for more information.

## Delete Static Route

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routing

You can delete entries by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (  ) icon.

Static Routes						
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name	Destination Address	Netmask	Next Hop	Metric
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Disabled	test	192.168.122.1	255.255.255.0	192.168.122.2	1

Max. 512

## OSPF

### Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#)

This section lets you manage OSPF for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- [OSPF Settings](#)
- [OSPF Status](#)

## OSPF

Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) is a dynamic routing protocol used in Internet Protocol (IP) networks. Specifically, it is a link-state routing protocol in the group of interior gateway protocols, operating within a single autonomous system.

As a link-state routing protocol, OSPF establishes and maintains neighbor relationships in order to exchange routing updates with other routers. The neighbor relationship table is called an adjacency database in OSPF. OSPF forms neighbor relationships only with routers directly connected to it. In order to form a neighbor relationship between two routers, the interfaces used to form the relationship must be in the same area. An interface can only belong to a single area.

With OSPF enabled, the Moxa Layer 3 switch is able to exchange routing information with other L3 switches or routers more efficiently in a large system.

## OSPF Settings

### Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings](#)

This page lets you configure OSPF for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- [General](#)
- [Area](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Neighbor](#)
- [Aggregation](#)
- [Virtual Link](#)

## OSPF Settings - General

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - General**

This page lets you configure OSPF general settings.

## OSPF Settings - General

### OSPF Settings

General
Area
Interface
Neighbor
Aggregation
Virtual Link

OSPF \*  
Disabled ▼

Router ID \*

Current Router ID  
 ⓘ

RFC 1583 Compatibility \*  
Disabled ▼

SPF Hold Time \*  
  
0 - 65535 ms

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>OSPF</b>	Enable or disable OSPF for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Router ID</b>	Specify the Router ID of your Moxa router.	Router ID	0.0.0.0
<p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The router ID, which must be established for every OSPF instance, should be written in the dot-decimal format of an IP address (e.g., 1.2.3.4) and does not need to be part of any routable subnet on the network, since it is an IP address.</p>			
<b>Current Router ID (View-only)</b>	Specify the current Router ID of your Moxa router.	Current Router ID	0.0.0.0
<p><b>Note</b></p> <p>When the Router ID is set to 0.0.0.0, the Current Router ID will automatically use the highest interface IP address.</p>			

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Compatible RFC 1583</b> (Available in Advanced Mode)	Enable or disable compatibility with RFC 1583.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>SPF Hold Time (ms)</b> (Available in Advanced Mode)	Specify the SPF hold time in milliseconds.	0 to 65535	5000

## OSPF Protocol List

Protocol	Redistribute	Type	Metric
Static	Disabled	E2	20
Connected	Disabled	E2	20

UI Setting	Description
<b>Protocol</b>	Shows the OSPF protocol the entry is for.
<b>Redistribute</b>	Shows whether redistribution is enabled for the protocol.
<b>Type</b>	Shows the metric type used for routes to be redistributed.
<b>Metric</b>	Shows the metric value used for routes to be redistributed.

## Editing Redistribute Settings

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - General

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a protocol on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the redistribute settings for the protocol.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Note**

The name of the dialog will change depending on whether you are editing settings for a static or connected protocol.

**Edit Redistribute Static**

Redistribute \*  
Disabled

Type \*  
E2

Metric \*  
20  
1 - 16777214

CANCEL APPLY

**Edit Redistribute Connected**

Redistribute \*  
Disabled

Type \*  
E2

Metric \*  
20  
1 - 16777214

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Redistribute</b>	Enable or disable redistribution for the protocol.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Type (Only in Advanced Mode)</b>	Select the metric type applied to the routes to be redistributed.	E1/ E2	E2

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Metric</b> (Only in Advanced Mode)	Specify the metric value for the routes to be redistributed into OSPF.	1 to 16777214	20

## OSPF Settings - Area

**Menu Path:** Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area

This page lets you configure OSPF area settings.

### Limitations

You can create up to 64 OSPF areas.

Area ID	Area Type	Summary
0.0.0.0	Normal	No Summary

Max. 64    Items per page: 50    1 - 1 of 1    |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
<b>Area ID</b>	Shows the area ID for the area.
<b>Area Type</b>	Shows the type of the area.
<b>Summary</b>	Shows the summary of the area.

## Creating an OSPF Area

**Menu Path:** Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a new OSPF area.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes.



The 'Create Area' dialog box contains three input fields: 'Area ID' (text input), 'Area Type' (dropdown menu), and 'Summary' (dropdown menu with an information icon). At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'CANCEL' and 'CREATE'.

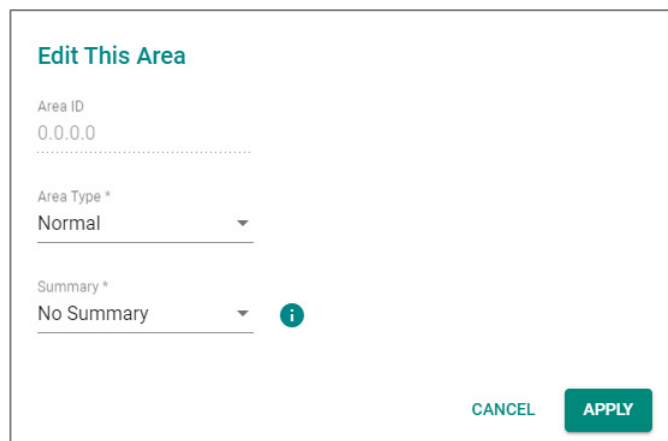
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Area ID</b>	Specify the area ID for the new area.	0.0.0.0 to 255.255.255.255	0.0.0.0
<b>Area Type</b>	Select the area type to use.	Normal / Stub / NSSA	N/A
<b>Summary</b>	Select whether to include a summary for the area or not.	Summary / No Summary	N/A

### Editing an OSPF Area

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area**

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an OSPF area on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the settings of the OSPF area.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



The 'Edit This Area' dialog box shows the current settings for an OSPF area. The 'Area ID' field contains '0.0.0.0'. The 'Area Type' dropdown is set to 'Normal'. The 'Summary' dropdown is set to 'No Summary' and has an information icon. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'CANCEL' and 'APPLY'.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Area ID (View-only)</b>	Shows the area ID. This value cannot be changed.	N/A	N/A
<b>Area Type</b>	Select the area type to use.	Normal / Stub / NSSA	N/A
<b>Summary</b>	Select whether to include a summary for the area or not.	Summary / No Summary	N/A

## Deleting an Area

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area

You can delete an area by using the checkboxes to select the ones you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.

## OSPF Settings - Interface

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Interface

This page lets you configure OSPF interface settings.

## OSPF Interface List

Interface Name	Interface Alias	IP Address	OSPF	Area ID	Hello Interval (sec.)	Dead Interval (sec.)	Priority	Cost	Network Type	Auth Type	Key ID	Passive Interface
✎ vlan1		192.168.127.253	Disabled	0.0.0.0	10	40	1	1	Broadcast	--	--	Disabled

Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Shows the name of the interface this entry is for.
<b>Interface Alias</b>	Shows the alias for the interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the interface.
<b>OSPF</b>	Shows whether OSPF is enabled for the interface.
<b>Area ID</b>	Shows the area ID for the interface.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Hello Interval (sec.)</b>	Shows the hello packet send interval in seconds for the interface.
<b>Dead Interval (sec.)</b>	Shows the dead interval in seconds for the interface.
<b>Priority</b>	Shows the L3 priority for the interface.
<b>Cost</b>	Shows the cost for the interface. Lower values mean higher priority.
<b>Network Type (Only in Advanced Mode)</b>	Shows the network type assigned to the interface to determine how hello packets will be sent.
<b>Auth Type</b>	Shows the OSPF authentication type used for the interface.
<b>Key ID</b>	Shows the OSPF authentication key ID used for the interface.
<b>Passive Mode (Only in Advanced Mode)</b>	Shows whether passive mode is enabled for the interface.

## Editing an OSPF Interface

### Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Interface](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an interface on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Interface** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the OSPF settings of the interface.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Interface vlan1

OSPF \*  
Disabled

Area ID \*  
0.0.0.0

Hello Interval \* Dead Interval \*  
10 40

1 - 65535 sec. 1 - 65535 sec.

Priority \*  
1

0 - 255

Cost \*  
1

1 - 65535

Network Type \*  
Broadcast

Auth Type \*  
SHA-512



Key \* Key ID \*

0 / 16 0 - 255

Passive Interface \*  
Disabled

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>OSPF</b>	Enable or disable the OSPF function for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Area ID</b>	Specify the area ID for the interface.	Drop-down list of the area ID	0.0.0.0
<b>Hello Interval</b>	Specify the hello packet send interval in seconds. Hello packets are packets sent to OSPF neighbors to maintain connectivity with those neighbors.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The value of all hello intervals must be the same within a network.</p> </div>	1 to 65535	10
<b>Dead Interval</b>	Specify the dead interval in seconds. This is the amount of time that must pass with no hello packet responses received from the neighbor before the neighbor is declared dead.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The dead interval is often set as four times the hello interval.</p> </div>	1 to 65535	40
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the L3 priority for the interface. Higher values mean higher priority to be selected as the designated router.	0 to 255	1

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Cost</b>	Specify cost for the interface. Lower values mean higher priority.	1 to 65535	1
<b>Network Type</b> (Only in Advanced Mode)	Select the network type for the interface to determine how hello packets will be sent.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>When the network type is set to Non-broadcast or Point-to-multipoint, you will need to add a neighbor manually.</p> </div>	Broadcast / Non-broadcast / Point-to-multipoint / Point-to-point	Broadcast
<b>Auth Type</b>	Specify the OSPF authentication type to use when authenticating OSPF neighbors, or select <b>None</b> for no authentication.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If OSPF authentication is used, all L3 switches and routers on the same segment must use the same authentication method and key.</p> </div>	None / Simple / MD5 / SHA1 / SHA-224 / SHA-256 / SHA-385 / SHA-512	N/A
<b>Key</b> (If Auth Type is not None)	Specify the key for OSPF authentication.	If Auth Type is None: N/A  If Auth Type is Simple: 1 to 8 characters  All other Auth Types: 1 to 16 characters	N/A
<b>Key ID</b> (If Auth Type is not None or Simple)	Specify the key ID for OSPF authentication.	1 to 255 characters	N/A
<b>Passive Interface</b> (Only in Advanced Mode)	Enable or disable passive mode for the interface. In passive mode, OSPF-related operations will not execute, but interface's route information can still be learned by other non-passive interfaces.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## OSPF Settings - Neighbor

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Neighbor**

This page lets you configure OSPF neighbor settings.

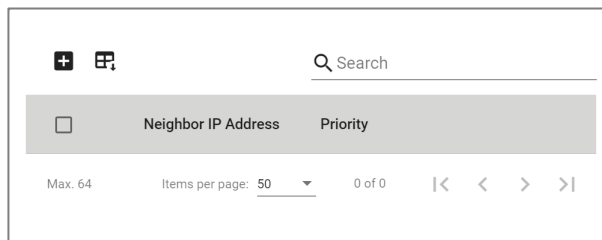
**Note**

This page is only shown when using Advanced Mode.

**Limitations**

You can create up to 64 OSPF neighbors.

## OSPF Neighbor List



UI Setting	Description
<b>Neighbor IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the neighbor device.
<b>Priority</b>	Shows the L3 priority of the neighbor. Higher values mean higher priority for becoming the designated router. A value of 0 means this neighbor will not become a designated router.

## Creating an OSPF Neighbor

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Neighbor**

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Neighbor** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add an OSPF neighbor.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes.

### Create a Neighbor

Neighbor IP Address \*

---

Priority \*

0 - 255

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Neighbor IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address for the neighbor.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the priority for the neighbor. Higher values mean higher priority for becoming the designated router. A value of 0 means this neighbor will not become a designated router.	0 to 255	N/A

### Editing an OSPF Neighbor

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Neighbor**

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an OSPF neighbor on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Neighbor** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the OSPF neighbor.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit This Neighbor

Neighbor IP Address

192.168.24.221

---

Priority \*

3

---

0 - 255

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Neighbor IP Address</b> (View only)	Shows the IP address for the neighbor. This value cannot be changed	N/A	Neighbor IP address
<b>Priority</b>	Specify the L3 priority for the neighbor. Higher values mean higher priority for becoming the designated router. A value of 0 means this neighbor will not become a designated router.	0 to 255	N/A

## Deleting an OSPF Neighbor

**Menu Path:** [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Neighbor](#)

You can delete an OSPF neighbor by using the checkboxes to select the ones you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.

## OSPF Settings - Aggregation

**Menu Path:** [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Aggregation](#)

This page lets you configure OSPF aggregation settings.

### 🔔 Limitations

You can create up to 192 OSPF aggregations.

## OSPF Aggregation List

Area ID	IP Address	Subnet Mask	LSA Type
Max. 192			
Items per page: 50			
0 of 0			

UI Setting	Description
<b>Area ID</b>	Shows the area ID of the aggregation.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the aggregation.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Shows the subnet mask of the aggregation.

UI Setting	Description
LSA Type	Shows the LSA type used for the aggregation.

## Creating an OSPF Aggregation

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an OSPF aggregation.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes.

**Create an Aggregation**

Area ID \*

IP Address \*  Subnet Mask \*

LSA Type \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Area ID</b>	Select the Area ID that you want to use for the aggregation.	Drop-down list of area IDs	0.0.0.0
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address for the aggregation.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Specify the subnet mask for the aggregation.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A
<b>LSA Type</b>	Specify the type of LSA to use for the aggregation.	Summary / Type 7	N/A

## Deleting an OSPF Aggregation

## Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation

You can delete an OSPF aggregation by using the checkboxes to select the ones you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.

### OSPF Settings - Virtual Link

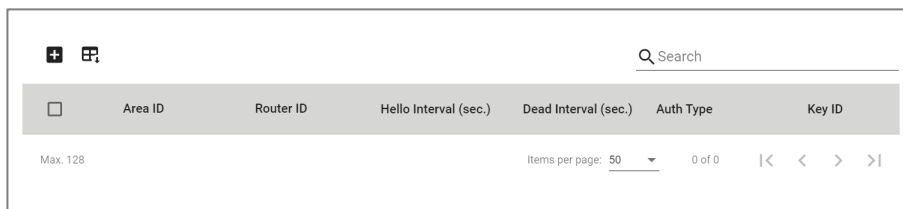
## Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Virtual Link

This page lets you configure OSPF virtual link settings.

#### 🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 128 OSPF virtual links.

### OSPF Virtual Link List



<input type="checkbox"/>	Area ID	Router ID	Hello Interval (sec.)	Dead Interval (sec.)	Auth Type	Key ID
Max. 128						
Items per page: 50 0 of 0  < < > >						

UI Setting	Description
<b>Area ID</b>	Shows the area ID for the virtual link.
<b>Router ID</b>	Shows the router ID for the virtual link.
<b>Hello Interval (sec.)</b>	Shows the hello packet send interval in seconds for the virtual link.
<b>Dead Interval (sec.)</b>	Shows the dead interval in seconds for the virtual link.
<b>Auth Type</b>	Shows the OSPF authentication type used for the virtual link.
<b>Key ID</b>	Shows the OSPF authentication key ID used for the virtual link.

### Creating an OSPF Virtual Link

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Virtual Link**

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Virtual Link** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an OSPF virtual link.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes.

**Create a Virtual Link**

Area ID \*

Router ID \*

Hello Interval \*  sec. Dead Interval \*  sec.


Auth Type \*  Key \*  Key ID \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Area ID</b>	Select the area ID to use for the virtual link.	Drop-down list of area IDs	N/A
<b>Router ID</b>	Specify the L3 switch or router's ID.	Valid router ID	N/A
<b>Hello Interval</b>	Specify the hello packet send interval in seconds. Hello packets are packets sent to OSPF neighbors to maintain connectivity with those neighbors.	1 to 65535	N/A
	<p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The value of all hello intervals must be the same within a network.</p>		
<b>Dead Interval</b>	Specify the dead interval in seconds.	1 to 65535	N/A
	<p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The dead interval is often set as four times the hello interval.</p>		

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Auth Type</b>	Specify the OSPF authentication type to use when authenticating OSPF neighbors, or select <b>None</b> for no authentication.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If OSPF authentication is used, all L3 switches and routers on the same segment must use the same authentication method and key.</p> </div>	None / Simple / MD5 / SHA1 / SHA-224 / SHA-256 / SHA-385 / SHA-512	N/A
<b>Key</b> <b>(If Auth Type is not None)</b>	Specify the key for OSPF authentication.	If Auth Type is None: N/A  If Auth Type is Simple: 1 to 8 characters  All other Auth Types: 1 to 16 characters	N/A
<b>Key ID</b> <b>(If Auth Type is not None or Simple)</b>	Specify the key ID for OSPF authentication.	1 to 255 characters	N/A

## Deleting an OSPF Virtual Link

### Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Virtual Link](#)

You can delete an OSPF virtual link by using the checkboxes to select the ones you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (  ) icon.

## OSPF Status

### Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Status](#)

This page lets you monitor OSPF status information.

This page includes these tabs:

- Interface
- Neighbor
- Database
- Virtual Link

## OSPF Status - Interface

**Menu Path:** [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Status - Interface](#)

This page lets you view the status of your device's OSPF interfaces.

### OSPF Status Interface List

Interface Name	Interface Alias	IP Address	Area	State	DR Router ID	BDR Router ID
vlan1		192.168.127.253	0.0.0.0	Down	N/A	N/A

Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Shows the name of the interface this entry is for.
<b>Interface Alias</b>	Shows the alias for the interface.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the interface.
<b>Area</b>	Shows the area ID for the interface.
<b>State</b>	Shows whether the interface is currently up or down.
<b>DR Router ID</b>	Shows the ID of the designated router (DR).
<b>BDR Router ID</b>	Shows the ID of the backup designated router (BDR).

## OSPF Status - Neighbor

**Menu Path:** [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Status - Neighbor](#)

This page lets you view the status of your device's OSPF neighbors.

## OSPF Status Neighbor List

Neighbor ID	Priority	State	IP Address	Interface Name	Dead Interval (sec.)
-------------	----------	-------	------------	----------------	----------------------

UI Setting	Description
<b>Neighbor ID</b>	Shows the ID of the neighbor device.
<b>Priority</b>	Shows the L3 priority of the neighbor.
<b>State</b>	Shows the state of the neighbor.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the neighbor device.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Shows which interface the neighbor is connected to.
<b>Dead Interval (sec.)</b>	Shows the dead interval in seconds for the neighbor.

## OSPF Status - Database

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Status - Database**

This page lets you view the status of your device's OSPF database.

## OSPF Status Database List

LSA Type	Area	Link ID	ADV Router	Age (sec.)
----------	------	---------	------------	------------

UI Setting	Description
<b>LSA Type</b>	Shows the type of the link state advertisement (LSA).
<b>Area</b>	Shows the area ID of the LSA.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Link ID</b>	Shows the link ID of the LSA.
<b>ADV Router</b>	Shows the router where the LSA originated from.
<b>Age (sec.)</b>	Shows the age of the LSA in seconds.

## OSPF Status - Virtual Link

**Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Status - Virtual Link**

This page lets you view the status of your device's OSPF virtual links.

### OSPF Status Virtual Link List

Area	Router ID	Neighbor State	Events	LSA Retransmission Queue Length	Hello Suppressed

UI Setting	Description
<b>Area</b>	Shows the area ID for the virtual link.
<b>Router ID</b>	Shows the router ID for the virtual link.
<b>Neighbor State</b>	Shows the current state of the neighbor.
<b>Events</b>	Shows the number of events that have occurred since the device was booted. Events include the state of the virtual link changing and errors.
<b>LSA Retransmission Queue Length</b>	Shows the current length of the LSA retransmission queue.
<b>Hello Suppressed</b>	Shows whether hello messages to the neighbor are being suppressed.

## Routing Table

### Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > Routing Table

This page lets you see the current unicast routing table for your device.

#### Limitations

The unicast routing table can hold up to 6000 entries.

Type	Destination	Netmask	Next Hop	AD/Metric
Static	192.168.122.2	255.255.255.254	vlan1	1/1
Connected	192.168.127.0	255.255.255.0	vlan1	0/0
Connected	255.223.12.11	255.255.255.255	loopback1	0/0

Max. 3000

Items per page: 50 1 - 3 of 3

#### UI Setting Description

<b>Type</b>	Shows the source type of the route.
<b>Destination</b>	Shows the address of the destination network for the route.
<b>Netmask</b>	Shows the netmask of the destination network for the route.
<b>Next Hop</b>	Shows the IP address or interface of the next hop that the packet should be forwarded to.
<b>AD/Metric</b>	Shows the metric value/cost of the route to the destination network.

#### Note

Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.

# Security

## Menu Path: Security

This section lets you configure the security settings of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Device Security
- Network Security
- Authentication

## Security - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Device Security</b>			
<b>Login Policy</b>	R/W	R	R
<b>Trusted Access</b>	R/W	R	R
<b>SSH &amp; SSL</b>	R/W	R/W	-
<b>Network Security</b>			
<b>IEEE 802.1X</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MAC Authentication Bypass</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Port Security</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Traffic Storm Control</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Access Control List</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Network Loop Protection</b>	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Binding Database</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>DHCP Snooping</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>IP Source Guard</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Dynamic ARP Inspection</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Authentication</b>			
<b>Login Authentication</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>RADIUS</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>TACACS+</b>	R/W	-	-

## Device Security

### Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Device Security](#)

This section lets you configure the device-level security settings of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- [Login Policy](#)
- [Trusted Access](#)
- [SSH & SSL](#)

### About Login Policy

Login Policy lets you define and enforce login restrictions to improve the security of your device and protect it from unauthorized access from brute force attacks.

### Login Policy

#### Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Device Security](#) > [Login Policy](#)

This page lets you configure the login policies for your device.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

## Login Policy Settings

The screenshot shows a 'Login Policy' configuration window. It contains the following settings:

- Login Message:** A text input field with a character count of 0 / 500.
- Login Authentication Failure Message:** A text input field with a character count of 0 / 500.
- Account Login Failure Lockout \*:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Disabled'.
- Retry Failure Threshold \*:** A numeric input field set to '5', with a range of 1 - 10 and the unit 'times'.
- Lockout Duration \*:** A numeric input field set to '5', with a range of 1 - 10 and the unit 'min'.
- Auto Logout After \*:** A numeric input field set to '5', with a range of 0 - 1440 and the unit 'min'.

An 'APPLY' button is located at the bottom left of the form.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Login Message</b>	Specify the welcome message to display when users log in to the device.	0 to 500 characters	N/A
<b>Login Authentication Failure Message</b>	Specify the message to display if the user fails to log in.  <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p><b>⚠ Warning</b></p> <p>The Login Authentication Failure Message should not include information about passwords or other sensitive information.</p> </div>	0 to 500 characters	N/A
<b>Account Login Failure Lockout</b>	Enable or disable the lockout function, which will temporarily prevent users from logging in for the <b>Lockout Duration</b> after the <b>Retry Failure Threshold</b> is exceeded. This can be useful for preventing brute force attacks.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Retry Failure Threshold</b>	Specify the number of login retry attempts allowed before the user is locked out for the <b>Lockout Duration</b> .	1 to 10	5
<b>Lockout Duration</b>	Specify the lockout duration in minutes during which a locked-out user will be unable to log in.	1 to 10	5
<b>Auto Logout After</b>	Specify the amount of time in minutes a user can be idle before they will be automatically logged out from the device.	0 to 1440	5

## About Trusted Access

Trusted Access is a feature that allows device management only from trusted IP addresses that you specify.

Trusted access is a crucial mechanism for maintaining the security and integrity of your network infrastructure. It ensures that only authorized devices can connect to sensitive network resources, reducing the risk of unauthorized access and potential security breaches.

### Why Trusted Access Matters

- **Security:** By allowlisting IP addresses, administrators ensure that only devices with approved IP addresses can access the network configuration, helping to prevent unauthorized connections.
- **Access Control:** Trusted access enables administrators to define which IP addresses can connect to sensitive resources, ensuring that only trusted devices interact with critical areas of the network.

### How Trusted Access Works


Enabling trusted access on a device involves configuring IP allowlists. Once an IP address is allowlisted, the device treats it as trusted, allowing access to device management functions. Devices not on the allowlist are denied access, helping to maintain a secure and controlled network environment.

### Example: Configuring and Enabling Trusted Access

Enable trusted IP address settings to only allow users to access network device management features from IP addresses you choose. Only IPv4 addresses are supported.

Make sure you add all management devices to the allowlist before enabling Trusted Access, otherwise you may lose access to the management console.

To configure trusted access, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Security > Device Security > Trusted Access**, and then click  **[Add]**.

The Create Entry screen appears.

3. Specify the **IP Address** and **Subnet Mask** of the device to add the device IP to the allowlist, and then click **Create**.

The specified **IP Address** and **Netmask** appear on the Trusted Access list.

4. Once you have created entries for all devices, under **Trusted Access**, choose **Enabled**, and then click **Apply**.

Trusted access will now be enabled, and only devices on the allowlist will be able to access management features.

## Trusted Access

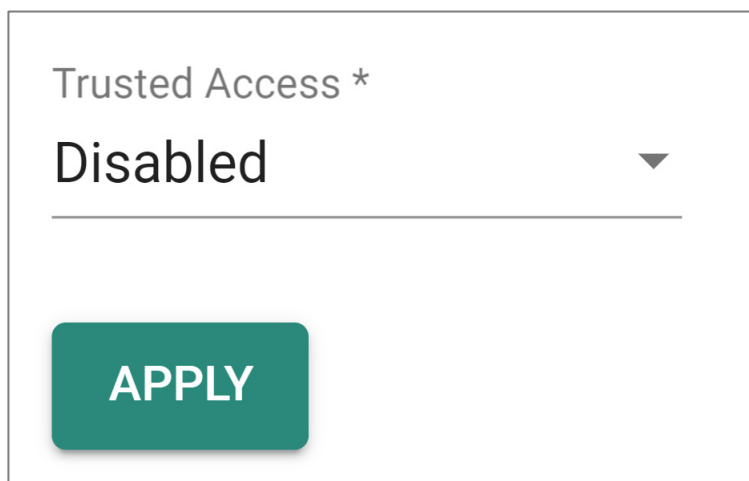
**Menu Path: Security > Device Security > Trusted Access**

This page lets you limit access to the device to trusted IP addresses you specify. You can also limit access to the device to LAN connections only.

### ⓘ Limitations

You can create up to 20 trusted IP entries.

## Trusted Access Settings



Trusted Access \*

Disabled ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Trusted Access</b>	<p>Enable or disable the Trusted IP List.</p> <p><b>Enabled:</b> Only IP addresses in the Trusted IP List can access the device.</p> <p><b>Disabled:</b> Any IP address can access the device.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Trusted Access cannot be enabled if there are no entries in the Trusted Access List.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Warning</b></p> <p>Depending on the features you enable, you may lose access to your device if the computer you are using to configure the device is not in the Trusted Access List or connected through a LAN connection.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## Trusted Access List

		Search
<input type="checkbox"/>	IP Address	Netmask
<input type="checkbox"/>	196.122.23.23	255.255.255.0
Max. 20		1 - 1 of 1

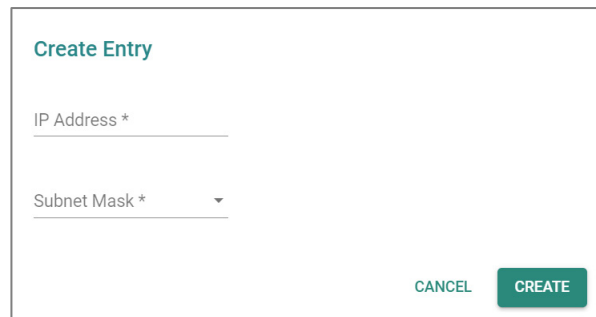
UI Setting	Description
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address of the Trusted IP entry.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Shows the netmask of the Trusted IP entry.

## Trusted Access - Create Entry

### Menu Path: Security > Device Security > Trusted Access

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Device Security > Trusted Access** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a trusted IP entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.



The image shows a 'Create Entry' dialog box. It has a title bar 'Create Entry'. Below the title bar, there are two input fields: 'IP Address \*' and 'Subnet Mask \*'. The 'Subnet Mask \*' field has a dropdown arrow. At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: 'CANCEL' and 'CREATE'.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the trusted host(s).	Valid IP Address	N/A
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Select a netmask for the trusted host(s).	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A

## About SSH & SSL

SSH and SSL are security protocols.

- **Secure Shell (SSH):** SSH is the recommended protocol for secure command-line access. This protocol encrypts the communication channel between a user and a device's management interface. This helps ensure that any data exchanged—like usernames, passwords, or configuration commands—remains hidden from eavesdroppers on the network.
- **Secure Sockets Layer (SSL):** While functionally similar to SSH, SSL is often used for web-based applications. Though The term "Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)" is still commonly used, it's important to note that it's been deprecated in favor of the more secure Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. In the context of Ethernet switches, some may offer a web interface for management tasks. Moxa switches support TLS versions 1.2 and 1.3. TLS encrypts the communication

channel between a user's web browser and a device's web interface. This ensures the security of sensitive data during remote configuration tasks performed through the web interface.

**Note**

Certificates: Self-signed vs. Trusted

There are two main types of certificates used for TLS connections: self-signed certificates and trusted certificates.

- Self-signed certificates: These certificates are issued by the device itself and are not verified by a third-party Certificate Authority (CA). While they provide basic encryption, they may generate warnings in web browsers due to the lack of trust verification.
- Trusted certificates: These certificates are issued by a trusted CA and are generally considered more secure. Web browsers readily accept connections secured with trusted certificates.

The choice between self-signed and trusted certificates depends on your specific security requirements.

## SSH & SSL

**Menu Path: Security > Device Security > SSH & SSL**

This page lets you manage your SSH key and SSL certificate.

This page includes these tabs:

- SSH
- SSL

### SSH

**Menu Path: Security > Device Security > SSH & SSL - SSH**

This page lets you manage your device's SSH key.

**Note**

Regenerating your SSH key regularly strengthens SSH security by invalidating potentially compromised keys and adding another layer of defense against unauthorized access. There's no one-size-fits-all answer for how often to regenerate keys; it depends on security risk factors like server importance, access frequency, and potential exposure. Consider regenerating them every few months or every year, especially for critical servers.

## Regenerate SSH Key

Regenerate SSH Key

**REGENERATE**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Regenerate SSH Key</b>	<p>Click <b>REGENERATE</b> to regenerate the SSH key.</p> <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 5px;"><p><b>Warning</b></p><p>Regenerating the SSH key will restart the device's system services and will make the device temporarily unavailable.</p></div>	N/A	N/A

## SSL

### Menu Path: Security > Device Security > SSH & SSL - SSL

This page lets you manage your device's SSL certificate. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Certificate Information

 **SSL Certificate** **Manage** ▾

CA Name : Test CA Certificate

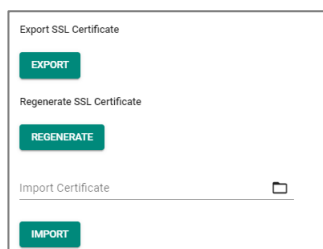
Expiration Date : 2030-01-01 00:00:00

UI Setting	Description
<b>CA Name</b>	Shows the CA name of the SSL certificate.
<b>Expiration Date</b>	Shows when the current certificate will expire.

## SSL Settings

To import a customer certificate, follow the steps below:

1. Import root CA generated by customer's CA server to a PC.
2. Click the "EXPORT" button to download the Certificate Signing Request (CSR) file from the switch. Use this CSR file with your CA server to generate a new SSL certificate.
3. 'Import' the certificate to the switch.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Export SSL Certificate</b>	Click <b>EXPORT</b> to export the SSL Certificate Signing Request (*.csr) to your local computer.	N/A	N/A
<b>Regenerate SSL Certificate</b>	Click <b>REGENERATE</b> to regenerate the SSL certificate.	N/A	N/A
<b>Import Certificate</b>	Select an SSL certificate from your computer (*.crt), then click <b>IMPORT</b> to import the certificate to your device.	N/A	N/A

## Network Security

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security

This section lets you configure the network-level security settings of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- IEEE 802.1X
- MAC Authentication Bypass
- Port Security
- Traffic Storm Control
- Access Control List
- Network Loop Protection
- Binding Database
- DHCP Snooping
- IP Source Guard
- Dynamic ARP Inspection

## **About IEEE 802.1X**

IEEE 802.1X is a standard for managing access control, ensuring that devices seeking to access network resources are what they claim to be.

### **About IEEE 802.1X**

802.1X is a standard for port-based Network Access Control (NAC) that provides an authentication framework for devices trying to connect to a network.

Part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols, the primary purpose of 802.1X is to enhance the security of wired and wireless networks by requiring users and devices to authenticate themselves before gaining access to network resources.

### **Topology**

An 802.1X topology has three roles:

- Supplicant: The client device (e.g., laptop, smartphone) seeking network access.
- Authenticator: The network device (e.g., switch, wireless access point) that controls access to the network ports.

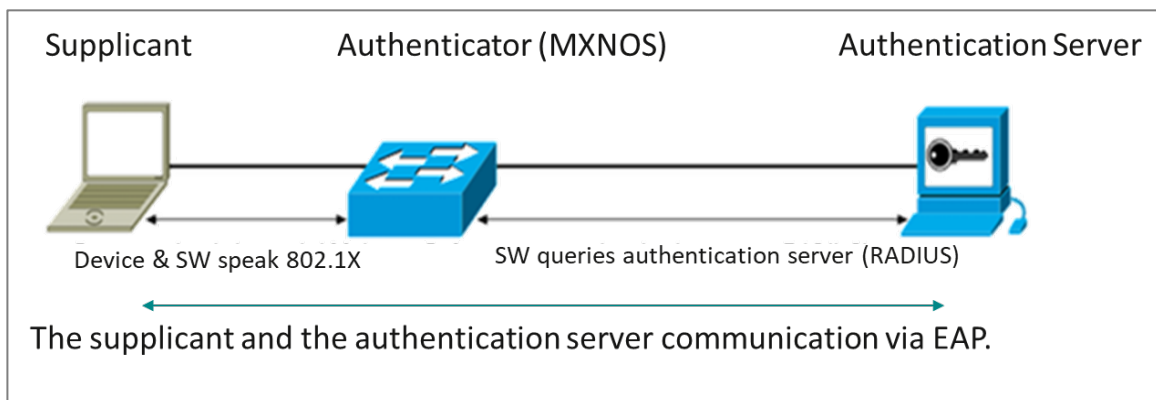
- **Authentication Server:** A server that performs the actual authentication of the supplicant. It could be a RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) server or another centralized authentication service.

**Note**

In an 802.1X environment, Moxa switches primarily function as authenticators. However, they can also be optionally configured to act as authentication servers.

In an 802.1X authentication system, the supplicant (client), authenticator device (Switch or Wi-Fi AP), and authentication server exchange information using the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP).

A supplicant and an authenticator exchange EAPOL (Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN) frames with each other. We can either use an external RADIUS server as the authentication server or implement the authentication server in the Moxa switch by using a Local User Database as the authentication look-up table. When using an external RADIUS server as the authentication server, the authenticator and the authentication server exchange EAP frames.

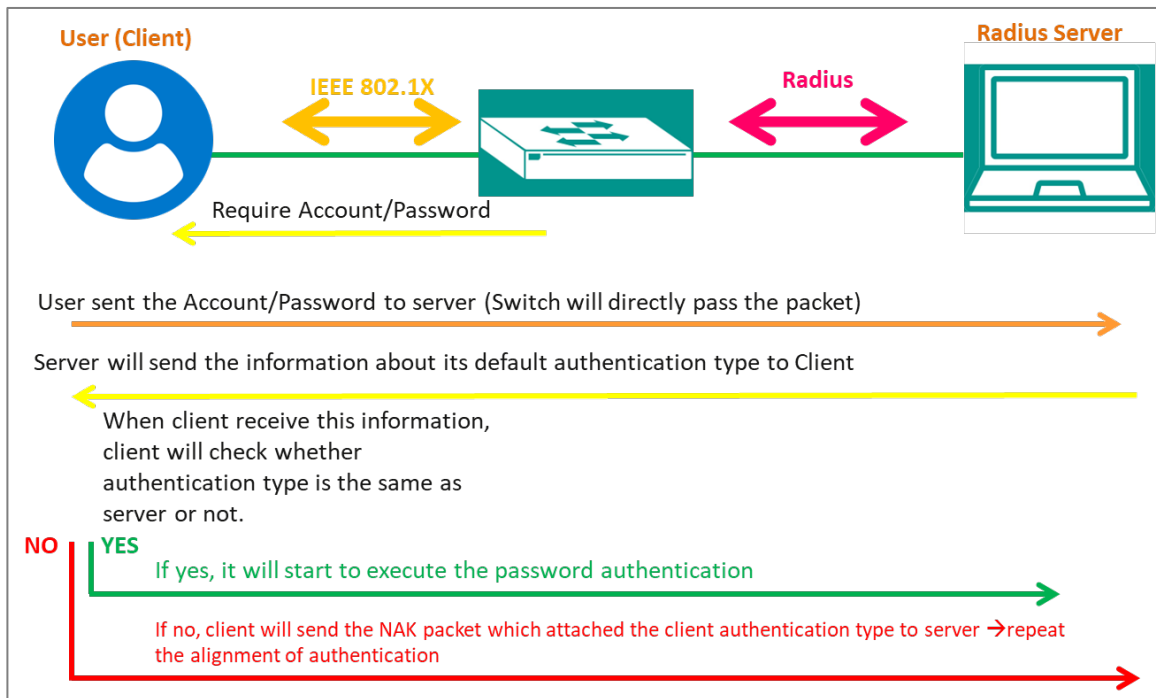


**Note**

It is possible to use 802.1X authentication without a separate authentication server using local authentication. The Authenticator can be configured to determine client access rights.

### Authentication Process

When a device connects to a network port configured for 802.1X, the following process occurs:



1. Initialization: The supplicant sends an EAPOL (Extensible Authentication Protocol Over LAN) start message to the authenticator.
2. Authentication Request: The authenticator replies with an EAP Request/Identity message, prompting the supplicant to provide its identity.
3. Identity Response: The supplicant responds with its identity, typically a username.
4. Authentication Exchange: The authenticator relays the identity to the authentication server, which then initiates an authentication exchange with the supplicant using EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol).
5. Authentication Result: Based on the outcome of the authentication process (which could involve methods like username/password, digital certificates, or other credentials), the authentication server sends an Accept or Reject message to the authenticator.
6. Access Granted/Denied: If authentication is successful, the authenticator allows the supplicant access to the network. If authentication fails, access is denied.

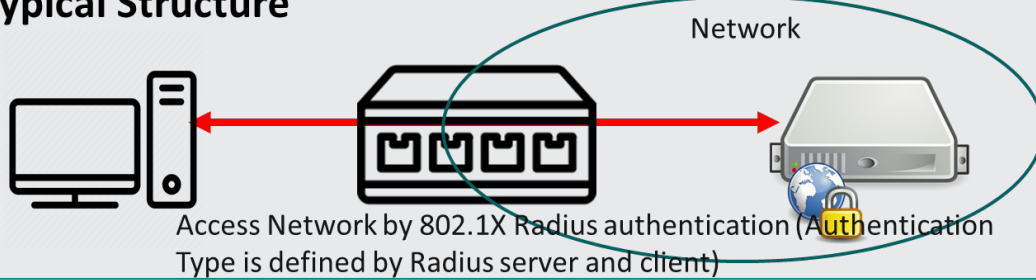
802.1X provides a robust mechanism for controlling network access, ensuring that only authorized users and devices can connect to the network. It's widely used in enterprise environments to enforce security policies and protect against unauthorized access. The following diagram illustrates the process of a client establishing 802.1X communication with the authentication server through the switch.

**Note**

Authentication can also be initiated by the authenticator. Ordinarily, supplicants initiate the authentication process, with an EAPOL-Start frame sent to the authenticator. When the authenticator initiates the authentication process (either on its own, or on receipt of an EAPOL-Start frame), it sends an EAP Request/Identity frame to ask for the username of the supplicant.

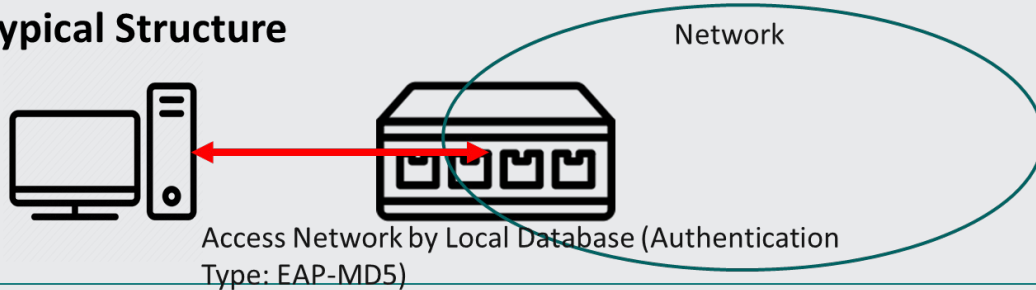
**802.1X Radius**

**Typical Structure**



**802.1X Local**

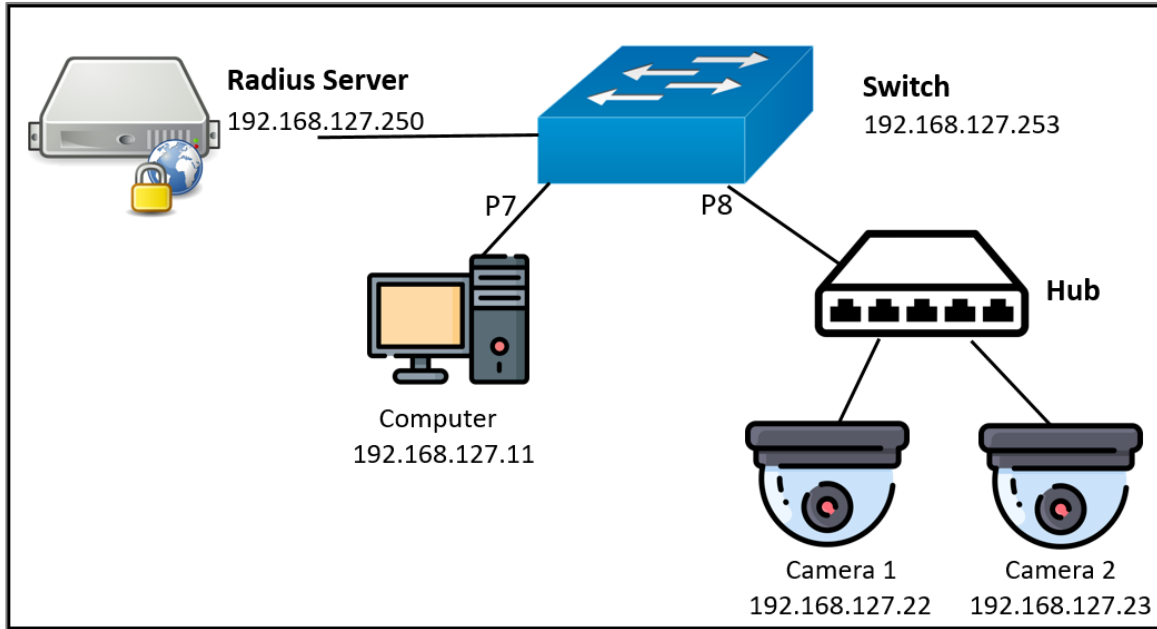
**Typical Structure**



**Example: Configuring a Switch as an Authenticator**

In this example, we configure a Moxa switch as an authenticator, connecting supplicant devices (2 cameras and a computer) to a RADIUS server.

Our sample topology should look like the following:




The topology uses the following roles:

- Supplicants:
  - Cameras 1 and 2, connected to the switch with a hub on port 8
  - Computer, connected on Port 7
- Authenticator: Switch
- Server: RADIUS server

**Before you begin:** This task uses sample values and assumes that a RADIUS server is already configured.


To configure the switch as an authenticator, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Got to **Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X**→**General**.
3. Click **IEEE 802.1X** and choose **Enabled** from the drop-down menu.
4. Click **Authentication Mode**, choose **RADIUS** from the drop-down menu, and then click **Apply** to save your settings.
5. To configure the example computer, click  **[Edit]** corresponding to **Port 7**.  
**Result:** The **Port Settings** screen appears.
6. Configure the following:

7.

Option	Value
Enabled	Enabled
Port Control	Auto
Authentication Session Type	Port-Based
Max. Request	2
Quiet Period	60
Reauthentication	Disabled

8. Click **Apply**.

9. To configure the example cameras, click  **[Edit]** corresponding to **Port 8**.

**Result:** The **Port Settings** screen appears.

10. Configure the following:

Option	Value
Enabled	Enabled
Port Control	Auto
Authentication Session Type	MAC-based
Max. Request	2
Quiet Period	60
Reauthentication	Disabled

11. Click **Apply**.

**What to do next:** You must configure RADIUS server settings before the switch can function as an authenticator.

### Example: Configuring RADIUS Server Settings

The switch must be configured with the RADIUS server settings before it can serve as an authenticator.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X > RADIUS**.
3. Specify all of the following:

Option	Value
<b>Server IP Address 1</b>	192.168.127.11
<b>Auth Port</b>	1812
<b>Share Key</b>	Type your key here
<b>Timeout</b>	5
<b>Retransmit</b>	5

4. Click **Apply** to save changes.

**What to do next:** Once configured, status information will be available under **Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X > Status**.

## IEEE 802.1X

**Menu Path:** [Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X](#)

This page lets you manage your device's IEEE 802.1X authentication feature.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- RADIUS
- Local Database

### IEEE 802.1X - General

**Menu Path:** [Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - General](#)

This page lets you configure your device's IEEE 802.1X settings.

## IEEE 802.1X Settings

IEEE 802.1X \*  
 Disabled ▼

---

Authentication Mode \*  
 Local Database ▼

---

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>IEEE 802.1X</b>	Enable or disable IEEE 802.1X authentication.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Enabling IEEE 802.1X allows VLAN assignment through a RADIUS server, but the VLAN must already exist.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Specify the authentication mode to use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>RADIUS:</b> Use a RADIUS server for authentication.</li> <li><b>Local Database:</b> Use the local database for authentication.</li> </ul>	RADIUS / Local Database	Local Database

## IEEE 802.1X List

Port	Enable	Port Control	Max. Request	Quiet Period	Reauthentication	Reauthentication Period	Server Timeout	Supp Timeout	Tx Period	Port Status
1	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
2	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
3	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
4	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
5	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
6	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
7	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
8	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
9	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
10	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized
11	Disabled	Auto	2	60	Disabled	3600	30	30	30	Authorized

1 - 24 of 24

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether IEEE 802.1X is enabled for the port.
<b>Port Control</b>	Shows the port control method used for the port.
<b>Max. Request</b>	Shows the maximum number of re-authentication requests allowed for the port.
<b>Quiet Period</b>	Shows the amount of time in seconds the device will remain in a quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with a client through the port.
<b>Reauthentication</b>	Shows whether IEEE 802.1X reauthentication is enabled for the port.
<b>Reauthentication Period</b>	Shows the amount of time in seconds to wait in between reauthentication attempts for the port.
<b>Server Timeout</b>	Shows the amount of time in seconds the device will try to retransmit packets to an authentication server.
<b>Supp Timeout</b>	Shows the amount of time in seconds the device will try to retransmit packets to a supplicant, such as a client PC.
<b>Tx Period</b>	Shows the amount of time in seconds the device will try to retransmit the data to a client.

## IEEE 802.1X - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [IEEE 802.1X - General](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the IEEE 802.1X settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

**Port 1 Settings**

Enabled \*  
Disabled

Port Control \*  
Auto

Max. Request \*      Quiet Period \*  
2                              60  
1 - 10                      times      0 - 65535                      sec.

Reauthentication \*      Reauthentication Period \*  
Disabled                      3600  
1 - 65535                      sec.

Server Timeout \*  
30  
1 - 65535                      sec.

Supp Timeout \*  
30  
1 - 65535                      sec.

Tx Period \*  
30  
1 - 65535                      sec.

Copy configurations to ports      i

CANCEL      APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Enabled</b>	Enable or disable IEEE 802.1X authentication for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Port Control</b>	Select the port control method to use for the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Force Unauthorized:</b> The controlled port will stay in the unauthorized state.</li> <li><b>Auto:</b> The controlled port will be set to the authorized or unauthorized state based on the outcome of an authentication exchange between the supplicant and the authentication server.</li> <li><b>Force Authorized:</b> The controlled port will stay in the authorized state.</li> </ul>	Force Unauthorized / Auto / Force Authorized	Auto
<b>Max. Request</b>	Specify how many times to attempt reauthentication for the port.	1 to 10	2
<b>Quiet Period</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device will remain in a quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with a client through the port.	0 to 65535	60
<b>Reauthentication</b>	Enable/disable IEEE 802.1X reauthentication for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Reauthentication Period</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds to wait in between reauthentication attempts for the port.	1 to 65535	3600

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server Timeout</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device will try to retransmit packets to an authentication server.	1 to 65535	30
<b>Supp Timeout</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device will try to retransmit packets to a supplicant, such as a client PC.	1 to 65535	30
<b>Tx Period</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device will try to retransmit the data to a client.	1 to 65535	30
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## IEEE 802.1X - RADIUS

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - RADIUS

This page lets you specify a RADIUS server to use for IEEE 802.1X authentication. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### Note

The system will use the primary RADIUS server by default. If the primary RADIUS server is unavailable, it will use the secondary RADIUS server.

## IEEE 802.1X RADIUS Settings

#### Note

802.1X and MAC authentication bypass share the same RADIUS server settings; changes made here will also affect the other feature.

802.1X and MAC Authentication Bypass share the same RADIUS server.

Server IP Address 1 \*  Auth Port \*   
1 - 65535

Share Key \*  0 / 46

Timeout \*  1 - 120 sec. Retransmit \*  1 - 254 times

Server IP Address 2  Auth Port   
1 - 65535

Share Key  0 / 46

Timeout  1 - 120 sec. Retransmit  1 - 254 times

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address 1/2</b>	Specify the IP address of the 1st/2nd server.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Auth Port</b>	Specify the authentication port number for the RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	N/A
<b>Share Key</b>	Specify the share key for the server.	0 to 46 characters	N/A
<b>Timeout</b>	Specify how long to wait in seconds before a device is logged out.	1 to 120	N/A
<b>Retransmit</b>	Specify how many times to retry data transmission.	1 to 254	N/A

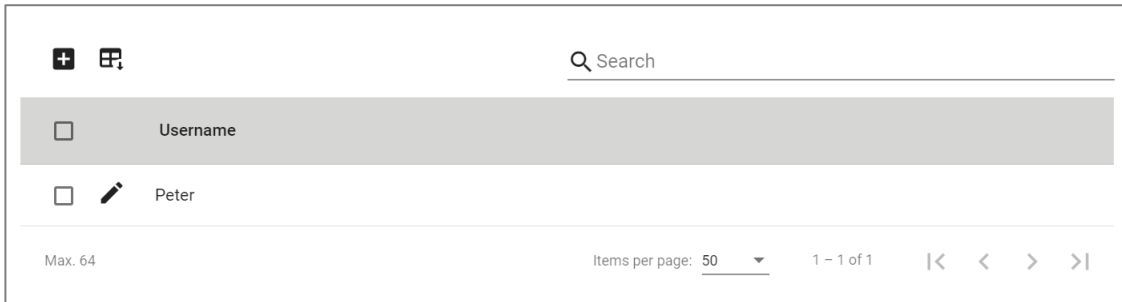
## IEEE 802.1X - Local Database

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - Local Database

This page lets you create local database user accounts to use with IEEE 802.1X authentication.

## 🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 64 IEEE 802.1X local database accounts.



The screenshot shows a table of user accounts. At the top left, there are icons for adding (+) and editing (🔧). A search bar labeled 'Search' is on the top right. The table has two rows: the first row is highlighted in grey and contains a checkbox, the text 'Username', and a search icon; the second row contains a checkbox, an edit icon, and the name 'Peter'. Below the table, it says 'Max. 64'. At the bottom, there is a pagination control showing 'Items per page: 50' and '1 - 1 of 1' with navigation arrows.

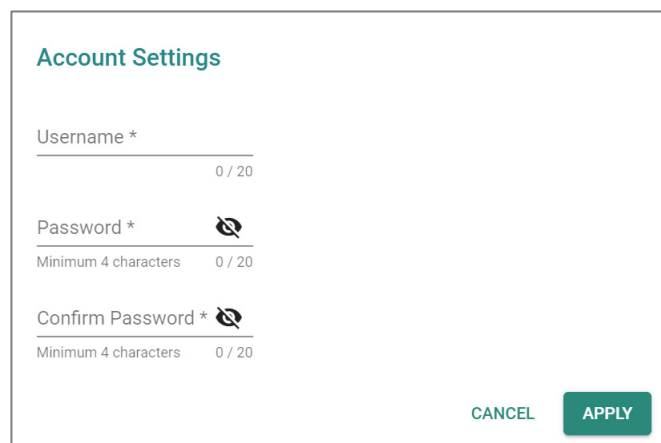
UI Setting	Description
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username of the account.

## IEEE 802.1X - Local Database - Account Settings

**Menu Path: Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - Local Database**

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - Local Database** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new user account for IEEE 802.1X authentication.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.



The 'Account Settings' dialog box contains three input fields: 'Username \*' with a character count of '0 / 20'; 'Password \*' with a minimum requirement of 'Minimum 4 characters' and a character count of '0 / 20'; and 'Confirm Password \*' with the same minimum requirement and character count. There are eye icons to toggle password visibility. At the bottom right, there are 'CANCEL' and 'APPLY' buttons.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Username</b>	Specify the username for this account.	1 to 20 characters	N/A
<b>Password</b>	Specify the password for this user account.	4 to 20 characters	N/A
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Re-enter the password for this user account.	4 to 20 characters	N/A

## About MAC Authentication Bypass

MAC Authentication Bypass (MAB) allows network access based on a device's Media Access Control (MAC) address, bypassing traditional username/password authentication methods like 802.1X. This feature is particularly useful for granting access to devices that cannot support more advanced authentication protocols.

## How MAC Authentication Bypass Works

MAB operates like a VIP list for your network. When a device connects, the network checks its MAC address against an approved list. If the MAC address is recognized, the device is granted access without needing additional authentication. If the MAC address isn't on the list, access is denied.

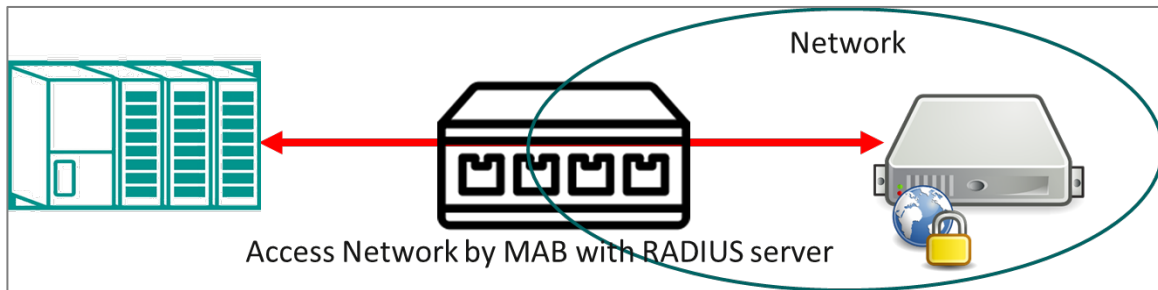
## When to Use MAB

- **Legacy Devices:** Some older devices may not support advanced authentication methods like 802.1X. MAB provides a way to allow these devices to connect using their MAC address.

While MAB is convenient, it's important to note that MAC addresses can be spoofed, making this method less secure compared to more robust authentication techniques. Therefore, MAB should be used in scenarios where ease of access is prioritized over stringent security measures.

## Configuring MAC Authentication Bypass

To add a device to MAC Authentication Bypass, first add the MAC address of the bypass device to the **Local Database**, then enable **MAC Authentication Bypass** on the Port the bypass device is attached to.



This procedure assumes that devices on your network are authenticated using either a RADIUS server or a local database.

**Note**

MAC addresses are easily spoofed, and are not generally accepted as adequate means of authentication without other forms of security. Make sure that you have fully evaluated the security risks associated with this feature before use in a sensitive environment.

To configure MAC Authentication Bypass, do the following:

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass**, click on the **Local Database** tab, and then click **[Add]**.

The Create Entry screen appears.

3. Specify the **MAC Address** of the device to be added to the local database, and then click **Create**.

The MAC address appears in the table.

4. Click the **General** tab at the top of the screen, and verify that **MAC Authentication Bypass** is **Enabled**.
5. Locate the port the bypass device is attached to, and then click the corresponding **[Edit]** button.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

6. Set **MAC Authentication Bypass** to **Enabled**, and then click **Apply**.

The bypass device will now be authenticated for network access.

## MAC Authentication Bypass

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass

This page lets you configure the MAC Authentication Bypass settings.

This page includes these tabs:

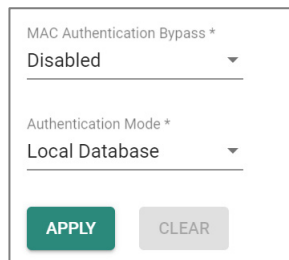
- General
- RADIUS
- Local Database

### MAC Authentication Bypass - General

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - General

This page lets you configure general settings for MAC authentication bypass.

### MAC Authentication Bypass Settings











MAC Authentication Bypass \*  
Disabled

Authentication Mode \*  
Local Database

APPLY CLEAR

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MAC Authentication Bypass</b>	Enable or disable MAC authentication bypass.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Specify the authentication mode for MAC authentication bypass.	RADIUS / Local Database	Local Database

## MAC Authentication Bypass List


Q Search					
Port	MAB	Quiet Period (sec.)	Reauthentication	Reauth Period (sec.)	
 1	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 2	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 3	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 4	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 5	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 6	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 7	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	
 8	Disabled	60	Disabled	3600	

1 - 24 of 24

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>MAB</b>	Shows whether MAC Authentication Bypass is enabled for the port.
<b>Quiet Period</b>	Show the amount of time in seconds the device will remain in a quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with a client through the port.
<b>Reauthentication</b>	Shows whether IEEE 802.1X reauthentication is enabled for the port.
<b>Reauthentication Period</b>	Shows the amount of time in seconds to wait in between reauthentication attempts for the port.

### MAC Authentication Bypass - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - General

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the MAC Authentication Bypass settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

MAC Authentication Bypass \*

Quiet Period \*  
  
5 - 300 sec.

Reauthentication \*

Reauth Period \*  
  
60 - 65535 sec.

Copy configurations to ports   
i

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MAC Authentication Bypass</b>	Enable or disable MAC Authentication Bypass for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Quiet Period</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds the device will remain in a quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with a client through the port.	5 to 300	60 sec.
<b>Reauthentication</b>	Enable or disable IEEE 802.1X reauthentication for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Reauthentication Period</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds to wait in between reauthentication attempts for the port.	60 to 65535	3600 sec.
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## MAC Authentication Bypass - RADIUS

**Menu Path: Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - RADIUS**

This page lets you configure the RADIUS settings for MAC authentication bypass.

**Note**

Enabling MAC Authentication Bypass allows VLAN assignment through a RADIUS server, but the VLAN must already exist.



**Note**

802.1X and MAC authentication bypass share the same RADIUS server settings; changes made here will also affect the other feature.

802.1X and MAC Authentication Bypass share the same RADIUS server.

Server IP Address 1 *	Auth Port *
192.168.127.2	1812
	1 - 65535

Share Key *	 
0 / 46	



  

Timeout *	Retransmit *
10	2
1 - 120 sec.	1 - 254 times

Server IP Address 2	Auth Port
	1 - 65535

Share Key	 
0 / 46	

Timeout	Retransmit
1 - 120 sec.	1 - 254 times

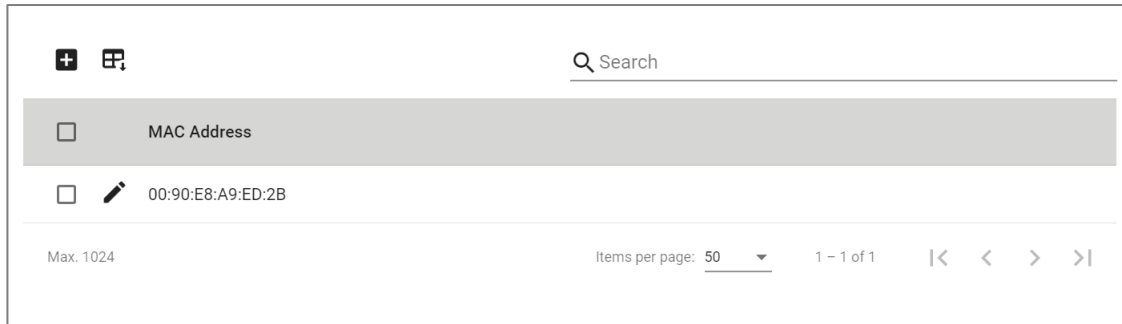
**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address 1/2</b>	Specify the IP address of the 1st/2nd server.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>Auth Port</b>	Specify the authentication port number for the RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	N/A
<b>Share Key</b>	Specify the share key for the server.	0 to 46 characters	N/A
<b>Timeout</b>	Specify how long to wait in seconds before a device is logged out.	1 to 120	N/A
<b>Retransmit</b>	Specify how many times to retry data transmission.	1 to 254	N/A

## MAC Authentication Bypass - Local Database

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - Local Database

This page lets you manage local database entries for MAC authentication bypass.



UI Setting	Description
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address used for MAC authentication bypass.

## MAC Authentication Bypass - Local Database - Create Entry

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - Local Database

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > MAC Authentication Bypass - Local Database** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new MAC authentication bypass entry.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.



The 'Create Entry' dialog box has a title bar 'Create Entry'. It contains a text input field labeled 'MAC Address \*' with an information icon (i) to its right. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'CANCEL' and 'CREATE'.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the MAC address to use for MAC authentication bypass.	Valid unicast MAC address	N/A

## Port Security

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > Port Security

This page lets you enable and configure a port security mode for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Static Port Lock (if **Static Port Lock** is selected for **Port Security Mode**)
- MAC Sticky (if **MAC Sticky** is selected for **Port Security Mode**)

### Port Security - General

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > Port Security - General

This page lets you enable port security and select a port security mode.

#### Port Security Settings

**Port Security**

General    Static Port Lock

Port Security \*  
Enabled

Port Security mode \*  
Static Port Lock

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Security</b>	Enable or disable port security.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Port Security Mode</b>	Select a port security mode. <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>⚠ Warning</b></p> <p>When changing the port security mode, all configured port security entries in the Static Port Lock/MAC Sticky tab will be deleted.</p> </div>	Static Port Lock / MAC Sticky	Static Port Lock

### Port Security List - Static Port Lock





If **Port Security Mode** is set to **Static Port Lock**, the following table will appear.

<span style="float: left;">↻</span> <span style="float: right;">🔍 Search</span>			
Port	Static Port Lock	Manually Configured Address	
1/1	Disabled	0	
1/2	Enabled	1	
1/3	Disabled	0	

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Static Port Lock</b>	Shows whether static port lock is enabled for the port.
<b>Manually Configured Address</b>	Shows the number of MAC addresses manually configured for the port.

### Port Security List - MAC Sticky


If **Port Security Mode** is set to **MAC Sticky**, the following table will appear.

Port	MAC Sticky	Address Limit	Secure Action	Current Address	Manually Configured Address	Violation
 1/1	Disabled	1	Packet Drop	0	0	No
 1/2	Enabled	20	Packet Drop	1	1	No
 1/3	Disabled	1	Packet Drop	0	0	No
 1/4	Disabled	1	Packet Drop	0	0	No

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>MAC Sticky</b>	Shows whether MAC Sticky mode is enabled for the port.
<b>Address Limit</b>	Shows the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn for the port.
<b>Secure Action</b>	Shows the action the device will take when the number of MAC addresses exceeds the address limit.
<b>Current Address</b>	Shows the current number of MAC addresses learned for the port.
<b>Manually Configured Address</b>	Shows the number of manually configured MAC addresses for the port.
<b>Violation</b>	Shows whether there have been any violations for the port.

## Port Security - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Port Security - General

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > Port Security - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure port security settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

If **Port Security Mode** is set to **Static Port Lock**, the following dialog will appear when editing port security settings.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

Static Port Lock \*

Disabled ▼

---

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Static Port Lock</b>	Enable or disable Static Port Lock for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

If **Port Security Mode** is set to **MAC Sticky**, the following dialog will appear when editing port security settings.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

MAC Sticky \*

Disabled ▼

---

Address Limit \*

1 i

1 - 1001

Secure Action \*

Packet Drop ▼

---

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>MAC Sticky</b>	Enable or disable MAC Sticky for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Address Limit</b>	Specify the maximum number of the learned and configured MAC addresses allowed for the port.	1 to 1001	1
	<p><span style="color: #008080;">✎</span> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Changing the address limit will clear all currently configured MAC addresses for the port.</p>		

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Secure Action</b>	Specify the action to take when a violation occurs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Port Shutdown:</b> The port will be shut down.</li> <li>• <b>Packet Drop:</b> Packets for the additional MAC addresses will be dropped.</li> </ul>	Port Shutdown / Packet Drop	Packet Drop

## About Static Port Lock

Static Port Lock provides port-based security by letting you specify which device MAC addresses are allowed to access the network through a specific port. Packets sent from unknown devices or from configured devices with mismatching ports will be dropped. In other words, only packets from devices with allowed MAC addresses can be sent to the specific port, helping secure network data transmissions.

### Static Port Lock

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Port Security - Static Port Lock](#)

This page lets you configure Static Port Lock.

#### ⚠ Limitations

You can create up to 2048 static port lock entries.

### Static Port Lock - Port Security Info

## Port Security

General
Static Port Lock

### Port Security Info

Port Security mode	Total Trust Hosts	The max. number of addresses in the system
Static Port Lock	0	1024

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port Security mode</b>	Shows the port security mode being used.
<b>Total Trust Hosts</b>	Shows the number of trusted hosts allowed to access the network.
<b>The max. number of addresses in the system</b>	Shows the maximum number of MAC addresses allowed to be learned or specified for port security.

## Static Port Lock - Port List

						Search
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Type	Effective	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1/2	1	00:B0:D0:63:C2:26	Lock Configured	Yes	

Max. 1024 Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN applied to the port.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address of the device which is used as a reliable source for network access.
<b>Type</b>	Shows how the entry was created.
<b>Effective</b>	Shows whether the entry is effective.
	<p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If an entry is not effective, it may have an invalid interface set for it.</p>

## Static Port Lock - Add Entry Settings

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Port Security - Static Port Lock

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > Port Security - Static Port Lock** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure static port lock settings for a port.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

### Edit Entry Settings

Port \* ▼

---

VLAN ID \*

---

MAC Address \* i

---

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port</b>	Select the port to add an entry for.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to use with the port.	Valid VLAN ID	N/A
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the MAC address of the device that will be used as the reliable source for network access.	Valid MAC address	N/A

## About MAC Sticky

MAC Sticky is a function that allows you to configure the maximum number of MAC addresses that a port can "learn." You can also configure what action should be taken when a new MAC address tries to access a port after the maximum number of MAC addresses have already been learned.

### How MAC Sticky Works

In MAC Sticky mode, you can set a proper limit number and then configure trusted devices manually, or let the device configure trusted devices automatically. Aside from dropping packets as a response to any violations, you can also configure ports to enter "port shutdown" and achieve a strict security guarantee. When a violation is registered

on a port, the port will shut down and an administrator will receive a notification to perform a check.

## MAC Sticky

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Port Security - MAC Sticky

This page lets you configure MAC Sticky.

#### Note

This page will only appear when Port Security Mode is set to MAC Sticky.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 1024 MAC Sticky entries.

## MAC Sticky - Port Security Info

### Port Security

General    **MAC Sticky**

#### Port Security Info

Port Security mode	Total Trust Hosts	The max. number of addresses in the system
MAC Sticky	0	1024

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port Security mode</b>	Shows the port security mode being used.
<b>Total Trust Hosts</b>	Shows the number of trusted hosts allowed to access the network.
<b>The max. number of addresses in the system</b>	Shows the maximum number of MAC addresses allowed to be learned or specified for port security.

## MAC Sticky - Port List

						Search
<input type="checkbox"/>	Port	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Type	Effective	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1/2	1	00:B0:D0:63:C2:26	Sticky Configured	Yes	

Max. 1024 Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN applied to the port.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address of the device which is used as a reliable source for network access.
<b>Type</b>	Shows how the entry was created.
<b>Effective</b>	Shows whether the entry is effective.

**Note**  
If an entry is not effective, it may have an invalid interface set for it.

## MAC Sticky - Create Entry Settings

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Port Security - MAC Sticky

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > Port Security - MAC Sticky** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure MAC Sticky settings for a port.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

### Edit Entry Settings

Port \* ▼

---

VLAN ID \*

---

MAC Address \* i

---

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port</b>	Select the port to add an entry for.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to use with the port.	Valid VLAN ID	N/A
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the MAC address of the device that will be used as the reliable source for network access.	Valid MAC address	N/A

## About Traffic Storm Control








A traffic storm can happen when packets flood the network and cause excessive traffic, slowing down network performance. To counter this, Traffic Storm Control provides an efficient design to prevent the network from flooding caused by a broadcast, multicast, or unicast traffic storm on a physical network layer. Traffic Storm Control can handle packets from both ingress and egress data.

## Traffic Storm Control

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Traffic Storm Control](#)

This page lets you configure traffic storm control for each port.


## Traffic Storm Control

	Port	Broadcast	Multicast	DLF	Threshold (fps)
	1	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700
	2	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700
	3	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700
	4	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700
	5	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700
	6	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700
	7	Enabled	Disabled	Disabled	12700

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Broadcast</b>	Shows whether traffic storm control is enabled for broadcast packets for the port.
<b>Multicast</b>	Shows whether traffic storm control is enabled for multicast packets for the port.
<b>DLF</b>	Shows whether traffic storm control is enabled for DLF for the port.
<b>Threshold</b>	Shows the traffic storm threshold value in fps for the port.

### Traffic Storm Control - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Traffic Storm Control](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > Traffic Storm Control** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure traffic storm control for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

Broadcast \*  
Enabled ▼

Multicast \*  
Disabled ▼

DLF \*  
Disabled ▼

Threshold \*  
12700 i  
625 - 148810 fps

Copy configurations to ports ▼ i

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Broadcast</b>	Enable or disable traffic storm control for broadcast packets for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Multicast</b>	Enable or disable traffic storm control for multicast packets for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>DLF</b>	Enable or disable traffic storm control for DLF packets for the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Threshold</b>	Specify the threshold in frames per second to reach before detecting a traffic storm for the port.	625 to 14881000	12700 fps
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About Access Control Lists

Access Control Lists (ACLs) help you control network traffic based on specific criteria.

Here's an overview of some different kinds of ACLs:

- **Security:** ACLs provide a means to control access to network resources based on specific criteria such as source or destination IP addresses, MAC addresses, protocols, or port numbers. By implementing ACLs, you can enforce security policies and restrict unauthorized access to sensitive resources.
- **Traffic Management:** ACLs allow you to manage network traffic by selectively permitting or denying certain types of traffic. This helps optimize network performance by prioritizing critical traffic and controlling bandwidth usage.
- **Compliance:** In many industries, organizations are required to comply with security regulations and standards that mandate access control measures. By enabling ACLs, you can implement and demonstrate compliance with these requirements and mitigate security risks.
- **Protection Against Attacks:** ACLs can help protect networks against various types of attacks by blocking malicious traffic before it reaches its intended destination.
- **Preventing Unauthorized Access:** By implementing ACLs, you can prevent unauthorized users or devices from accessing network resources, reducing the risk of data breaches and unauthorized activities.

Overall, enabling ACLs enhances network security, improves traffic management, helps ensure compliance with regulations, and protects against various threats and attacks.

## Access Control Lists In Depth

In an Ethernet switch, Access Control Lists (ACLs) work by examining incoming or outgoing packets and making decisions based on predefined rules. Each access list is a filter. When a packet enters into or exits from a switch, ACL will compare the packet to the rules in the access lists, starting from the first rule. If a packet is rejected or accepted by the first rule, the switch will drop or pass this packet directly without checking the rest of the lower-priority rules.

Here's how it typically works:

1. **Packet Inspection:** When a packet arrives at a switch port, the switch inspects the packet headers, including source and destination MAC addresses, IP addresses, and port numbers.
2. **ACL Lookup:** The switch compares the packet's header information against the ACL rules configured on the switch. These rules define which types of traffic are

allowed or denied based on specific criteria such as MAC addresses, IP addresses, protocols, or port numbers.

3. **Decision Making:** Based on the ACL rules, the switch decides whether to permit or deny the packet. If the packet matches an ACL rule that permits the traffic, it is forwarded according to the switch's normal forwarding behavior. If the packet matches an ACL rule that denies the traffic, it is either dropped or forwarded to a specified destination, depending on the ACL configuration.
4. **Logging and Statistics:** Some switches may also provide logging and statistical features for ACLs, allowing administrators to monitor and analyze network traffic and ACL rule matches.

Overall, ACLs in Ethernet switches provide a mechanism for controlling access to network resources based on specific criteria, helping to enforce security policies and manage network traffic.

## Access Control List

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Access Control List](#)

This page lets you configure the access control list and its related settings.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

### Access Control List - Settings

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Access Control List - Settings](#)

This page lets you configure your device's access control lists.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 32 access lists.

## Access Control List

Access Control List		
	Index	Name
<input type="checkbox"/>		
<input type="checkbox"/>	MAC-1	Test 2
<input type="checkbox"/>	IP-1	Test 1

Max. 32      Items per page: 5      1 - 2 of 2      |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the access list type and its index value.
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the access list.

### Create an Access List

#### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Access Control List - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > Access Control List - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an access list.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new list.

### Create an Access List

Access List Type \*  ⓘ

Index \*  ⓘ

Name  0 / 127

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Access List Type</b>	Specify the access list type to determine how it should control access.	IP-based / MAC-based	N/A
<b>Index</b>	Specify an index value for the access list.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Priority is determined by two factors: index value and address type.</p> <p>Lower index values indicate higher priority. In cases where entries share the same index, MAC addresses take precedence over IP addresses.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of index values	N/A
<b>Name</b>	Specify a name for the access list.	0 to 127 characters	N/A

## ACL Table Settings

You can switch between ACL tables by using the drop-down menu.

**ACL Table of IP-1** ▼

Active Interface Type \*

Port-based ▼

---

Active Ingress Ports ▼ ⓘ

---

Active Egress Ports ▼ ⓘ

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Active Interface Type</b>	Specify the active interface type.	Port-based / VLAN-based	Port-based
<b>Active Ingress Ports</b>	Specify the active ingress ports.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Active Egress Ports</b>	Specify the active egress ports.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## ACL Rule List (IP-based)

If the currently displayed ACL table is **IP-based**, the following table will appear.

Index	ACL Rule	Rule Type	Protocol	Source	Destination	DSCP	Optional Parameter	Action
1	Enabled	Permit	IGMP	196.255.1.25/ 255.255.255.255	196.255.1.45/ 255.255.255.255	30	IGMP Type: 23	Redirect to port 2 Remark DSCP to 2

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index number for the ACL rule.
<b>ACL Rule</b>	Shows whether the ACL rule is enabled.
<b>Rule Type</b>	Shows the rule type.
<b>Protocol</b>	Show the protocol used for the ACL rule.
<b>Source</b>	Shows the source IP address with subnet mask for the ACL rule.
<b>Destination</b>	Shows the destination IP address with subnet mask for the ACL rule.
<b>DSCP</b>	Shows the DSCP value used to prioritize packets for the ACL rule.
<b>Optional Parameter</b>	Show the relevant parameters for the selected protocol.
<b>Action</b>	Show whether the redirect action or DSCP remark are enabled. If enabled, their respective configuration settings will be shown.

## ACL Rule List (MAC-based)

If the currently displayed ACL table is **MAC-based**, the following table will appear.

Index	ACL Rule	Rule Type	EtherType	Source	Destination	VLAN ID	CoS	Action
1	Enabled	Permit	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	None

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index number for the ACL rule.
<b>ACL Rule</b>	Shows whether the ACL rule is enabled.
<b>Rule Type</b>	Shows the rule type.
<b>EtherType</b>	Shows the EtherType for the ACL rule.
<b>Source</b>	Shows the source MAC address with mask for the ACL rule.
<b>Destination</b>	Shows the destination MAC address with mask for the ACL rule.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID for the ACL rule.
<b>CoS</b>	Shows the CoS value used to prioritize packets for the ACL rule.
<b>Optional Parameter</b>	Shows the relevant parameters for the selected EtherType.
<b>Action</b>	Shows whether the redirect action or CoS remark are enabled for the ACL rule. If enabled, their respective configuration settings will be shown.

## ACL Rule List - Create Rule

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Access Control List - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > Access Control List - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a rule for the displayed ACL table.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new rule.

If the currently displayed ACL table is **IP-based**, the following table will appear.

**Create Rule Index 1 for IP-1**

Rule Index 1 \*  
Enabled

Rule Type \*  
Permit

Protocol  
Any

Source IP Address  
Any

Source IP Mask

Destination IP Address  
Any

Destination IP Mask

DSCP  
Any  
0 - 63

Action  
Redirect \*  
Disabled

DSCP Remark  
Disabled  
0 - 63

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Rule Index</b>	Enable or disable the rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Rule Type</b>	Specify the rule type.	Permit / Deny	N/A
<b>Protocol</b>	Specify the protocol for the ACL rule.	TCP / UDP / ICMP / IGMP / OSPF / User-defined	Any
<b>Source IP Address</b>	Specify the source IP address.	Valid IP address	Any
<b>Source IP Mask</b>	Specify the source IP subnet mask.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A
<b>Destination IP Address</b>	Specify the destination IP address.	Valid IP address	Any
<b>Destination IP Mask</b>	Specify the destination IP subnet mask.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A
<b>DSCP</b>	Specify a DSCP value to prioritize packets for the ACL rule.	0 to 63	Any
<b>Action - Redirect (If Rule Type is Permit)</b>	Enable or disable redirects.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Action - DSCP Remark</b> <b>(If Rule Type is Permit)</b>	Enable adding a DSCP remark by specifying a DSCP Remark value. To disable it, leave this blank.	0 to 63	Disabled

If the displayed ACL table is **MAC-based**, the following dialog will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Rule Index</b>	Enable or disable the rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Rule Type</b>	Specify the rule type.	Permit / Deny	N/A
<b>EtherType</b>	Specify the EtherType for the ACL rule.	GOOSE / SMV / User-defined	Any
<b>Source MAC Address</b>	Specify a source MAC address.	Valid MAC address	Any
<b>Source MAC Mask</b>	Select a source MAC mask.	Drop-down list of MAC masks	N/A
<b>Destination MAC Address</b>	Specify a destination MAC address.	Valid MAC address	Any

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Destination MAC Mask</b>	Specify a destination MAC mask.	Drop-down list of MAC masks	N/A
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID for the ACL rule.	1 to 4094	Any
<b>CoS</b>	Specify a CoS value to prioritize packets for the ACL rule.	0 to 7	Any
<b>Action - Redirect (If Rule Type is Permit)</b>	Enable or disable redirects.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Action - CoS Remark (If Rule Type is Permit)</b>	Enable adding a CoS remark by specifying a CoS Remark value. To disable it, leave this blank.	0 to 7	Disabled

## Access Control List - Status

**Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Access Control List - Status**

This page lets you view ACL status information for your device.

## ACL Summary

ACL Summary

Number of activated ACLs (Max. 16)  
1

Access Control List

Search

Index	Name	Activated	Direction
MAC-1	Test 2	Activated	Both
IP-1	test	Deactivated	--

Items per page: 5 | 1 - 2 of 2 | < > >>

UI Setting	Description
<b>Number of activated ACLs (Max. 16)</b>	Shows the number of activated ACLs.

## Access Control List - Status

**ACL Summary**

Number of activated ACLs (Max. 16)  
1

**Access Control List**

Search

Index	Name	Activated	Direction
MAC-1	Test 2	Activated	Both
IP-1	test	Deactivated	---

Items per page: 5 | 1 - 2 of 2 | < > >>

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the ACL type and its index value.
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the ACL.
<b>Activated</b>	Shows whether the ACL is enabled.
<b>Direction</b>	Shows the direction of the ACL.

## ACL Table Status - IP-index

If the selected ACL uses **IP-index**, the following table will appear.

**ACL Table of IP-1**

Name  
test

Active Ingress Ports  
---

Active Egress Ports  
---

Search

Index	ACL Rule	Rule Type	Protocol	Source	Destination	DSCP	Optional Parameter	Action	Hit Count
1	Enabled	Permit	IGMP	196.255.1.25/ 255.255.255.255	196.255.1.45/ 255.255.255.255	30	IGMP Type: 23	Redirect to port 2 Remark DSCP to 2	0

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the access list.
<b>Active Ingress Port</b>	Shows the active ingress ports configured.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Active Egress Port</b>	Shows the active egress ports configured.
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index number for the ACL rule.
<b>ACL Rule</b>	Shows whether the ACL rule is enabled.
<b>Rule Type</b>	Shows the rule type.
<b>Protocol</b>	Shows the protocol used for the ACL rule.
<b>Source</b>	Shows the source IP address with its subnet mask.
<b>Destination</b>	Shows the destination IP address with its subnet mask.
<b>DSCP</b>	Shows the DSCP value specified to differentiate the prioritization of IP packets.
<b>Optional Parameter</b>	Shows the relevant parameters for the selected protocol.
<b>Action</b>	Shows whether the redirect action and DSCP remark are enabled. If enabled, shows their respective configuration settings.
<b>Hit Count</b>	Shows the hit count of the ACL rule.

### ACL Table Status - MAC-index

If the selected ACL uses **MAC-index**, the following table will appear.

ACL Table of MAC-1

Name: Test 2

Active Ingress Ports: 1, 3      Active Egress Ports: 4, 5

Search

Index	ACL Rule	Rule Type	EtherType	Source	Destination	VLAN ID	CoS	Action	Hit Count
1	Enabled	Permit	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	None	0

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the access list.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Active Ingress Port</b>	Shows the active ingress ports configured.
<b>Active Egress Port</b>	Shows the active egress ports configured.
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index number for the ACL rule.
<b>ACL Rule</b>	Shows whether the ACL rule is enabled.
<b>Rule Type</b>	Shows the rule type.
<b>EtherType</b>	Shows the EtherType used for the ACL rule.
<b>Source</b>	Shows the source MAC address with its mask.
<b>Destination</b>	Shows the destination MAC address with its mask.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID.
<b>CoS</b>	Shows the CoS value specified to differentiate the prioritization of packets.
<b>Optional Parameter</b>	Shows the relevant parameters for the selected EtherType.
<b>Action</b>	Shows whether the redirect action and CoS remark are enabled. If enabled, shows their respective configuration settings.
<b>Hit Count</b>	Shows the hit count of the ACL rule.

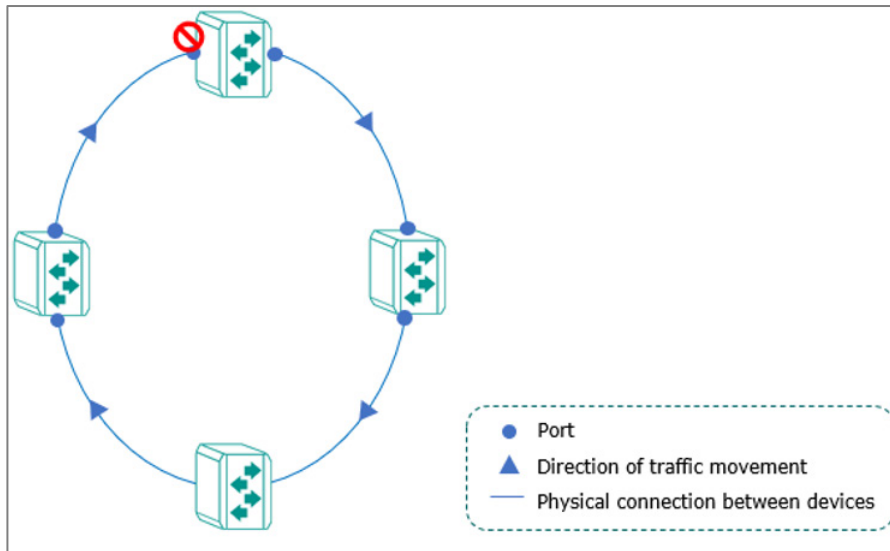
## About Network Loop Protection

Network Loop Protection helps avoid network loops by disabling ports when looping is detected in the network topology. This is designed for devices that do not support redundant protocols, when redundant protocols are not configured, or if the redundant protocol fails.

### Network Loop Protection In Depth

Network Loop Protection prevents looping by sending detection packets through the network topology to all ports. After receiving a packet, a port will check if the packet was sent by the device itself. If so, the receiving port will be disabled to prevent looping.

Network loop protection features cannot prevent ports from activating redundancy protocols—such as STP, RSTP, MSTP, Turbo Ring, Ring Coupling, Turbo Chain, Dual Homing, or Link Aggregation—from looping, as these ports do not process detection packets sent by the Network Loop Protection features.



## Network Loop Protection

**Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Network Loop Protection**

This page lets you manage network loop protection for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

### Network Loop Protection - Settings

**Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Network Loop Protection - Settings**

This page lets you enable network loop protection settings.

## Network Loop Protection Settings

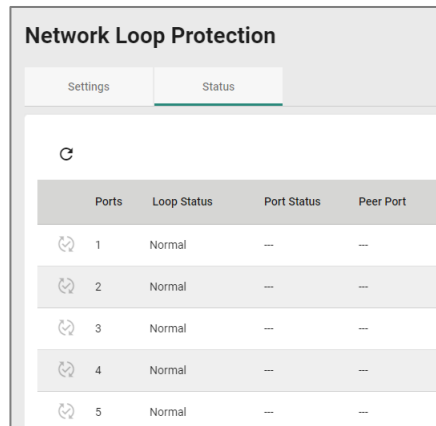
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Network Loop Protection</b>	Enable or disable the network loop protection.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Detect Interval</b>	Specify the detect interval in seconds.	1 to 30	10

## Network Loop Protection - Status

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Network Loop Protection - Status](#)

This page lets you view the status of network loop protection.

## Network Loop Protection - Port List



The screenshot shows the 'Network Loop Protection' interface with the 'Status' tab selected. It displays a table with the following data:

Ports	Loop Status	Port Status	Peer Port
1	Normal	--	--
2	Normal	--	--
3	Normal	--	--
4	Normal	--	--
5	Normal	--	--

UI Setting	Description
<b>Ports</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Loop Status</b>	Show the loop status of the port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Normal:</b> The port is not looping.</li><li>• <b>Looping:</b> The port is looping.</li></ul>
<b>Port Status</b>	Shows the port status of the specific port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Disabled:</b> The port is disabled due to a port shutdown or detected loop.</li></ul>
<b>Peer Port</b>	Shows the port where the looping frames are from when detecting a loop.

## About Binding Databases

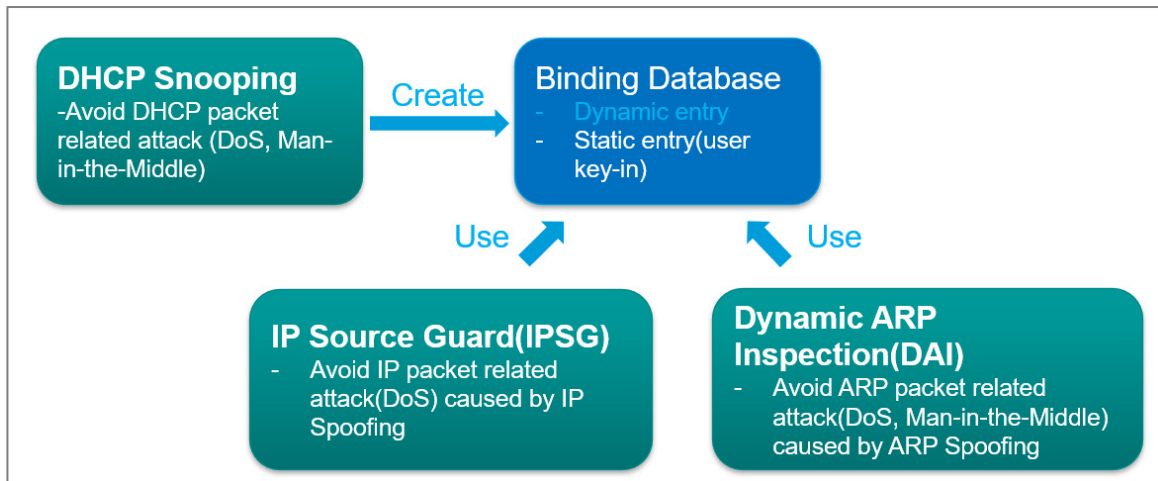
A binding database acts as an allowlist for IP Source Guard and Dynamic ARP Inspection to help protect against unauthorized traffic.

### Binding Databases In Depth

A binding database consists of dynamic entries and static entries.

- **Dynamic Entries:** Generated automatically after a DHCP client successfully obtains an IP while DHCP snooping is enabled. The entry will be released after exceeding the IP lease time or upon disabling DHCP snooping.
- **Static Entries:** User-generated/edited entry. The entry will be released only when a user deletes it.

Binding database entries consist of VLAN IDs, MAC addresses, ports, and IP addresses. This information forms an allowlist used by IP Source Guard to filter IP packets, and for Dynamic ARP Inspection to filter ARP packets. This helps prevent spoofing attacks such as man-in-the-middle and denial-of-service attacks.



## Configuring Binding Database

Binding Database is the base for IP Source Guard and Dynamic ARP Inspection, there are two ways to populate Binding Database entries, including entries automatically created after enabling DHCP Snooping or manually entries created by users.

### Before you begin:

- Determine which kind of Binding Database Entries to use: Static, or Dynamic. See above for guidelines to make this determination.

## Configuring Dynamic Binding Database Entries

To configure a Dynamic Binding Database entry:

1. Go to **Security > Network Security > DHCP Snooping**.
2. Click DHCP Snooping and then select Enable, optionally specify a VLAN ID, and then click Apply.
3. Under Port Settings, click **Edit (✎)** to configure the corresponding port binding settings.

4. Configure the following:
  - **Status**• **Copy configurations to ports**
5. Click **Apply**

**Results:** The Binding Database entries will be created upon a successful DHCP transaction on DHCP Snooping-enabled Untrusted ports. You can view the binding database entries by going to **Security > Network Security > Binding Database > Binding Status**.

### Configuring Static Binding Database Entries

To configure a Static Binding Database Entry:

1. Go to **Security > Network Security > Binding Database.> Binding Setting**.
2. Click (Add), and then specify all of the following:
  - **VLAN ID**• **MAC Address**• **Port**• **IP Address**
3. Click **Create** to add the entry to the database.

**Results:** The Binding Database entries will be created upon a successful DHCP transaction on DHCP Snooping-enabled Untrusted ports. You can view the binding database entries by going to **Security > Network Security > Binding Database > Binding Status**.

## Binding Database

**Menu Path:** [Security > Network Security > Binding Database](#)

This page lets you view and manage the binding database, which can be used for an allowlist for IP Source Guard or Dynamic ARP Inspection.

This page includes these tabs:

- Binding Settings
- Binding Status

## Binding Settings

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > Binding Database - Binding Settings

This page lets you manage the static entries you want to use for an allowlist.

### 🔑 Limitations

You can create up to 704 binding database entries, including dynamic and static entries. Entries will stop being generated or being user-addable when this limit is reached. More entries can only be added when existing entries are released, bringing the total number below 704.

## Binding Settings List

### Binding Database

Binding Settings | Binding Status

+

<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Port	IP Address
--------------------------	---------	-------------	------	------------

Max. 32 of Binding Status table

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID for the static entry.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address for the static entry.
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port for the static entry.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for the static entry.

## Create a Binding Database Static Entry

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > Binding Database - Binding Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Network Security > Binding Database - Binding Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you a new static entry to be an allowlist base for IP Source Guard or Dynamic ARP Inspection.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

### Create a Binding Database Static Entry

VLAN ID \*       MAC Address \*

Port \*

IP Address \*

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to allowlist for IP Source Guard or Dynamic ARP Inspection.	1 to 4094	N/A
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the MAC address to allowlist for IP Source Guard or Dynamic ARP Inspection.	Valid MAC address	N/A
<b>Port</b>	Specify the port to allowlist for IP Source Guard or Dynamic ARP Inspection.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A
<b>IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address to allowlist for IP Source Guard or Dynamic ARP Inspection.	Valid IP address	N/A

## Binding Status

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > Binding Database - Binding Status


This page lets you view the current binding database entries of your device.

## Binding Status List

### Binding Database

Binding Settings    **Binding Status**

Dynamic binding is learning from DHCP snooping.  
The binding status will not be updated if the VLAN ID and MAC address combination of the static entry already exists.



Type	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Port	IP Address	Lease Time	Active
Max. 32						

UI Setting	Description
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID for a successful DHCP packet transaction on an untrusted port, or the specified VLAN ID for a user-created static entry.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address for a successful DHCP packet transaction on an untrusted port, or the specified MAC address for a user-created static entry.
<b>Port</b>	Shows the untrusted port for a successful DHCP packet transaction, or the specified port for a user-created static entry.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address for a successful DHCP packet transaction on an untrusted port, or the specified IP address for a user-created static entry.
<b>Lease Time</b>	Shows the lease time for the entry to be active. The lease time is infinite for user-created static entries.
<b>Active</b>	Shows whether the entry is active for use with IP Source Guard, Dynamic ARP Inspection, or both.

## About DHCP Snooping

DHCP Snooping is a VLAN-specific security feature for DHCP operations. You can configure untrusted hosts and trusted DHCP servers for corresponding ports on your device, and then the feature will act like a firewall to validate DHCP messages received

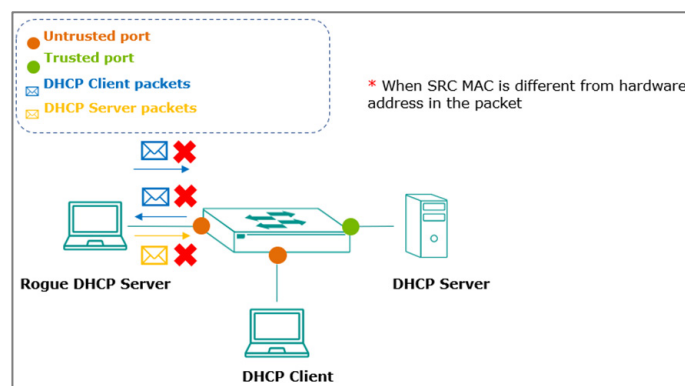
from untrusted sources and filter out invalid messages to exclude rogue DHCP servers and remove malicious DHCP traffic. This helps guarantee that clients obtain a legal address from the DHCP server you designate.

Enabling DHCP snooping will also set up a binding database, which will act as an allowlist for IP Source Guard and Dynamic ARP Inspection.

## DHCP Snooping In Depth

By configuring the designated ports connected to DHCP server ports as trusted ports, and ports connected to clients/hosts as untrusted ports:

- Trusted ports will allow all DHCP packets.
- Untrusted ports will handle DHCP packets as follows:
  - a. Pass ingress DHCP client packets and egress DHCP server packets to complete normal DHCP transactions.
  - b. Drop egress DHCP client packets and ingress DHCP server packets to avoid rogue DHCP server attacks.
  - c. Drop DHCP client packets with a different source MAC address and hardware address to avoid malicious DHCP client attacks.



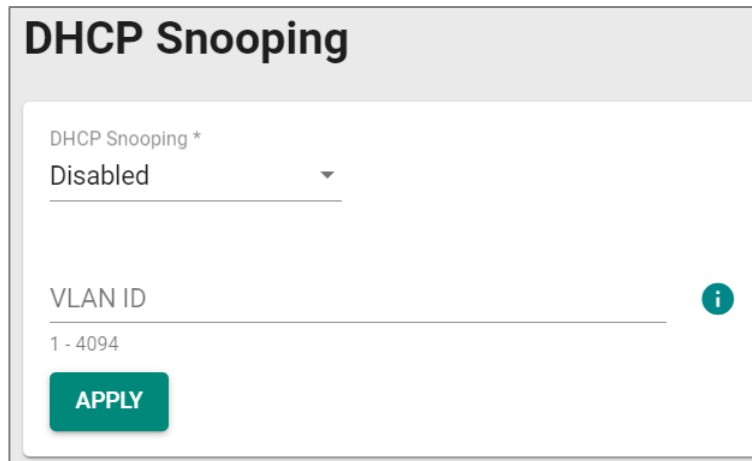
Successful DHCP transactions with DHCP snooping enabled will create and update the binding database. The binding database contains VLAN IDs, MAC addresses, untrusted ports of DHCP clients, and IP addresses. The binding database can also be used for other security functions such as IP Source Guard and Dynamic ARP Inspection.

## DHCP Snooping

**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > DHCP Snooping

This page lets you manage DHCP Snooping for your device.

### DHCP Snooping Settings



**DHCP Snooping**





DHCP Snooping \*  
Disabled

VLAN ID i  
1 - 4094

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>DHCP Snooping</b>	Enable or disable DHCP snooping.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN IDs to use for DHCP snooping. You can enter multiple VLAN IDs by separating them with commas or by using ranges (e.g., 2, 4-8, 10-13).	1 to 4094	N/A


## DHCP Snooping - Port Settings

Port Settings		
	Port	Status
	1	Untrusted
	2	Untrusted
	3	Untrusted
	4	Untrusted

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether the port is trusted or untrusted.

## DHCP Snooping - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: Security > Network Security > DHCP Snooping

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > DHCP Snooping** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the port as trusted or untrusted for DHCP snooping.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

Status \*  
Untrusted ▼

Copy configurations to ports ▼ i

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Specify the port as untrusted or trusted.	Untrusted / Trusted	Untrusted
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## About IP Source Guard

IP Source Guard (IPSG) is an IP data packet filtering security feature that works on Layer 2 interfaces. It works together with DHCP Snooping and the Binding Database to filter IP data packets to defend against attacks such as denial-of-service (DoS) that are caused by forging/spoofing source IP addresses.

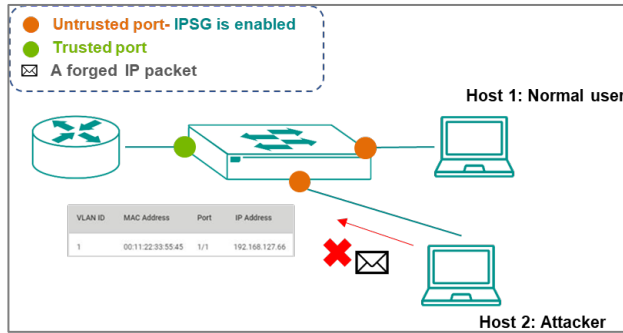
## IP Source Guard In Depth

IPSG checks all traffic to make sure its host IP address, MAC address, VLAN, and port match a valid entry in the binding database. If the host does not match a valid entry in the binding database, the traffic will not be forwarded.

### Note

IP Source Guard (IPSG) works with DHCP snooping, so DHCP snooping must be enabled to create binding database entries before enabling IPSG

IPSG can only be used on ports specified as "untrusted" for DHCP snooping.



## IP Source Guard


**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > IP Source Guard

This page lets you enable or disable IP Source Guard for each port.

### IP Source Guard List


IP Source Guard		
	Port	Status
	1	Disabled
	2	Disabled
	3	Disabled
	4	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether IP Source Guard is enabled for the port.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> IP Source Guard can only be enabled on ports specified as untrusted in DHCP snooping.</p> </div>

## IP Source Guard - Edit Port Settings


**Menu Path:** Security > Network Security > IP Source Guard


Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > IP Source Guard** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you enable or disable IP Source Guard for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1 Settings

Status \*

Copy configurations to ports  

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable IP Source Guard for the port. When enabled, only traffic with packet headers that have a source IP and MAC address that match a valid entry in the Binding Database will be forwarded.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> IP Source Guard can only be enabled on ports specified as untrusted in DHCP snooping.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

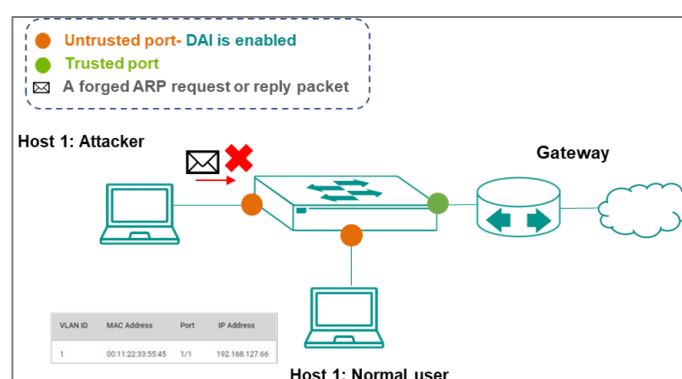
## About Dynamic ARP Inspection

Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI) is an ARP packet filtering security feature that works on Layer 2 interfaces. It works together with DHCP snooping and the binding database to help defend against attacks such as man-in-the-middle or denial-of-service (DoS) attacks caused by ARP packet spoofing (also known as ARP poisoning or ARP cache poisoning).

## Dynamic ARP Inspection In Depth

Dynamic ARP Inspection (DAI) works with DHCP Snooping. Users must enable DHCP snooping to create Binding Database entries before enabling DAI, and DAI can only be used on ports specified as untrusted DHCP Snooping.

DAI inspects each ARP packet sent from a host attached to an untrusted port on the switch. The IP address, MAC address, VLAN, and port associated with the host are checked against entries stored in the Binding Database. If the host information does not match a valid entry in the Binding Database, the ARP packet will not be forwarded.









## Dynamic ARP Inspection

**Menu Path: Security > Network Security > Dynamic ARP Inspection**

This page lets you enable or disable Dynamic ARP Inspection for each port.


## Dynamic ARP Inspection List

Dynamic ARP Inspection		
	Port	Status
	1	Disabled
	2	Disabled
	3	Disabled
	4	Disabled
	5	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether Dynamic ARP Inspection is enabled for the port.
	 <b>Note</b> Dynamic ARP Inspection can only be enabled on ports specified as untrusted in DHCP snooping.

### Dynamic ARP Inspection - Edit Port Settings

**Menu Path:** [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [Dynamic ARP Inspection](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Security > Network Security > Dynamic ARP Inspection** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you enable or disable Dynamic ARP Inspection for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 2/1 Settings

Status \*  
Disabled ▼

Copy configurations to ports  ▼ i

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable Dynamic ARP Inspection for the port. When enabled, ARP packets are inspected, and only ARP packets that have a source IP and MAC address that match a valid entry in the Binding Database will be forwarded. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Dynamic ARP Inspection can only be enabled on ports specified as untrusted in DHCP snooping.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## Authentication

### Menu Path: Security > Authentication

This section lets you manage the authentication features of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Login Authentication
- RADIUS
- TACACS+

## About Login Authentication

Your device can authenticate user logins to protect against unauthorized access to your device.

## How Login Authentication Works

Your device has three different methods of authenticating user logins:

- TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus)
- RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service)
- Local database

TACACS+ and RADIUS are centralized “AAA” (Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting) systems for connecting to network services. The fundamental purpose of these is to provide an efficient and secure mechanism for user account management.

You can use different combinations of these authentication methods:

1. **TACACS+, Local:** Check the TACACS+ database first. If checking the TACACS+ database fails, then check the local database.
2. **RADIUS, Local:** Check the RADIUS database first. If checking the RADIUS database fails, then check the local database.
3. **TACACS+:** Only check the TACACS+ database.
4. **RADIUS:** Only check the RADIUS database.
5. **Local:** Only check the local database.

## Login Authentication

**Menu Path: Security > Authentication > Login Authentication**

This page lets you select the login authentication protocol for your device.

## Login Authentication Settings

### Note

The account privilege level will be granted based on the service type setting for the user for RADIUS authentication, and the privilege level for the user for TACACS+ authentication.

#### RADIUS Service Type

- 6: Administrator
- 3: Supervisor
- All other values (1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11): User

#### TACACS+ Privilege Level

- 15: Administrator
- 12: Supervisor
- 1: User

## Login Authentication

### Authentication Protocol

- Local
- RADIUS
- TACACS+
- RADIUS, Local
- TACACS+, Local

**APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Authentication Protocol</b>	<p>Select the login authentication protocol to use for your device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Local:</b> Only the local database will be checked for login authentication.</li> <li>• <b>RADIUS:</b> Only the RADIUS database will be checked for login authentication.</li> <li>• <b>TACACS+:</b> Only the TACACS+ database will be checked for login authentication.</li> <li>• <b>RADIUS, Local:</b> The RADIUS database will be checked first for login authentication. If checking the RADIUS database fails, then the local database will be checked.</li> <li>• <b>TACACS+, Local:</b> The TACACS+ database will be checked first for login authentication. If checking the TACACS+ database fails, then the local database will be checked.</li> </ul>	Local / RADIUS / TACACS+ / RADIUS, Local / TACACS+, Local	Local

## RADIUS

RADIUS, or Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service, acts like a central security checkpoint for your network. It verifies the identities of users and devices trying to connect, ensuring only authorized ones gain access. Imagine it as a doorman for your switch – RADIUS checks credentials and grants permission to enter the network, enhancing overall security. This centralized approach simplifies user management and eliminates the need for individual security configurations on each device. RADIUS is particularly useful for businesses with many users, devices, or remote access needs.

## RADIUS

**Menu Path: Security > Authentication > RADIUS**

This page lets you configure the RADIUS settings for your device.

### RADIUS Settings

#### Note

After leaving this page or refreshing, the Share Key fields will automatically be cleared to enhance security.

### RADIUS Server

Server IP Address 1 \*  
0.0.0.0

UDP Port \*  
1812

1 - 65535

Share Key 🔒 ⓘ

0 / 64

Auth Type \*  
CHAP

Timeout \*  
5

5 - 180 sec.

Retry \*  
1

0 - 5 times

Server IP Address 2 \*  
0.0.0.0

UDP Port \*  
1812

1 - 65535

Share Key 🔒 ⓘ

0 / 64

Auth Type \*  
CHAP

Timeout \*  
5

5 - 180 sec.

Retry \*  
1

0 - 5 times

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server Address 1/2</b>	Specify the address of the first/second RADIUS server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
<b>UDP Port</b>	Specify the UDP port for the RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	1812
<b>Share Key</b>	Input the share key for server authentication verification.	0 to 64 characters	N/A
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select the authentication type to use for the RADIUS server.	PAP / CHAP / MS-CHAPv1 / MS-CHAPv2	CHAP
<b>Timeout (sec.)</b>	Specify how long in seconds to wait for a response from the RADIUS server before timing out.	5 to 180	5
<b>Retry (sec.)</b>	Specify how many times to try reconnecting to the RADIUS server.	0 to 5	1


## TACACS+

Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) helps provide network access control by verifying users, authorizing their actions (like read, write, or configure), and keeping a detailed log of activity. This granular control allows you to restrict what users can do on specific network devices, ensuring security and compliance. TACACS+ is especially beneficial for network administrators who need to manage user access privileges and track activity across multiple devices.


## TACACS+

### Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Authentication](#) > [TACACS+ Server](#)

This page lets you configure the TACACS+ settings for your device.


 **Note**

The TACACS+ service will be operated using the 1st server specified. If it fails, it will run on the 2nd server specified.

 **Note**

Users created with the TACACS+ server will be granted Admin privileges.

## TACACS+ Settings

 **Note**

After leaving this page or refreshing, the Share Key fields will automatically be cleared to enhance security.

### TACACS+ Server

Server IP Address 1 \*  
0.0.0.0

TCP Port \*  
49

1 - 65535

Share Key 🔒 ⓘ

0 / 64

Auth Type \*  
CHAP

Timeout \*  
5

5 - 180 sec.

Retry \*  
1

0 - 5 times

Server IP Address 2 \*  
0.0.0.0

TCP Port \*  
49

1 - 65535

Share Key 🔒 ⓘ

0 / 64

Auth Type \*  
CHAP

Timeout \*  
5

5 - 180 sec.

Retry \*  
1

0 - 5 times

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server Address 1/2</b>	Specify the address of the first/second TACACS+ server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
<b>TCP Port</b>	Specify the TCP port for the TACACS+ server.	1 to 65535	49
<b>Share Key</b>	Specify the share key for server authentication verification.	0 to 64 characters	N/A
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select the authentication type to use for the TACACS+ server.	ASCII / PAP / CHAP	CHAP
<b>Timeout (sec.)</b>	Specify how long in seconds to wait for a response from the TACACS+ server before timing out.	5 to 180	5
<b>Retry</b>	Specify how many times to try reconnecting to the TACACS+ server.	0 to 5	1

# Diagnostics

## Menu Path: Diagnostics

This section lets you configure the diagnostics settings.

This section includes these pages:

- System Status
- Network Status
- Tools
- Event Logs and Notifications

## Diagnostics - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>System Status</b>			
Resource Utilization	R	R	R
Fiber Check	R/W	R/W	R
Module Information	R	R	R
Intelligent Temp. Control	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Network Status</b>			
Network Statistics	R	R	R
LLDP	R/W	R/W	R
ARP Table	R	R	R
<b>Tools</b>			

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Port Mirroring</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Ping</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W
<b>Event Logs and Notifications</b>			
<b>Event Logs</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Event Notifications</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Syslog General</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Syslog Authentication</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>SNMP Trap/Inform</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Email Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Relay Alarm</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## System Status

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#)

This section lets you view the current system status.

This section includes these pages:

- Resource Utilization
- Fiber Check
- Module Information
- Intelligent Temp. Control

### About Resource Utilization

Resource Utilization provides a set of monitoring tools to give you insights into the switch's current and historical resource usage.

These tools typically include current usage and usage over time for:

- **CPU Utilization**
- **Memory Utilization**
- **Power Utilization**

## Resource Utilization

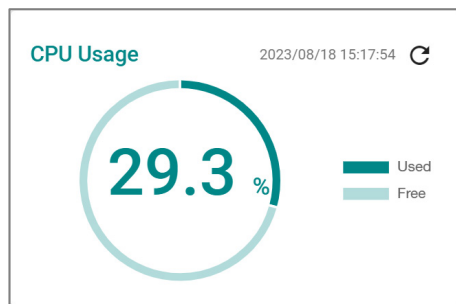
**Menu Path: Diagnostics > System Status > Resource Utilization**

This page lets you monitor current and historical system resource utilization.

### CPU Usage

This display shows the device's CPU usage.

Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to refresh the graph.



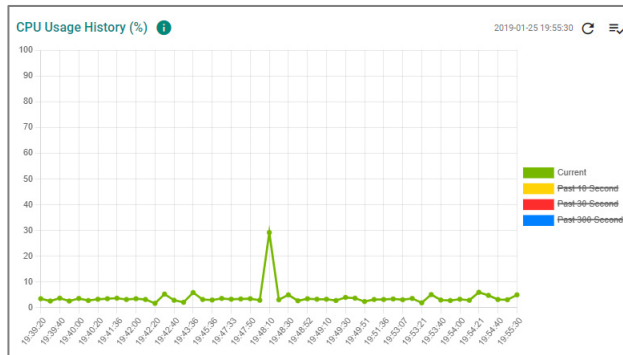
UI Setting	Description
CPU Usage	Displays the current utilization of the CPU.

### CPU Usage History (%)

The device's CPU usage will be shown as a percentage over time.

Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to manually add the current value to the chart.

Click the icon on the top-right corner of the widget to select which data to display.

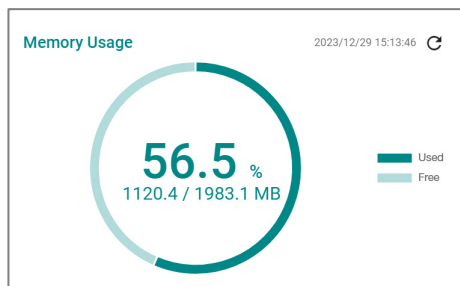


UI Setting	Description
<b>CPU Usage History</b>	Displays the device's CPU usage over time.

### Memory Usage

This display shows the device's memory usage.

Click the **Refresh** (↻) icon to refresh the graph.

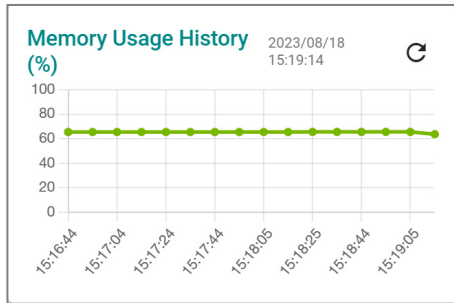


UI Setting	Description
<b>Memory Usage</b>	Displays the memory utilization status.

### Memory Usage History

The device's memory usage will be shown as a percentage over time.

Click the **Refresh** (↻) icon to manually add the current value to the chart.

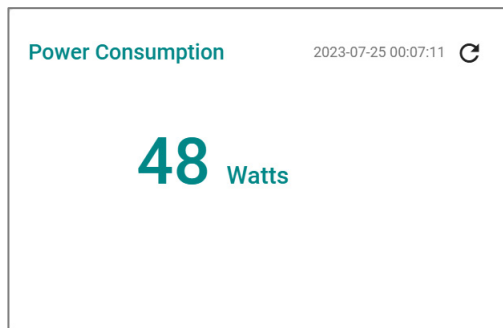


UI Setting	Description
Memory Usage History	Displays the device's memory usage over time.

### Power Consumption

This display shows the device's current power consumption in watts.

Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to refresh the value.

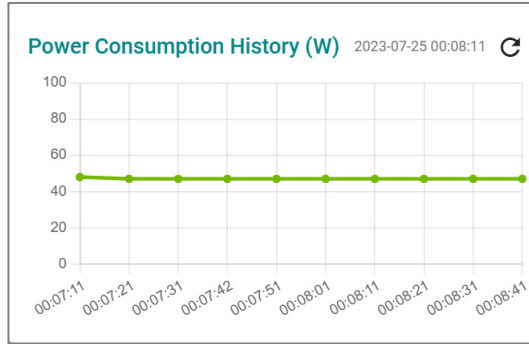


UI Setting	Description
Power Consumption	Displays the current power consumption of the device in watts.

### Power Consumption History

This shows the device's power consumption over time.

Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to manually add the current value to the chart.



UI Setting	Description
<b>Power History</b>	Displays the device's power consumption in watts over time.

## About Fiber Check


Optical fiber is commonly used for long-distance data transmission, so it is very costly to troubleshoot fiber cables and fiber transceivers at remote sites when issues occur. This device provides Fiber Check features to help check and diagnose the link status of fiber connectors—including Moxa’s SFP and fixed type (multi-mode SC/ST and single-mode SC) connectors—by displaying the optical parameters and corresponding thresholds. This makes it easier to remotely determine if the modules are working properly, and lets you send notifications when a threshold has been exceeded, greatly facilitating the troubleshooting process and reducing the need for onsite checks.

## Fiber Check In Depth

The Fiber Check feature displays the running status and corresponding thresholds for your device's fiber ports.

The running status shows the current wavelength, temperature, voltage, Tx power, and Rx power for the port. It also shows the corresponding high and low thresholds for temperature, voltage, Tx power, and Rx power for the port, based on its module. You can choose to use the default thresholds for a port by using Auto mode, or define the thresholds manually by using the User Define mode. Refer to [Fiber Check Threshold Values for Auto Mode](#) for more information on the default thresholds.

When a threshold is exceeded, a **Fiber Check warning** event will be triggered, which can be used to send notifications to a trap server, email, or relay, or add an event log to the syslog. Refer to [Event Notifications - Port](#) for more information.

 **Note**

This feature is only designed for Moxa's SFP and fixed type (multi-mode SC/ST and single-mode SC) fiber modules.

## Fiber Check

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Fiber Check](#)

This page lets you diagnose the link status of the device's fiber connectors, including SFP and fixed type (multi-mode SC/ST and single-mode SC) connectors. It lets you monitor the temperature, TX/RX power, and other parameters on fiber ports to determine if the ports are working properly.

You can enable trap, email warning, and/or relay warning functions to receive an alarm or relay if one of the fiber ports exceeds the threshold for that port. Refer to [Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications](#) for more information.

This page includes these tabs:

- Status
- Threshold Settings

### Fiber Check - Status

#### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Fiber Check - Status](#)

This page lets you view the current status of your device's fiber ports.

## Fiber Check Port List

Port	Model Name	Serial Number	Wavelength (nm)	Voltage (V)	Temperature (Threshold) (°C)	Tx Power (Threshold Low/High) (dBm)	Rx Power (Threshold Low/High) (dBm)
1/1	SFP-1GLXLC-T	A000000009	1310	3.30	41.50 (120.00)	-6.78 (-9.00/-3.00)	--- (-21.00/-3.00)
1/2	SFP-1GLXLC	K000000005	1310	3.31	45.81 (100.00)	-5.57 (-9.00/-3.00)	--- (-21.00/-3.00)
1/3	--	--	--	--	--	--	--











UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port the entry is for.
<b>Model Name</b>	Shows the model name of the port.
<b>Serial Number</b>	Shows the serial number of the port.
<b>Wavelength</b>	Shows the wavelength in nm of the port.
<b>Voltage</b>	Shows the voltage in V of the port.
<b>Temperature Threshold</b>	Shows the current temperature of the port, and the low and high temperature thresholds in parentheses ( ). You can change between C and F temperatures by using the buttons at the top of the table.
<b>Tx Power (Threshold Low/High)</b>	Shows the current Tx power in dBm of the port, and the low and high thresholds for Tx power in parentheses ( ).
<b>Rx Power (Threshold Low/High)</b>	Shows the current Rx power in dBm of the port, and the low and high thresholds for Rx power in parentheses ( ).

## Fiber Check - Threshold Settings

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Fiber Check - Threshold Settings](#)

This page lets you configure fiber check threshold parameters for sending event notifications.


## Fiber Check Threshold Port List

	Port	Mode	Temperature Threshold (°C)	Tx Power Threshold Low (dBm)	Tx Power Threshold High (dBm)	Rx Power Threshold Low (dBm)	Rx Power Threshold High (dBm)
 	1/1	Auto	---	---	---	---	---
 	1/2	Auto	---	---	---	---	---
 	1/3	Auto	---	---	---	---	---
 	1/4	Auto	---	---	---	---	---
 	2/1	---	---	---	---	---	---

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port the entry is for.
<b>Mode</b>	Shows whether the port is using Auto or User Defined threshold settings.
<b>Temperature Threshold</b>	Shows the temperature threshold for the port. An event will be triggered if the temperature goes above this threshold.  You can change between °C and °F temperatures by using the buttons at the top of the table.
<b>Tx Power Threshold Low</b>	Shows the low threshold for Tx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Tx power goes below this threshold.
<b>Tx Power Threshold High</b>	Shows the high threshold for Tx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Tx power goes above this threshold.
<b>Rx Power Threshold Low</b>	Shows the low threshold for Rx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Rx power goes below this threshold.
<b>Rx Power Threshold High</b>	Shows the high threshold for Rx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Rx power goes above this threshold.

## Fiber Check - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Fiber Check - Threshold Settings](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Diagnostics > System Status > Fiber Check - Threshold Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you set fiber check threshold values for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

### Edit Port 1/1 Settings

Mode \*  
User Defined ▼

Temperature Threshold \*  
128 °C °F

-128 - 128 °C

Tx Power Threshold Low \*  
-40 dBm

Tx Power Threshold High \*  
8.2 dBm

-40 - 8.2 dBm

Rx Power Threshold Low \*  
-40 dBm

Rx Power Threshold High \*  
8.2 dBm

-40 - 8.2 dBm

Copy configurations to ports ▼ ⓘ

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Mode</b>	Specify how fiber check threshold values should be set. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Auto:</b> Threshold values will be automatically specified. Refer to Fiber Check Threshold Values for more information.</li> <li><b>User Defined:</b> Threshold values are manually specified.</li> </ul>	Auto / User Defined	Auto
<b>Temperature Threshold</b>	Specify the temperature threshold for the port. An event will be triggered if the temperature goes above this threshold.  You can change between °C and °F temperatures by using the buttons to the right.	In °C: -128 to 128  In °F: -198.4 to 262.4	In °C: 128  In °F: 262.4
<b>Tx Power Threshold Low</b>	Specify the low threshold for Tx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Tx power goes below this threshold.	-40 to 8.2 dBm	-40
<b>Tx Power Threshold High</b>	Specify the high threshold for Tx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Tx power goes above this threshold.	-40 to 8.2 dBm	8.2
<b>Rx Power Threshold Low</b>	Specify the low threshold for Rx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Rx power goes below this threshold.	-40 to 8.2 dBm	-40
<b>Rx Power Threshold High</b>	Specify the high threshold for Rx power in dBm. An event will be triggered if Rx power goes above this threshold.	-40 to 8.2 dBm	8.2
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

# Module Information

**Menu Path:** Diagnostics > System Status > Module Information

This page lets you view information about the modules currently installed in your device.

**Note**

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

## Module List

**Note**

PSU modules will only appear when the module is powered on.

Slot	Module Name	Serial Number	Product Revision	Status
M1	RKS-G4028-L3-4GS-HV-T	---	---	---
M2	RM-G4000-8TX	TBBID0000004	V1.0.0	---
M3	RM-G4000-8TX	TBBID0000006	V1.0.0	---

UI Setting	Description
<b>Slot</b>	Shows the slot the module is installed in.
<b>Module Name</b>	Shows the name of the module this entry is for.
<b>Serial Number</b>	Shows the serial number of the module.
<b>Product Revision</b>	Shows the product revision of the module.
<b>Status</b>	Shows the status of the module.

## About Intelligent Temperature Control

Electronics overheating for prolonged periods may face negative impacts to functionality and device availability. To prevent or minimize overheating, system temperature can be monitored through intelligent temperature control. In addition to monitoring, intelligent temperature control can automatically adjust fan speed based on input from built-in thermal sensors, and can trigger temperature alarms and protection features.

Intelligent Temperature Control includes the following features:

- **Smart Fan:** Fan speed will be adjusted automatically based on temperature data from thermal sensors.
- **Smart Power:** When the a specified component temperature is exceeded, power cut-off can be triggered to suspend some of the device's operations to cool down the device and protect components from damage.

## How Intelligent Temperature Control Works

The internal temperature of the device can be affected by environment temperature changes, CPU load changes, or by malfunctioning device components. To manage the risks, built-in thermal sensors monitor thermal conditions for the device, allowing the device to send alarm notifications if the device temperature exceeds defined limits, and also allow the device to trigger actions accordingly.

### System Temperature Monitoring

The system temperature represents the average temperature of the device during operation. To monitor the thermal condition of the device, you can set a temperature alarm threshold to trigger a system event when the threshold is exceeded.

### Smart Fan Control

This device's fan system supports **N+M** redundancy, where **N** represents the number of primary working fans and **M** represents the number of standby fans. When the device powers on, all fans will operate at full speed until temperature information from all thermal sensors has been collected. The fans system will then adjust the speed of the primary working fans to the same duty cycle, which is automatically adjusted to 0, 10, 30, 50, 70, or 100%. Fan speed RPM can be monitored remotely. The device will monitor

the fan speed and triggered a system event if there is an unexpected speed change, such as if a fan is blocked or fails.

### **Power Cut-off**

Power Cut-off cuts off network connectivity to reduce power consumption (and corresponding heat production) when temperatures reach a certain threshold. This feature does not turn off the switch; only some of the networking components are suspended in order to prevent potential damage.

When enabled, if a critical component has overheated for over 1 minute, the system will trigger the Power Cut-off feature to protect the component from further damage due to unexpected high temperatures. The device will trigger a system event, shut down in-band ports, and then enter Power Cut-off status.

During Power Cut-off status, a few features are still active to allow administrators to check the device log and monitor the device's thermal conditions.

- Users still can access system information from the OOB interface through SSH/Telnet/Web/SNMP
- Smart fan control will continue operating

After entering the Power Cut-off status, the device should be rebooted manually to release the Power Cut-off status and recover.

### **Auto Reboot in Power Cut-off**

In some cases, it might be difficult to manually reboot the device to release the Power Cut-off status. Auto Reboot in Power Cut-off allows the device to automatically reboot after 12 hours in Power Cut-off status.

## **Intelligent Temp. Control**

### **Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Intelligent Temp. Control](#)**

This page lets you manage the Intelligent Temperature Control features of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Status
- Settings

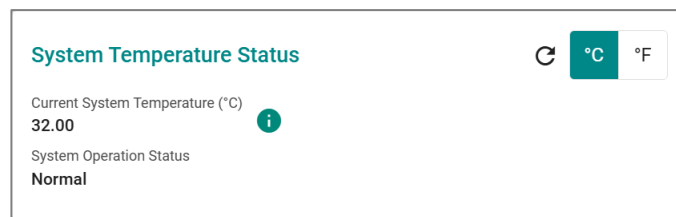
## Intelligent Temp. Control - Status

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > System Status > Intelligent Temp. Control - Status**

This page lets you view device status information related to the Intelligent Temperature Control feature.

### System Temperature Status


You can toggle between Celsius (°C) and Fahrenheit (°F) by clicking on the unit of measure you want to use.



UI Setting	Description
<b>Current System Temperature</b>	Shows the current system temperature in the currently selected unit of measurement.
<b>System Operation Status</b>	Shows the current system operation status related to Intelligent Temperature Control.

## Fan Modules

**Fan modules**




Fan Module	Speed (rpm)	Duty Cycle (%)
1	5142	0
2	5445	0
3	5233	0
4	5168	0
5	5247	0
6	5157	0
7	5397	0
8	5264	0

1 - 8 of 8

UI Setting	Description
<b>Fan Module</b>	Shows which fan module the entry is for.
<b>Speed (rpm)</b>	Shows the current fan speed in RPM.
<b>Duty Cycle (%)</b>	Shows the current duty cycle used for the fan.

## PWR Fan

**PWR Fan**



PWR Fan	Speed (rpm)
1	--
2	8000

1 - 2 of 2

UI Setting	Description
<b>PWR Fan</b>	Shows which power fan the entry is for.
<b>Speed (rpm)</b>	Shows the current fan speed in RPM.

## Intelligent Temp. Control - Settings

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Intelligent Temp. Control - Settings](#)

This page lets you configure your device's Intelligent Temperature Control settings.

You can toggle between Celsius (°C) and Fahrenheit (°F) by clicking on the unit of measure you want to use.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Power Cut-off</b>	Enable or disable the Power Cut-off mode feature. When enabled, in-band ports will be shut down if the system detects overheating of a critical component for longer than 1 minute.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>After Power Cut-off mode is activated, the device must be rebooted to release it from Power Cut-off mode.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Auto Reboot in Power Cut-off</b>	Enable or disable the Auto Reboot in Power Cut-off feature. When enabled, the device will automatically reboot if it has been in Power Cut-off mode for longer than 12 hours.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>System Temperature Alarm</b>	Specify the temperature threshold for Intelligent Temperature Control. If the system temperature becomes higher than this, a system event will be created. These system events can be used to trigger actions such as notifications. Refer to <a href="#">Event Notifications</a> for more details.	For °C: 25.00 to 70.00 For °F: 77.00 to 158.00	For °C: 70.00 For °F: 158.00

## Network Status

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#)

This section lets you view the network status.

This section includes these pages:

- Network Statistics
- LLDP
- ARP Table

## About Network Statistics

Network Statistics provides monitoring tools that give you a real-time view of traffic flowing through the device.

This information typically includes:

- **Packet Counter:** The number of data packets being transmitted and received within a specific period of time, providing a crucial metric for assessing the activity and load on a network's infrastructure.
- **Bandwidth Utilization:** The percentage of the total bandwidth currently being used for data transmission.

## Network Statistics

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#) > [Network Statistics](#)

This page lets you see the real-time packet and bandwidth status for your device.

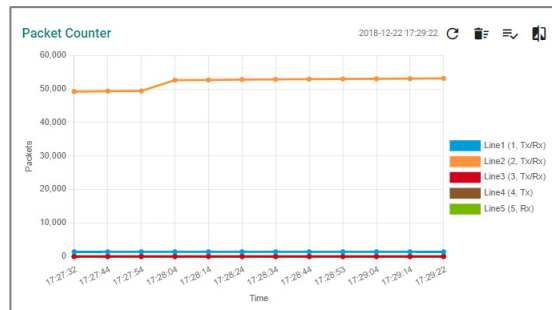
## Network Status Display

You can switch between **Packet Counter** and **Bandwidth Utilization** views by clicking on the **Display Settings (**



**)** icon on the top-right.

- **Packet Counter:** This view shows how many packets are being handled over time. This view updates every 5 seconds.
- **Bandwidth Utilization:** This view shows bandwidth utilization over time. This view updates every 3 seconds.



UI Setting	Description
<b>Refresh (</b> <b>)</b>	Updates statistics immediately without waiting for the refresh interval.
<b>Reset the Statistics Graph (</b> <b>)</b> <b>(For Packet Counter display only)</b>	Clears the display and resets display settings back to defaults.
<b>Display Settings (</b> <b>)</b>	Opens <b>Display Settings</b> , which allows you to switch between <b>Packet Counter</b> and <b>Bandwidth Usage</b> view, and add lines based on user-defined criteria.
<b>Compare Data (</b> <b>)</b> <b>(For Packet Counter display only)</b>	Compare data by selecting a benchmark line and time and a comparison line and time.

## Display Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Display Mode</b>	Select whether to show the <b>Packet Counter</b> or the <b>Bandwidth Usage</b> display.	Packet Counter / Bandwidth Usage	Packet Counter
<b>Line 1-5 Monitoring Port</b>	Select which port to monitor for the line.	Drop-down list of ports	Line 1: 1/1 Line 2: 1/2 Line 3: 1/3 Line 4: 1/4 Line 5: 2/1
<b>Line 1-5 Sniffer (If Display Mode is Packet Counter)</b>	Select which type of traffic to monitor for the line. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Tx/Rx</b>: Monitor both transmit and receive traffic.</li> <li><b>Tx</b>: Only monitor transmit traffic.</li> <li><b>Rx</b>: Only monitor receive traffic.</li> </ul>	Tx/Rx / Tx / Rx	Line 1: Tx/Rx Line 2: Tx/Rx Line 3: Tx/Rx Line 4: Tx Line 5: Rx

## Compare Data Settings

If you click on the **Compare icon** (🔍) for the **Packet Counter** display, this dialog will appear.

After making your selections, a table will appear that compares various packet statistics between the benchmark and comparison data.

- ↑ : Shows that the benchmark line number is **higher** than the comparison line.
- ↔ : Shows that the benchmark line number is **equal** to the comparison line.
- ↓ : Shows that the benchmark line number is **lower** than the comparison line.

**Compare Data**

Benchmark \*    Benchmark Line - Time \*

Comparison \*    Comparison Line - Time \*

CLOSE

## Comparison Table

Tx Total Octets	3775097	↑	↓
Tx Total Packets	34751	↑	↓
Tx Unicast Packets	31911	↑	↓
Tx Multicast Packets	2807	↑	↓
Tx Broadcast Packets	33	↑	↓
Rx Total Octets	2831394	↑	↓
Rx Total Packets	16518	↑	↓
Rx Unicast Packets	14055	↑	↓
Rx Multicast Packets	2525	↑	↓
Rx Broadcast Packets	-62	↓	↓
Rx Pause Packets	0	⊕	↓
Collision Packets	0	⊕	↓
Late Collision Packets	0	⊕	↓
Excessive Collision Packets	0	⊕	↓

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Benchmark</b>	Specify which line to use as the benchmark.	Drop-down list of monitored port and sniffer combinations	N/A
<b>Benchmark Line - Time</b>	Select a timestamp to determine which benchmark data to use.	Drop-down list of timestamps	N/A
<b>Comparison</b>	Specify which line to use as the comparison.	Drop-down list of monitored port and sniffer combinations	N/A
<b>Comparison Line - Time</b>	Select a timestamp to determine which comparison data to use.	Drop-down list of timestamps	N/A

## Network Statistics Table

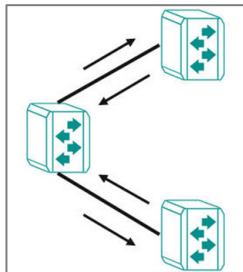
This table shows various packet statistics for each port.

Port	Tx Total Octets	Tx Total Packets	Tx Unicast Packets	Tx Multicast Packets	Tx Broadcast Packets	Rx Total Octets
1	42214	564	6	555	3	140481
2	66477293	57249	53751	3462	36	4209464
3	0	0	0	0	0	0

## About LLDP

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) is an OSI Layer 2 protocol defined by IEEE 802.11AB. LLDP standardizes the self-identification advertisement method, and allows each networking device to periodically send its system and configuration information to its neighbors. Because of this, all LLDP devices are kept informed of each other's status and configurations. With SNMP, this information can be transferred to Moxa's MXview One for auto-topology and network visualization.

From the device's web interface, you can enable or disable LLDP, and set the LLDP transmit interval. In addition, you can view each switch's neighbor list, which is reported by its network neighbors. Most importantly, enabling the LLDP function allows Moxa's MXview One to automatically display the network's topology and system setup details, such as VLAN and Trunking for the entire network.



## LLDP

**Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#) > [LLDP](#)**

This page lets you configure Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- [Settings](#)
- [Status](#)

### LLDP - Settings

**Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#) > [LLDP - Settings](#)**

This page lets you configure Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) settings.

## LLDP - Settings

LLDP \* 🔔

Enabled ▼

---

LLDP Version \*

v1(2005) ▼

---

Transmit Interval *	Notification Interval *	Tx Delay *
30	5	2
5 - 32768 sec.	5 - 3600 sec.	1 - 8192 sec.

---

Reinitialization Delay *	Holdtime Multiplier *
2	4
1 - 10 sec.	2 - 10 times

---

Chassis ID Subtype \*

Port-Component ▼ Chassis ID \* \_\_\_\_\_

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>LLDP</b>	Enable or disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP).	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>LLDP Version</b>	Shows the LLDP version.	v1(2005)	v1(2005)
<b>Transmit Interval</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interval will be in between sending LLDP messages.	5 to 32768	30
<b>Notification Interval</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interval will be in between sending notifications.	5 to 3600	5
<b>Tx Delay</b>	Specify how long in seconds the interval will be in between successive LLDP frame transmissions initiated by changes.	1 to 8192	2
<b>Reinitialization Delay (Only in Advanced Mode)</b>	Specify how long in seconds the delay will be before reinitializing an LLDP packet transmission.	1 to 10	2
<b>Holdtime Multiplier (Only in Advanced Mode)</b>	Specify how long in seconds the receiving device will hold an LLDP packet before discarding it.	2 to 10	4

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Chassis ID Subtype</b>	Specify the Chassis ID subtype of the device.	Chassis-Component / If-Alias / Port-Component / MAC-Address / Network-Address / If-Name / Local	MAC-Address
<b>Chassis ID</b> (If Chassis ID Subtype is Chassis-Component, Port-Component, or Local)	Specify the Chassis ID.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The MAC address of the default VLAN is often used for the Chassis ID.</p> </div>	1 to 255 characters	N/A

## LLDP Port List

Port	Port Status
1/1	Tx and Rx
1/2	Tx and Rx
1/3	Tx and Rx
1/4	Tx and Rx
2/1	Tx and Rx
2/2	Tx and Rx

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Port Status</b>	Show the status of what data is being transmitted for the port.

## LLDP - Edit Port Settings

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#) > [LLDP - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Diagnostics > Network Status > LLDP - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the LLDP settings for the port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Status</b>	Specify the port status for transmitting data.	Tx and Rx / Tx Only / Rx Only	Tx and Rx
<b>Subtype</b>	Specify the Chassis ID subtype for the port.	Chassis-Component / If-Alias / Port-Component / MAC-Address / Network-Address / If-Name / Local	If-Alias
<b>Basic Transmit TLVs</b>	Select the basic information to use for the TLV. You can select multiple options.	Port Description / System Name / System Description	Port Description, System Name
<b>802.1 Transmit TLVs</b>	Select the 802.1 information to use for the TLV. You can select multiple options.	Port VLAN ID / VLAN Name	N/A
<b>802.3 Transmit TLVs</b>	Select the 802.3 information to use for the TLV. You can select multiple options.	Link Aggregation Statistics / Maximum Frame Size	N/A
<b>Copy configurations to ports</b>	Select the ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## LLDP - Status

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#) > [LLDP - Status](#)

This page lets you see the status of LLDP on your device.

## Local Information

## Local Timer

## Remote Table Statistics

Remote Table Statistics	
Last Change Time (ms)	<b>1499300</b>
Inserts	<b>2</b>
Drops	<b>0</b>
Delete	<b>1</b>
Ageouts	<b>0</b>

UI Setting	Description
<b>Last Change Time (ms)</b>	Shows how long ago in milliseconds the remote table was last changed.
<b>Inserts</b>	Shows how many inserts have occurred.
<b>Drops</b>	Shows how many drops have occurred.
<b>Delete</b>	Shows how many deletes have occurred.
<b>Ageouts</b>	Shows how many ageouts have occurred.

## LLDP Port Status

To view the detailed LLDP status for a specific port, click the **detailed information** (i) icon for the port.

Port	Tx Status	Rx Status
1/1	Enabled	Enabled
<b>Port Local Interface</b> Port ID SubType: If-Alias      Port ID: Eth1/1      Port Description: Ethernet Interface Port 01 - 1000FX,miniGBIC		
<b>Extended 802.1 TLV</b> Port VLAN ID: 1      VLAN ID / Name: 1 / ---		
<b>Extended 802.3 TLV</b> Link Aggregation Status: Disabled      Aggregated Port ID: 0      Maximum Frame Size: 9216		
<b>Port Traffic Statistics</b> Total Frames Out: 0      Total Entries Aged: 0      Total Frames In: 0 Total Frames Received In Error: 0      Total Frames Discarded: 0      Total TLVS Unrecognized: 0      Total TLVs Discarded: 0		
<b>Extended Ethernet/IP TLV</b> Vendor ID: 991      Device Type: 44      Product Code: 8963 Major Revision: 1      Minor Revision: 0      Serial Number: 1119503		
1/2	Enabled	Enabled
1/3	Enabled	Enabled
1/4	Enabled	Enabled
2/1	Enabled	Enabled
2/2	Enabled	Enabled

UI Setting	Description
<b>Port</b>	Shows the port number the entry is for.
<b>Tx Status</b>	Shows whether LLDP is enabled for transmit traffic.
<b>Rx Status</b>	Shows whether LLDP is enabled for receive traffic.

## menu reference LLDP - Neighbor Status

### LLDP - Neighbor Status

**Menu Path:** [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#) > [LLDP - Neighbor Status](#)

This page lets you see the neighbor status of LLDP.

## Neighbor Status

Local Port	System Capability	Neighbor Port ID	Neighbor Chassis ID	Port Description	System Name	Hold Time
3/3	---	---	---	---	---	---
3/4	Router	2	00:90:e8:00:00:05	100TX	NAT Router	---
3/5	---	---	---	---	---	---
3/6	---	---	---	---	---	---
3/7	---	---	---	---	---	---
3/8	Router	5	00:90:e8:a9:ed:2b	100TX	Firewall/ETBN Router 05518	---
4/1	---	---	---	---	---	---

UI Setting	Description
<b>Local Port</b>	Shows the number of the port connected to the neighbor.
<b>System Capability</b>	Shows the system capability of the neighbor.
<b>Neighbor Port ID</b>	Shows the neighbor's port ID for the interface this device is connected to.
<b>Neighbor Chassis ID</b>	Shows the unique ID (typically the MAC address) used to identify the neighbor device.
<b>Port Description</b>	Shows the neighbor's port description for the interface this device is connected to.
<b>System Name</b>	Shows the hostname of the neighbor device.
<b>Hold Time</b>	Shows the amount of time that the receiving device will hold an LLDP packet before discarding it.

## About ARP Tables

The **ARP Table (Address Resolution Protocol Table)** is a database maintained by Ethernet switches. It acts like a translator that maps Media Access Control (MAC) addresses to their corresponding IP addresses. Network devices communicate using MAC addresses, which are unique hardware identifiers. However, routing between devices often relies on IP addresses, so ARP tables are used to bridge this gap.

## ARP Table

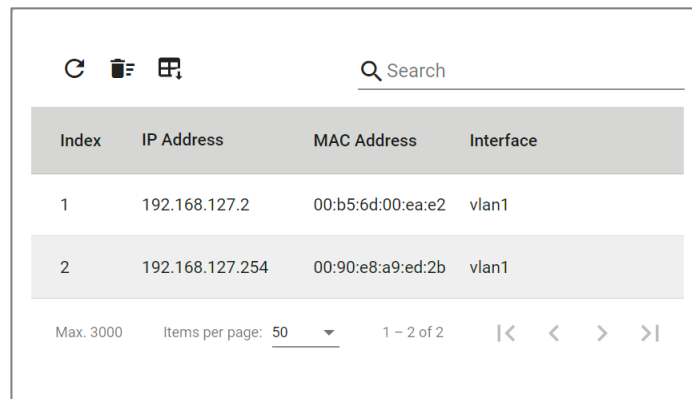
### Menu Path: Diagnostics > Network Status > ARP Table

This page lets you see the device's Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table.

#### 🔔 Limitations

The ARP table can hold up to 6000 entries.

## ARP Table



Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Interface
1	192.168.127.2	00:b5:6d:00:ea:e2	vlan1
2	192.168.127.254	00:90:e8:a9:ed:2b	vlan1

Max. 3000    Items per page: 50    1 - 2 of 2    |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index of the device entry.
<b>IP Address</b>	Shows the IP address used for the device.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Shows the MAC address of the device.
<b>Interface</b>	Shows the interface the device is connecting through.

## Tools

### Menu Path: Diagnostics > Tools

This page lets you use various tools to help troubleshoot network issues.

This page includes these tabs:

- Port Mirroring
- Ping

## About Port Mirroring

Port Mirroring is used to monitor data being transmitted through specific ports. This is done by setting up mirror ports to receive the same data being transmitted to, from, or both to and from the ports being monitored. Using mirror ports allows network administrators to sniff the observed ports to keep tabs on network activity.

## Port Mirroring In Depth

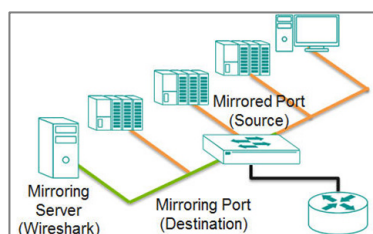
There are two ways to use Port Mirroring on this device:

- **SPAN (Switched Port Analyzer):** Mirrors data from monitored ports to multiple terminal ports on the same switch.
- **RSPAN (Remote Switched Port Analyzer):** Mirrors data from monitored ports on one switch to multiple terminal ports on other switches.

### SPAN

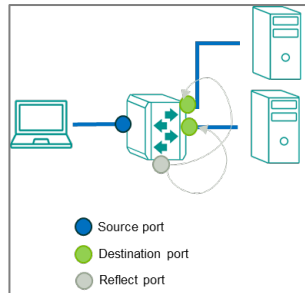
**SPAN** can be configured to copy packets from various ports to a single port or multiple ports, so that users can check if there are problems occurring in these ports.

For example, the following figure demonstrates how packets transmitted through the four mirrored ports (marked in orange) are copied (mirrored) to a single mirroring port (marked in green). These packets will be sent to a monitoring computer where software is used to check for issues with the packets. This is useful for troubleshooting or monitoring network data transmissions for debugging or security purposes.



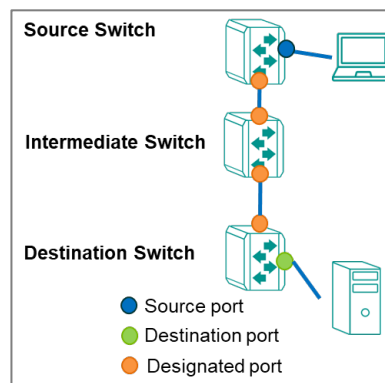
Ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic can be mirrored one or more destination ports.

If you want to mirror traffic to multiple destination ports, then a reflect port needs to be assigned and the destination ports need to be in the same VLAN as the reflect port.



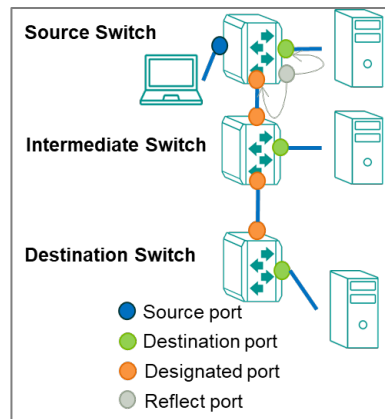
## RSPAN

**RSPAN** can be configured to copy packets from one or more ports from one or more source switches through intermediate switches to one or more ports on destination switches. The PC or monitoring server can be connected to destination ports on the destination switch to receive a copy of the original traffic being monitored. For example, the following figure demonstrates how packets transmitted to a source port (marked in blue) are copied (mirrored) through an intermediate switch to one or more destination ports (marked in green). Source traffic can be copied through multiple intermediate switches to single or multiple destination switches.



Ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic of the source port(s) can be mirrored to one or more destination ports on destination switches.

If you want to mirror traffic to destination ports on the source switch, a reflect port needs to be assigned. Destination ports in source switch, intermediate switch(es), and destination switch(es) need to be in the same VLAN as the reflect port.



- You can set source ports to be from one or more RSPAN source switches. If one of the destination ports is on a source switch, a reflect port needs to be assigned.
- You can configure an RSPAN VLAN for monitored traffic to be labeled with a RSPAN VLAN tag and send monitored traffic to an RSPAN destination switch via trunk ports.
- You can configure ports to join an RSPAN VLAN, these ports will be destination ports to receive monitored traffic.
- You can connect a monitoring computer to a destination port to receive monitoring traffic for software analysis or diagnostics.

## Enabling Mirroring

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **General**.
3. Set **Port Mirroring** to **Enabled** and then click **Apply**.

Mirroring is now active.

## Configuring Port Mirroring with Single-port SPAN

Mirror one port to one other port on the same switch.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.

2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **SPAN**.
3. Next to **Port Mirroring Session**, select **Create**.

**Create Port Mirroring Session** appears.

4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Specify a unique session ID.
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	<b>Disabled</b> for single-destination mirroring.
<b>Tx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified egress traffic.
<b>Rx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified egress traffic.
<b>Destination Port</b>	Specify the port to receive mirrored traffic.

**Note**

- Specify at least one Tx Source Port(s) or Rx Source Port(s).
- The following must be unique among all sessions:
  - Tx Source Port(s)
  - Rx Source Port(s)
  - Destination Port

5. Select **Create**.

The SPAN session appears on **Port Mirroring Session**.

### Configuring Port Mirroring with Multi-port SPAN

Mirror one port to multiple other ports on the same switch.

**Note**

This feature requires a Reflect Port, which has special requirements:

- Dedicated port
- For Layer 2 switches: Membership in management VLAN
- For Layer 3 switches: Membership in VLAN interfaces
- VLANs in Trunk or Hybrid Mode

Additionally, reflect ports with PVIDs from dynamically assigned VLANs are discouraged.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **SPAN**.
3. Next to **Port Mirroring Session**, select **Create**.

**Create Port Mirroring Session** appears.

4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Specify a unique session ID.
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	<b>Enabled</b> for multi-destination mirroring.
<b>Reflect Port</b>	Select a port. Reflects or "bounces" traffic, often through an external network appliance. Required for multi-destination mirroring.
<b>Tx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified egress traffic.
<b>Rx Source Port(s)</b>	Specify the port to receive mirrored traffic.

**Note**

- Specify at least one Tx Source Port(s) or Rx Source Port(s).
- The following must be unique among all sessions:
  - Tx Source Port(s)
  - Rx Source Port(s)

5. Select **Create**.

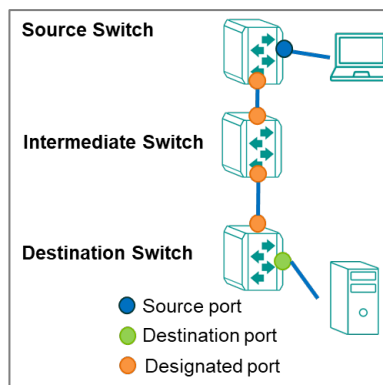
The SPAN session appears on **Port Mirroring Session**.

## Configuring Port Mirroring with Single-destination RSPAN

RSPAN topologies usually incorporate 3 or more switches between the source and destination ports.

When planning for RSPAN, a given RSPAN switch can only be a source or destination switch once across all RSPAN sessions. For example, Switch A can be a source switch for session 6, and a destination for session 7, but cannot be a source twice.

Intermediate switches can be intermediates for session 6 and 7, but cannot serve in any other roles.



1. Configure source switch.
2. Configure intermediate switch.
3. Configure destination switch.

The following sections outline how to configure RSPAN when the destination port is located on the destination switch.

### Configuring a Source Switch for RSPAN Single-destination Port Mirroring

To monitor a port, create an RSPAN session with the source role and specify a Source Port.

**Note**

Make sure you have a dedicated RSPAN VLAN, with the following requirements:

- Source, intermediate, and destination switches in the same session must use the same RSPAN VLAN.
- RSPAN VLAN must be unique among all RSPAN sessions.
- Do not use management VLANs (L2 switches) or VLAN interfaces (L3 switches) as the RSPAN VLAN.
- Avoid using dynamic VLANs for the RSPAN VLAN.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **RSPAN**.
3. Next to **Port Mirroring Session**, select **Create**.

**Create Port Mirroring Session** appears.

4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Specify a unique session ID. The <b>Session ID</b> is a local setting, and does not need to match Source, intermediate, and destination switches.
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	<b>Disabled</b> for single-destination mirroring.
<b>RSPAN Type</b>	<b>Source</b> for RSPAN source switches.
<b>RSPAN VLAN</b>	Specify a VLAN to carry the mirrored traffic.
<b>Tx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified egress traffic.
<b>Rx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified ingress traffic.
<b>Designated Port</b>	Specify the port for mirrored traffic to exit the switch.

**Note**

- Specify at least one Tx Source Port(s) or Rx Source Port(s).
- The following must be unique among all sessions:
  - Tx Source Port(s)
  - Rx Source Port(s)

5. Select **Create**.

The RSPAN session appears on **Port Mirroring Session**.

## Configuring an Intermediate Switch for RSPAN Single-destination Port Mirroring

RSPAN intermediate switches relay mirrored port traffic from source to destination switches.

### Note

Make sure you have a dedicated RSPAN VLAN, with the following requirements:

- Source, intermediate, and destination switches in the same session must use the same RSPAN VLAN.
- RSPAN VLAN must be unique among all RSPAN sessions.
- Do not use management VLANs (L2 switches) or VLAN interfaces (L3 switches) as the RSPAN VLAN.
- Avoid using dynamic VLANs for the RSPAN VLAN.

Assign the **RSPAN VLAN** to both the ingress and egress ports on the intermediate switch.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **RSPAN**.
3. Set **RSPAN Intermediate Role** to **Enabled**.

**RSPAN Intermediate VLAN ID** options appear.

4. Configure the following:

Options	Value
<b>RSPAN Intermediate 1st VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID that carries mirrored traffic.
<b>RSPAN Intermediate 2nd VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID that carries mirrored traffic for an additional RSPAN session.

5. Select **Apply** to save changes.

## Configuring a Destination Switch for RSPAN Single-destination Port Mirroring

RSPAN destination switches are the primary exit points for mirrored traffic.

**Note**

Make sure you have a dedicated RSPAN VLAN, with the following requirements:

- Source, intermediate, and destination switches in the same session must use the same RSPAN VLAN.
- RSPAN VLAN must be unique among all RSPAN sessions.
- Do not use management VLANs (L2 switches) or VLAN interfaces (L3 switches) as the RSPAN VLAN.
- Avoid using dynamic VLANs for the RSPAN VLAN.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **RSPAN**.
3. Next to **Port Mirroring Session**, select **Create**.

**Create Port Mirroring Session** appears.

4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Specify a unique session ID. The <b>Session ID</b> is a local setting, and does not need to match Source, intermediate, and destination switches.
<b>RSPAN Type</b>	<b>Destination</b> for RSPAN Destination Switches.
<b>RSPAN VLAN</b>	Specify a VLAN to carry the mirrored traffic.
<b>Destination Port(s)</b>	Specify the destination port or ports for the mirrored traffic.

5. Select **Create**.

The RSPAN session appears on **Port Mirroring Session**.

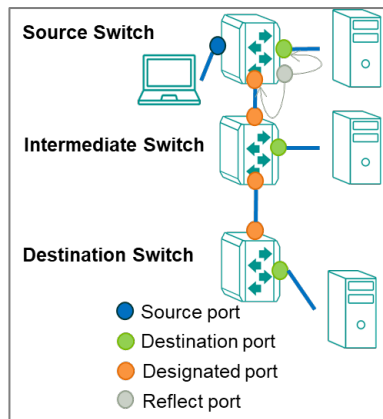
### Configuring Port Mirroring with Multi-destination RSPAN

Port mirroring with multi-destination RSPAN uses the RSPAN VLAN and reflect port mode to support multiple destinations.

RSPAN topologies usually incorporate 3 or more switches between the source and destination ports.

When planning for RSPAN, a given RSPAN switch can only be a source or destination switch once across all RSPAN sessions. For example, Switch A can be a source switch for session 6, and a destination for session 7, but cannot be a source twice.

Intermediate switches can be intermediates for session 6 and 7, but cannot serve in any other roles.



1. Configure source switch.
2. Configure intermediate switch.
3. Configure destination switch.

The following sections outline how to configure RSPAN when the destination port is located on the destination switch.

### Configuring a Source Switch for RSPAN Multi-destination Port Mirroring

To monitor a port and copy traffic to multiple destinations, create an RSPAN session with the source role, specify a source port, and configure **Reflect Port Mode**.

#### Note

Make sure you have a dedicated RSPAN VLAN, with the following requirements:

- Source, intermediate, and destination switches in the same session must use the same RSPAN VLAN.
- RSPAN VLAN must be unique among all RSPAN sessions.
- Do not use management VLANs (L2 switches) or VLAN interfaces (L3 switches) as the RSPAN VLAN.
- Avoid using dynamic VLANs for the RSPAN VLAN.

**Note**

This feature requires a Reflect Port, which has special requirements:

- Dedicated port
- For Layer 2 switches: Membership in management VLAN
- For Layer 3 switches: Membership in VLAN interfaces
- VLANs in Trunk or Hybrid Mode

Additionally, reflect ports with PVIDs from dynamically assigned VLANs are discouraged.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **RSPAN**.
3. Next to **Port Mirroring Session**, select **Create**.

**Create Port Mirroring Session** appears.

4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Specify a unique session ID. The <b>Session ID</b> is a local setting, and does not need to match Source, intermediate, and destination switches.
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	<b>Enabled</b> for multi-destination mirroring. This is required if there are multiple destination ports.
<b>Reflect Port</b>	Select a port. Reflects or "bounces" traffic, often through an external network appliance. Required for multi-destination mirroring.
<b>RSPAN Type</b>	<b>Source</b> for RSPAN source switches.
<b>RSPAN VLAN</b>	Specify a VLAN to carry the mirrored traffic.
<b>Tx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified egress traffic.
<b>Rx Source Port(s)</b>	Mirrors specified ingress traffic.

**Note**

- Specify at least one Tx Source Port(s) or Rx Source Port(s).
- The following must be unique among all sessions:
  - Tx Source Port(s)
  - Rx Source Port(s)

5. Select **Create**.

The RSPAN session appears on **Port Mirroring Session**.

To add RSPAN destination ports on this switch, add the intended destination ports to the RSPAN VLAN.

### Configuring an Intermediate Switch for RSPAN Multi-destination Port Mirroring

RSPAN intermediate switches relay mirrored port traffic from source to destination switches, and can mirror monitored traffic to local ports added to the RSPAN VLAN.

**Note**

Make sure you have a dedicated RSPAN VLAN, with the following requirements:

- Source, intermediate, and destination switches in the same session must use the same RSPAN VLAN.
- RSPAN VLAN must be unique among all RSPAN sessions.
- Do not use management VLANs (L2 switches) or VLAN interfaces (L3 switches) as the RSPAN VLAN.
- Avoid using dynamic VLANs for the RSPAN VLAN.

Assign the **RSPAN VLAN** to both the ingress and egress ports on the intermediate switch.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **RSPAN**.
3. Set **RSPAN Intermediate Role** to **Enabled**.

**RSPAN Intermediate VLAN ID** options appear.

4. Configure the following:

Options	Value
<b>RSPAN Intermediate 1st VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID that carries mirrored traffic.

Options	Value
<b>RSPAN Intermediate 2nd VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID that carries mirrored traffic for an additional RSPAN session.

5. Select **Apply** to save changes.

To add RSPAN destination ports on this switch, add the intended destination ports to the RSPAN VLAN.

### Configuring a Destination Switch for RSPAN Multi-destination Port Mirroring

RSPAN destination switches are the primary exit points for mirrored port traffic. Multiple destination ports can be specified by adding local ports to the RSPAN VLAN.

#### Note

Make sure you have a dedicated RSPAN VLAN, with the following requirements:

- Source, intermediate, and destination switches in the same session must use the same RSPAN VLAN.
- RSPAN VLAN must be unique among all RSPAN sessions.
- Do not use management VLANs (L2 switches) or VLAN interfaces (L3 switches) as the RSPAN VLAN.
- Avoid using dynamic VLANs for the RSPAN VLAN.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**, and then click **RSPAN**.
3. Next to **Port Mirroring Session**, select **Create**.

**Create Port Mirroring Session** appears.

4. Configure the following:

Option	Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Specify a unique session ID.  The <b>Session ID</b> is a local setting, and does not need to match Source, intermediate, and destination switches.
<b>RSPAN Type</b>	<b>Destination</b> for RSPAN Destination Switches.
<b>RSPAN VLAN</b>	Specify a VLAN to carry the mirrored traffic.

5. Select **Create**.

The RSPAN session appears on **Port Mirroring Session**.

To add RSPAN destination ports on this switch, add the intended destination ports to the RSPAN VLAN.

## Port Mirroring

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring**

This page lets you configure port mirroring for your device.

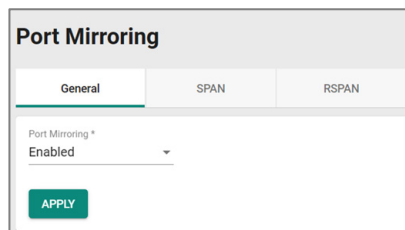
This page includes these tabs:

- General
- SPAN
- RSPAN

### Port Mirroring - General

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring - General**

This page lets you enable or disable port mirroring for your device.



The screenshot shows the 'Port Mirroring' configuration page with three tabs: 'General', 'SPAN', and 'RSPAN'. The 'General' tab is selected. Under the heading 'Port Mirroring \*', there is a dropdown menu currently set to 'Enabled'. Below the dropdown is a green 'APPLY' button.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Port Mirroring</b>	Enable or disable port mirroring to facilitate the creation of SPAN or RSPAN sessions.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

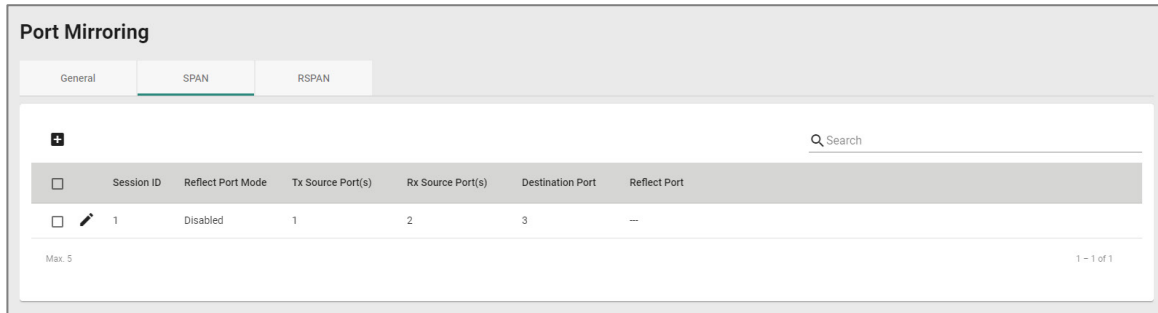
### SPAN

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring - SPAN**

This page lets you view and configure your device's SPAN settings.

## 🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 5 SPAN entries.



## UI Setting Description

**Session ID** Shows the session ID the entry is for.

### 📌 Note

SPAN and RSPAN share 7 sessions, SPAN uses 1 to 5, and RSPAN uses 6 and 7.

**Reflect Port Mode** Shows whether Reflect Port Mode is enabled.

**Tx Source Port(s)** Shows the Tx source ports for the session.

**Rx Source Port(s)** Shows the Rx source ports for the session.

**Destination Port** Shows the destination port for the session.

**Reflect Port** Shows the reflect port for the session.

## Creating a SPAN Session

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Tools](#) > [Port Mirroring - SPAN](#)

Clicking the **Add** (🛠️) icon on the **Diagnosis > Port Mirroring - SPAN** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a SPAN session.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new session.

### Create Session

Session ID \*

Reflect Port Mode \*

Tx Source Port(s)  Rx Source Port(s)

Destination Port \*

Either the TX or RX source ports need to be selected.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Select the session ID to use for the session. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>SPAN and RSPAN share 7 sessions, SPAN uses 1 to 5, and RSPAN uses 6 and 7.</p> </div>	1 to 5	N/A
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	Enable or disable Reflect Port Mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enabled:</b> You can configure a reflect port to mirror packets to multiple destination ports.</li> <li><b>Disabled:</b> Packets will be mirrored to a single destination port.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>Tx Source Port</b>	Specify a port to monitor data packets being sent through it. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Avoid selecting source ports that are in the same VLAN as the reflect port.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Rx Source Port</b>	Specify a port to monitor data packets being received through it. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Avoid selecting source ports that are in the same VLAN as the reflect port.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Reflect Port</b>	Specify this port as the reflect port for Reflect Port Mode to mirror packets to multiple destination ports.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>This port will be specifically reserved for reflect port use, please do not configure it for other uses.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Avoid selecting reflect ports that are in the management VLAN.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Destination Port</b>	Specify the destination port to use for the session.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

## RSPAN

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Tools](#) > [Port Mirroring - RSPAN](#)

This page lets you view and configure your device's RSPAN settings.

#### Limitations

You can create up to 2 RSPAN entries.

## RSPAN Intermediate Settings

### Port Mirroring

General
SPAN
RSPAN

#### RSPAN Intermediate Settings

Make sure that any ports used for RSPAN communication are added to the appropriate RSPAN VLAN.

RSPAN Intermediate Role \*

Disabled ▼

---

RSPAN Intermediate 1st VLAN ID ▼    RSPAN Intermediate 2nd VLAN ID ▼

APPLY


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>RSPAN Intermediate Role</b>	Enable this if the device is in an intermediate role. Disable this if the device is in a source or destination role.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>RSPAN Intermediate 1st/2nd VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to use as the RSPAN intermediate VLAN ID.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The management VLAN ID cannot be used as an RSPAN intermediate VLAN ID.</p> </div> <p>Two RSPAN Intermediate VLAN are supported after v5.x. If you downgrade firmware version to version before v5.x. Only 1st VLAN ID will be reserved in the configuration.</p>	Drop-down list of VLAN IDs	N/A

## RSPAN Session List

+
Q Search

	Session ID	Reflect Port Mode	RSPAN Type	RSPAN VLAN ID	Tx Source Port(s)	Rx Source Port(s)	Destination Port(s) or Designated Port	Reflect Port
□	6	Disabled	Source	5	--	--	Designated Port: G2	--

Max. 2
1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
<b>Session ID</b>	Shows the session ID the entry is for.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> <b>Note</b> SPAN and RSPAN share 7 sessions, SPAN uses 1 to 5, and RSPAN uses 6 and 7.</p> </div>
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	Shows whether Reflect Port Mode is enabled for the session.
<b>RSPAN Type</b>	Shows Source if the device role is an RSPAN source switch. Shows Destination if the device role is an RSPAN destination switch.
<b>RSPAN VLAN ID</b>	Shows the VLAN ID used for the RSPAN.
<b>Tx Source Port</b>	Shows the ports being monitored for Tx packets being sent out.
<b>Rx Source Port</b>	Shows the ports being monitored for Rx packets coming in.
<b>Designated Port</b>	Shows the port set as the designated port.
<b>Reflect Port</b>	Shows the port set as the Reflect Port for Reflect Port Mode to mirror packets to the designated ports.

## Creating an RSPAN Session

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring - RSPAN](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring - RSPAN** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an RSPAN session.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new session.

### Create Session

Session ID \* ▼

Reflect Port Mode \* ▼

RSPAN Type \* ▼

RSPAN VLAN ID \* ▼ i

Tx Source Port(s) ▼ Rx Source Port(s) ▼

Designated Port \* ▼

Either the TX or RX source ports need to be selected.

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Session ID</b>	Select the session ID to use for the session. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>SPAN and RSPAN share 7 sessions, SPAN uses 1 to 5, and RSPAN uses 6 and 7.</p> </div>	6 / 7	N/A
<b>Reflect Port Mode</b>	Enable or disable Reflect Port Mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enable:</b> You can configure a reflect port to mirror packets to destination port(s) in source switch.</li> <li><b>Disable:</b> Packets will be only mirrored to designated port.</li> </ul>	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
<b>RSPAN Type</b>	Select the RSPAN type to use for the session. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Source:</b> The device will act as an RSPAN source switch.</li> <li><b>Destination:</b> The device will act as an RSPAN destination switch.</li> </ul>	Source / Destination	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>RSPAN VLAN ID</b>	Select the VLAN ID to use as the RSPAN VLAN ID. Only existing VLAN IDs can be selected.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Using the management VLAN or VLAN assignment-configured for RSPAN is not recommended.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of VLAN IDs	N/A
<b>Tx Source Port</b>	Select the ports you want to monitor for Tx packets being sent out.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Avoid selecting source ports that are in the RSPAN VLAN.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Rx Source Port</b>	Select the ports you want to monitor for Rx packets coming in.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Avoid selecting source ports that are in the RSPAN VLAN.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Designated Port</b>	Select the port to use as the designated port.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
<b>Reflect Port</b>	Select the port to use as the reflect port for Reflect Port Mode to mirror packets to multiple designated ports.  <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>This port is specifically reserved for reflect port use, please do not configure it for other use.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

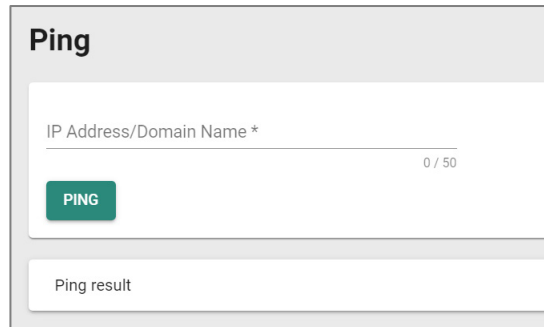
## Ping

Ping lets you use the ping command through the device for a simple, but powerful tool for troubleshooting network problems. The unique feature of this is that even though the ping command is entered in your browser window, the actual ping command will be sent from the Moxa device itself.

## Ping

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Tools](#) > [Ping](#)

This page lets you use the ping function, which is useful for troubleshooting network problems.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>IP Address/Domain Name</b>	Specify the IP address or domain name you want to ping, then click the <b>PING</b> button. The ping result will be displayed below.	Valid IP address or domain name up to 50 characters	N/A

## Event Logs and Notifications

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#)

This section lets you set up and view your device's event logs and notifications.

This section includes these pages:

- Event Logs
- Event Notifications
- Syslog
- SNMP Trap/Inform
- Email Settings
- Relay Alarm

## About Event Logs

Event logs automatically record important events that happen on the network connected to a switch. They are useful when troubleshooting network issues.

These events can include:

- **Changes in connection status:** This could be a cable being plugged in or unplugged, a device joining or leaving the network, or a port going up or down.
- **Errors:** The switch might detect issues like data corruption, excessive traffic, or problems with specific ports.
- **Security events:** Some switches can log attempts to access the switch itself or suspicious activity on the network.

## Event Logs

**Menu Path:** [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Logs](#)

This page lets you browse and export your device's various event logs.

This page includes these tabs:

- Event Logs
- Oversize Action
- Backup

### Event Logs - Event Logs

**Menu Path:** [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Logs - Event Logs](#)

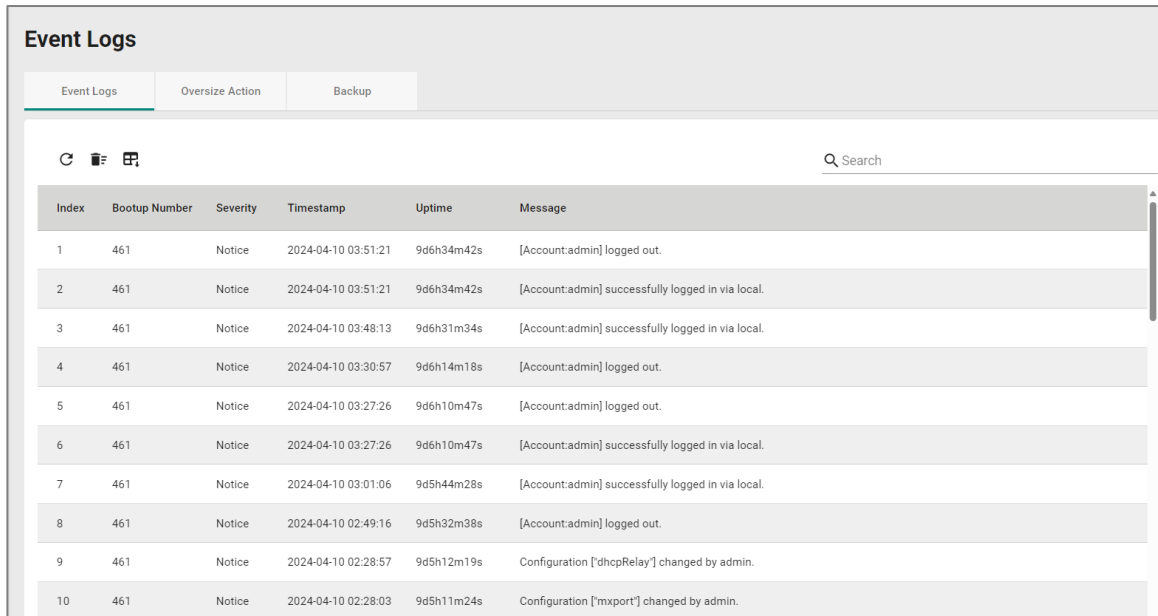
This page lets you view your device's event logs.

#### **Limitations**

The system log can record up to 10000 events.

## Actions

- Click the **Refresh icon** (🔄) to refresh the logs.
- Click the **Clear System Log icon** (🗑️) to delete all logs.
- Click the **Export icon** (📄) to export all logs to a file.



The screenshot shows the 'Event Logs' interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Event Logs' (selected), 'Oversize Action', and 'Backup'. Below the tabs, there are three icons: a refresh icon (🔄), a clear system log icon (🗑️), and an export icon (📄). A search bar is located on the right side. The main content is a table with the following columns: Index, Bootup Number, Severity, Timestamp, Uptime, and Message. The table contains 10 rows of log entries.

Index	Bootup Number	Severity	Timestamp	Uptime	Message
1	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:51:21	9d6h34m42s	[Account:admin] logged out.
2	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:51:21	9d6h34m42s	[Account:admin] successfully logged in via local.
3	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:48:13	9d6h31m34s	[Account:admin] successfully logged in via local.
4	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:30:57	9d6h14m18s	[Account:admin] logged out.
5	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:27:26	9d6h10m47s	[Account:admin] logged out.
6	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:27:26	9d6h10m47s	[Account:admin] successfully logged in via local.
7	461	Notice	2024-04-10 03:01:06	9d5h44m28s	[Account:admin] successfully logged in via local.
8	461	Notice	2024-04-10 02:49:16	9d5h32m38s	[Account:admin] logged out.
9	461	Notice	2024-04-10 02:28:57	9d5h12m19s	Configuration [dhcpRelay] changed by admin.
10	461	Notice	2024-04-10 02:28:03	9d5h11m24s	Configuration [mlexport] changed by admin.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Index</b>	Shows the index of the event.
<b>Bootup Number</b>	Shows the total number of times the device has been powered on. The number increases by 1 every time the device is powered on.
<b>Severity</b>	Shows the severity categorization of the event.
<b>Timestamp</b>	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
<b>Uptime</b>	Shows the uptime of the device after it is powered on.
<b>Message</b>	Shows additional information about the event, based on the type of event. The username of the account will also be recorded for the following events: <b>Login Success, Login Fail, User Logout.</b>

## Event Logs - Oversize Action

### Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Logs - Oversize Action

This page lets you configure the system's oversize action when the event log reaches its maximum number of entries.

## Oversize Action

The screenshot shows the 'Event Logs' configuration page with the 'Oversize Action' tab selected. The 'Oversize Action' dropdown is set to 'Overwrite the oldest event log'. The 'Capacity Warning' dropdown is set to 'Disabled'. The 'Warning Threshold' is set to '80' with a range of '50 - 100 %' indicated below it. An 'APPLY' button is located at the bottom of the configuration area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Oversize Action</b>	Select the action to take when the event log reaches its maximum number of entries. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Overwrite the oldest event log:</b> New events will overwrite the oldest events.</li><li><b>Stop recording event log:</b> No new events will be recorded. This will also disable port monitoring.</li></ul>	Overwrite the oldest event log / Stop recording event log	Overwrite the oldest event log
<b>Capacity Warning</b>	Enable or disable capacity warnings.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Warning Threshold</b>	Set the warning threshold as a percentage. When <b>Capacity Warning</b> is enabled, a warning event log will be triggered when the event log reaches this threshold.	50% to 100%	80%

## Event Logs - Backup

### Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Logs - Backup

This page lets you back up the event logs through various methods.

### Event Logs - Backup Settings - Local

If **Method** is set to **Local**, these settings will appear. Click **BACK UP** to save the event logs to your local computer.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Method</b>	Select a method for backing up event logs.	Local / TFTP / SFTP / USB	Local

### Event Logs - Backup Settings - TFTP

If **Method** is set to **TFTP**, these settings will appear. Click **BACK UP** to save the event log to the specified TFTP server.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Method</b>	Select a method for backing up event logs.	Local / TFTP / SFTP / USB	Local
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server to upload the event logs to.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify a file name to use for the event logs file.	File name can only contain A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or the symbols -._(.).	N/A

### Event Logs - Backup Settings - SFTP

If **Method** is set to **SFTP**, these settings will appear. Click **BACK UP** to save the event log to the specified SFTP server.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Method</b>	Select a method for backing up event logs.	Local / TFTP / SFTP / USB	Local
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the SFTP server to upload the event logs to.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>File Name</b>	Specify a file name to use for the event logs file.	File name can only contain A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or the symbols -._().	N/A
<b>Account</b>	Enter the SFTP server account name to use to connect to the SFTP server.	N/A	N/A
<b>Password</b>	Enter the SFTP server account password to use to connect to the SFTP server.	N/A	N/A

### Event Logs - Backup Settings - USB

If **Method** is set to **USB**, these settings will appear. Click **BACK UP** to save the event log to an ABC-02 configuration tool connected to your device's USB port.

#### Note

To use this feature, USB Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.

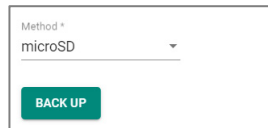
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Method</b>	Select a method for backing up event logs.	Local / TFTP / SFTP / USB	Local

## Event Logs - Backup Settings - microSD

If **Method** is set to **microSD**, these settings will appear. Click **BACK UP** to save the event log to a microSD card inserted into your device's microSD slot.

### **Note**

To use this feature, microSD Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interfaces.



The screenshot shows a UI element with a label 'Method \*' and a dropdown menu currently displaying 'microSD'. Below the dropdown is a green button labeled 'BACK UP'.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Method</b>	Select a method for backing up event logs.	Local / TFTP / SFTP / USB	Local

## Auto Event Log Backup

When **Automatically Back Up** is enabled, when the event log is full, the earliest 1000 event logs will be backed up to an inserted ABC-02 configuration tool or microSD card and then deleted from the device.

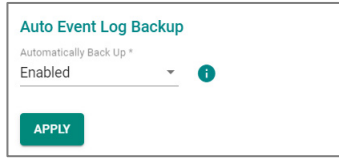
### **Note**

To use an ABC-02 configuration tool, USB Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.

To use a microSD card, microSD Function must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interfaces.

### **Note**

If both an ABC-02 configuration tool and a microSD card are inserted into the device, the ABC-02 configuration tool will be used.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Automatically Back Up</b>	Enable or disable automatic backup of your event logs.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

## About Event Notifications

Event Notifications act like an alert system for the network. They allow you to be proactively notified when important events occur on the device or for other network devices connected to it.

### Event Notifications

**Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Notifications](#)**

This page lets you configure notifications for various kinds of events.

This page includes these tabs:

- System and Functions
- Port


### Event Notifications - System and Functions

**Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Notifications - System and Functions](#)**

This page lets you configure notification settings for various system events related to the overall functions of the device. Each event can be configured independently with different warning methods and severity classifications.

## Event Notifications List

Group	Event Name	Enabled	Severity	Registered Action
General	Cold start	Enabled	Critical	Trap, Email
General	Warm start	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Configuration changed	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Login success	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Login failed	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email
General	Login logout	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email
General	Account settings changed	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Configuration imported	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	SSL certification changed	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Log capacity threshold	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email
General	Password changed	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Power On-Off	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
General	Power Off-On	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email
Switching	Topology changed	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email
Switching	Coupling changed	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email
Switching	Master changed	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email
Switching	Master mismatch	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email

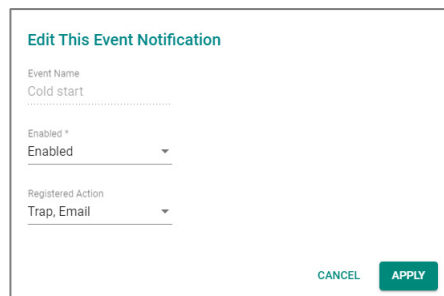
UI Setting	Description
<b>Group</b>	Shows which group this event belongs to.
<b>Event Name</b>	Shows the name of the event. Refer to <a href="#">Event Log Descriptions</a> for more details.
<b>Enabled</b>	Shows whether event notifications are enabled for this kind of event.
<b>Severity</b>	Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the <a href="#">Severity Level List</a> for more details.
<b>Registered Action</b>	Shows which action will be taken for this kind of event. <b>Trap:</b> A notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is triggered. <b>Email:</b> A notification is sent to the email server defined in the <a href="#">Email Settings</a> section. <b>Relay:</b> A notification is sent through the relay interface, if the device has one, when the event is triggered.
	<p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The types of actions available may vary depending on the event type and the device model.</p>

## Editing an Event Notification

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Notifications - System and Functions](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - System and Functions** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the notification settings for the selected event.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



**Edit This Event Notification**

Event Name  
Cold start

Enabled \*  
Enabled

Registered Action  
Trap, Email

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Event Name (View-only)</b>	Shows the name of the event. Refer to <a href="#">Event Log Descriptions</a> for more information.	(Fixed)	(Fixed)
<b>Enabled</b>	Enable or disable notifications for this event.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Registered Action</b>	Select which actions to take when the event occurs. Multiple actions may be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Trap</b>: A notification will be sent to the Trap server.</li><li>• <b>Email</b>: A notification email will be sent to the email server defined in the <a href="#">Email Settings</a> section.</li><li>• <b>Relay</b>: An alarm notification will be triggered through the relay output of the device, if your device is equipped with one.</li></ul>	Trap / Email / Relay	Trap, Email

## Event Notifications - Port

### Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port

This page lets you configure notification settings for various events related to your device's physical ports. Each port can be configured independently with different warning methods and severity classifications.

When a port event is triggered, the FAULT LED on your device will also light up if your device has one.

### Port Event List

Event Name	Enable	Severity	Registered Action	Registered Port
Port On	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, G1, G2, G3, G4, G5, G6, G7, G8
Port Off	Enabled	Notice	Trap, Email	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, G1, G2, G3, G4, G5, G6, G7, G8
Port shut down by Port Security	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, G1, G2, G3, G4, G5, G6, G7, G8
Port shut down by Rate Limit	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, G1, G2, G3, G4, G5, G6, G7, G8
Port recovered by Rate Limit	Enabled	Warning	Trap, Email	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, G1, G2, G3, G4, G5, G6, G7, G8

UI Setting	Description
<b>Event Name</b>	Shows the name of the port event.
<b>Enable</b>	Shows whether event notifications are enabled for this kind of event.
<b>Severity</b>	Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the <a href="#">Severity Level List</a> for more details.
<b>Registered Action</b>	Shows which action will be taken for this kind of event. <b>Trap:</b> A notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is triggered. <b>Email:</b> A notification is sent to the email server defined in the <a href="#">Email Settings</a> section. <b>Syslog:</b> An event log is recorded to the Syslog server defined in the <a href="#">Syslog</a> section. <b>Relay:</b> A notification is sent through the relay interface, if the device has one, when the event is triggered.

UI Setting	Description
<b>Registered Port</b>	Shows the ports that use the registered action.

## Editing a Port Event Notification

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port**

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the notification settings for the selected port.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Event Name (View-only)</b>	Shows the name of the port event.	(Fixed)	(Fixed)
<b>Enabled</b>	Enable or disable notifications for this event.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
<b>Registered Action</b>	Select which actions to take when the event occurs. Multiple actions may be selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Trap:</b> A notification will be sent to the Trap server.</li> <li>• <b>Email:</b> A notification email will be sent to the email server defined in the Email Settings section.</li> <li>• <b>Relay:</b> An alarm notification will be triggered through the relay output of the device, if your device is equipped with one.</li> </ul>	Trap / Email / Relay	Trap, Email

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Registered Port</b>	Specify the ports that will use the registered action.	Drop-down list of ports	All Ports

## Syslog

Syslog allows you to centralize event logs on a dedicated server. This provides a more comprehensive record of network activity compared to the limited storage on an individual device, aiding in troubleshooting and security analysis.

When an event occurs, an event notification can be sent as a syslog UDP packet to specified syslog servers. Each syslog server can be enabled individually.

Administrators can manually import self-signed certificates for syslog client services. However, they should check the root certificate and validity of the signature before importing, according to the organization's security procedures and requirements. After importing a certificate, the administrator should check if the certificate has been revoked and if so, the certificate must be replaced. When the device sends an imported certificate to the syslog server, the syslog server will attempt to verify the certificate against the approved certificate pool on the server.

## Syslog

**Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Syslog](#)**

This page lets you manage your device's Syslog.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Authentication

**Note**

In order to ensure the security of your network, we recommend the following:

- The encryption algorithm of keys should be selected based on internationally recognized and proven security practices and recommendations.
- The lifetime of certificates generated for syslog client services should be short and in accordance with the organization's security procedures and requirements.
- For security reasons, it is recommended to send event logs to a centralized syslog server for continuous network event monitoring.

## Syslog - General

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog - General**

This page lets you configure the Syslog server settings.

## Syslog Settings

**Note**

If the syslog server cannot receive previous logs, it is possible that the receiving port of the syslog server is not ready. We suggest you enable the Linkup Delay function to delay the log delivery time.

The screenshot shows the 'Syslog' configuration page with two tabs: 'General' and 'Authentication'. The 'General' tab is selected. The configuration includes:

- Syslog \***: Disabled
- Syslog Server 1 \***: Disabled. **Authentication \***: Disabled. **UDP Port**: 514 (range 1 - 65535).
- Syslog Server 2 \***: Disabled. **Authentication \***: Disabled. **UDP Port**: 514 (range 1 - 65535).
- Syslog Server 3 \***: Disabled. **Authentication \***: Disabled. **UDP Port**: 514 (range 1 - 65535).

An **APPLY** button is located at the bottom left of the configuration area.

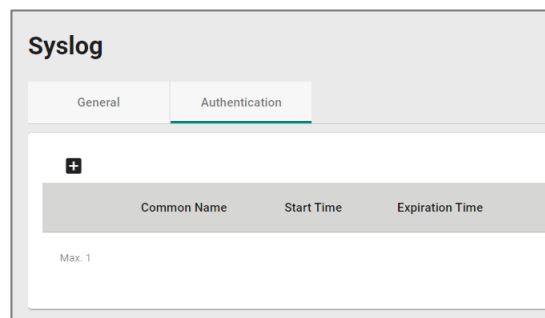
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Syslog</b>	Enable or disable the syslog logging for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Syslog Server 1/2/3</b>	Enable or disable the specified syslog server.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Authentication</b>	Select whether to authenticate via TLS or disable authentication.  <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>To enable TLS, a certificate and key set must be created first on the "Authentication" tab.</p> </div>	Disabled / TLS	Disabled
<b>IP Address/ Domain Name</b>	Enter the IP address or domain name of the related syslog server.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
<b>UDP Port</b>	Specify the UDP port of the related syslog server.	1 to 65535	514

## Syslog - Authentication

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Syslog - Authentication](#)

This page lets you manually import self-signed certificates for syslog client services.

## Syslog Certificate List



UI Setting	Description
<b>Common Name</b>	Shows the name of the imported certificate and keys.




UI Setting	Description
<b>Start Time</b>	Shows the start time of the imported certificate and keys.
<b>Expiration Time</b>	Shows the expiration time of the imported certificate and keys.

## Adding a Syslog Certificate and Key Set

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Syslog - Authentication](#)

This page lets you add a client certificate and key for Syslog authentication.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Client Certificate</b>	Click the folder  icon and select a client certificate file from your computer to import.	N/A	N/A
<b>Client Key</b>	Click the folder  icon and select a client key file from your computer to import.	N/A	N/A
<b>CA Key</b>	Click the folder  icon and select a CA certificate file from your computer to import.	N/A	N/A

## About SNMP Trap/Inform

SNMP Trap allows an SNMP agent to notify the NMS of a significant event.

Your device supports two SNMP modes: **Trap** mode and **Inform** mode.

SNMP Trap/Inform allows your switch to actively send real-time notifications about critical events to network management systems. This proactive alerting can help identify and address network issues faster, improving overall network health and uptime.

## SNMP Trap/Inform

**Menu Path:** [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform](#)

This page lets you configure the SNMP Trap/Inform notification feature.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts

### SNMP Trap/Inform - General

**Menu Path:** [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform - General](#)

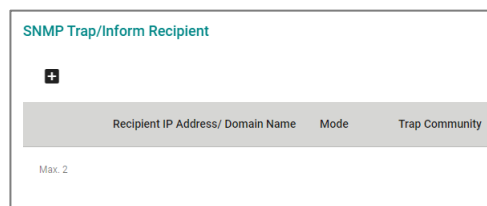
This page lets you configure the SNMP Trap/Inform settings of your device.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

#### **ⓘ** Limitations

You can configure up to 2 SNMP trap/inform recipients.

### SNMP Trap/Inform Recipients



The screenshot shows a configuration page titled "SNMP Trap/Inform Recipient". It features a table with three columns: "Recipient IP Address/ Domain Name", "Mode", and "Trap Community". A plus sign icon is visible in the top left corner of the table area, indicating an add button. Below the table, the text "Max. 2" is displayed, indicating the maximum number of recipients that can be configured.

Recipient IP Address/ Domain Name	Mode	Trap Community
Max. 2		

UI Setting	Description
<b>Recipient IP Address/ Domain Name</b>	Shows the IP address or the name of the recipient trap server that will receive notifications.
<b>Mode</b>	Shows the mode used for SNMP notifications.
<b>Trap Community</b>	Shows the community string used for authentication.

## Creating an SNMP Trap/Inform Host

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform - General](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add an SNMP Trap/Inform server.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new server.

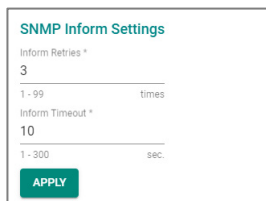
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Recipient IP Address/ Domain Name</b>	Specify the IP address or the name of the recipient trap server that will receive notifications.	Valid IP address or domain name, 0 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Mode</b>	Select a mode to use for SNMP notifications. Trap notifications are sent without requesting an acknowledgement from the recipient. Inform notifications will request an acknowledgement from the recipient, and will retry sending the notification if the acknowledgement is not received.  <b>Trap V1:</b> Use Trap V1 for SNMP notifications. <b>Trap V2c:</b> Use Trap V2 for SNMP notifications. <b>Inform V2c:</b> Use Inform V2 for SNMP notifications. <b>Trap V3:</b> Use Trap V3 for SNMP notifications. <b>Inform V3:</b> Use Inform V3 for SNMP notifications.	Trap V1 / Trap V2 / Inform V2 / Trap V3 / Inform V3	N/A
<b>Trap Community</b>	Specify the community string that will be used for authentication.	4 to 32 characters	N/A

## SNMP Inform Settings

### Note

These settings only apply to SNMP Trap/Inform entries that have Trap Mode set to Inform V2c or Inform V3.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Inform Retries</b>	Specify the number of times to retry sending an inform notification.	1 to 99	3
<b>Inform Timeout</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds to wait to wait for an acknowledgement before trying to resend an inform notification.	1 to 300	10

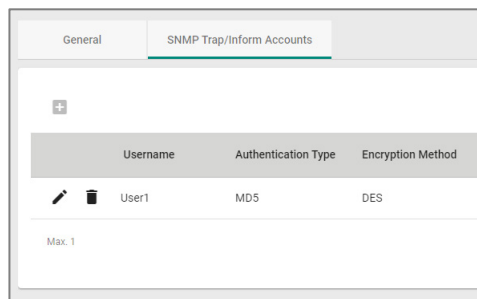
## SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts](#)

This page lets you configure an SNMP trap account for your device.

#### **Limitations**

You can configure up to 1 SNMP trap/inform account.



UI Setting	Description
<b>Username</b>	Shows the username for the SNMP trap account.
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Shows which authentication method is used for the account.
<b>Encryption Method</b>	Shows which encryption method is used for the account.

## Creating an SNMP Trap Account

### Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts** page will open this dialog box.

This dialog lets you add an SNMP trap account for your device.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

**Create an SNMP Trap Account**

Username \*  
Minimum 4 characters 0 / 32

Authentication Type \*  
MD5 Authentication Password \* Minimum 8 characters 0 / 64

Encryption Method \*  
DES Encryption Key \* Minimum 8 characters 0 / 64

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username for the SNMP Trap account.	4 to 32 characters	N/A
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select which authentication method to use for the account.	None / MD5 / SHA / SHA-256 / SHA-512	None
<b>Authentication Key (if Authentication Type is MD5 or SHA)</b>	Specify an authentication key to use for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A
<b>Encryption Method</b>	Disable encryption or select which encryption method to use for the account.	Disabled / DES / AES	Disabled
<b>Encryption Key (if Encryption Method is DES or AES)</b>	Specify an encryption password for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A

## Editing an SNMP Trap Account

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts**


Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an account on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the account's settings.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Username</b>	Specify a username for the SNMP Trap account.	4 to 32 characters	N/A
<b>Authentication Type</b>	Select which authentication method to use for the account. Click <b>CHANGE PASSWORD</b> to specify a new authentication password for the account.	None / MD5 / SHA / SHA-256 / SHA-512	None
<b>Encryption Method</b>	Disable encryption or select which encryption method to use for the account. Click <b>CHANGE ENCRYPTION KEY</b> to specify a new encryption key for the account.	Disabled / DES / AES	Disabled

## Deleting an SNMP Trap Account

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Trap/Inform Accounts**

You can delete an account by clicking its **Delete** (  ) icon.

## About Email Settings

Email Settings lets you configure email notifications for important events. This lets you receive alerts directly in your inbox, providing a convenient way to stay informed about critical network issues.

## Email Settings

### Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Email Settings

This page lets you configure your device's email notification settings. You can specify which mail server and account to use, and which email addresses to send email notifications to.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

The screenshot shows the 'Email Settings' configuration interface. It features several input fields: 'Server IP Address' with the value '0.0.0.0', 'TCP Port' with '25', 'Username' and 'Password' both with '0 / 60' character counts, a 'TLS' dropdown menu set to 'Disabled', 'Sender Address' with 'admin@localhost.com' and '19 / 63' characters, and five 'Recipient Email Address' fields, each with '0 / 63' characters. A green 'APPLY' button is located at the bottom left of the form area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Specify the IP address of the email server.	Valid IP address	N/A
<b>TCP Port</b>	Specify the TCP port of the email server.	1 to 65535	25
<b>Username</b>	Specify the username used to log in to the email server.	0 to 60 characters	N/A
<b>Password</b>	Specify the password used to log in to the email server.	0 to 60 characters	N/A
<b>TLS</b>	Enable or disable TLS (Transport Layer Security).	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Sender Address</b>	Specify the sender email address to use for email notifications.	1 to 63 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>1st/2nd/3rd/4th/5th Recipient Email Address</b>	Enter an email address to send email notifications to. You can set up to 5 email addresses to send email notifications to.	0 to 63 characters	N/A

## Relay Alarm

**Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Relay Alarm**

This page lets you see the status of the relay alarm and configure related settings.

### Relay Alarm Cut-Off Status

UI Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Shows the name of the relay.
<b>Status</b>	Shows whether the relay is currently open or closed.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Fault LED Display</b>	Enable or disable whether the fault LED on the device will turn on if the relay alarm is triggered.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

# Industrial Application

## Menu Path: Industrial Application

This section lets you manage settings related to specific industrial applications.

This section includes these pages:

- Modbus TCP
- EtherNet/IP
- PROFINET

## Industrial Application - User Privileges

Privileges to settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Modbus TCP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>EtherNet/IP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>PROFINET</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## About Modbus TCP

Modbus is a vendor neutral and commonly used communication protocol to monitor and control industrial automation equipment such as PLCs, sensors, and meters. It is a messaging structure used to establish multiple client-server applications to monitor or program devices.

In order to be fully integrated into industrial systems, Moxa's switches support the Modbus TCP/IP protocol for real-time monitoring in a SCADA system.

## Modbus In Depth

Modbus uses a client/server communication structure that is based on transactions built between client and server. The client requests to read or write server data and the server replies with a message to confirm after completing the instruction.

The message format between client/server at a minimum must include a Protocol Data Unit (PDU) and may also include an Application Data Unit (ADU). The PDU includes function code and data. The function code is the instruction code to read or write server data, and the data includes related parameters for the instruction, such as reading the data in certain addresses.

Moxa switches can act as a Modbus server to reply to Modbus clients like a SCADA.

- Supports up to 5 simultaneous connections from clients
- Closes a connection when there are no Modbus TCP requests received through the connection for 60 seconds
- Closes all Modbus TCP connections within 5 seconds when all switch ports are link down
- Supports Function Code 4 with 16-bit (2-word) data access for read-only information

Data Access Type		Function Code	Function Name
<b>Word access (16-bit access)</b>	Physical input registers	4	Read input registers

Information that clients can request:

- System information
- Port information
- Packet information
- Redundancy information

Refer to [Modbus Data Map and Information](#) for detailed data maps and more information.

## Modbus TCP

**Menu Path: Industrial Application > Modbus TCP**

This page lets you enable Modbus TCP functionality for your device.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Modbus TCP</b>	Enable or disable Modbus TCP for your device. This allows your device to be detected in a Modbus TCP network.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

## About EtherNet/IP

EtherNet/IP is a commercial-off-the-shelf industrial protocol based on IEEE 802.3 combined with the TCP/IP Suite managed by the ODVA association.

EtherNet/IP follows the OSI model and implements Common Industrial Protocol (CIP). CIP is an object-oriented protocol and ODVA defining several communication objects in CIP. Moxa switches support a subset of these objects as a device role in EtherNet/IP ecosystem.

EtherNet/IP is widely adopted as a standard communication protocol among devices in industrial ecosystems. For example, Rockwell Automation uses EtherNet/IP as the standard protocol for their Logix controllers over Ethernet networks. Moxa switches also provide EtherNet/IP features to integrate with the Rockwell system and monitor the status of switches and PLCs, making switches a part of the Rockwell system.

## EtherNet/IP

**Menu Path: Industrial Application > EtherNet/IP**

This page lets you enable EtherNet/IP functionality for your device.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>EtherNet/IP</b>	Enable or disable EtherNet/IP for your device. This allows your device to be detected in an EtherNet/IP network.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

## About PROFINET

PROFINET is an open industrial Ethernet communication protocol proposed by PROFIBUS & PROFINET International (PI), an organization dedicated to industrial communication standards. It is fully compatible with Ethernet as defined in the IEEE standard and has been included in the IEC 61158 and IEC 61784 standards since 2003. PROFINET enables the implementation of applications for production and process automation, safety applications, and a wide range of drive technology.

## Node Roles

PROFINET includes three node roles:

- **IO-Controllers:** IO-Controllers control the automated tasks of IO-Devices and collect relevant information for users.
- **IO-Supervisors:** IP-supervisors are usually PC-based software and allow users to configure parameters and diagnose the status of individual modules. IO-Supervisors do not participate directly in routine operations.
- **IO-Devices:** IO-Devices are controlled and monitored by IO-Controllers, and may include several modules or submodules. A device model describes all field devices in terms of their possible technical and functional features. A device model is specified by the DAP (Device Access Point) and the defined modules for a particular device family. A DAP is the access point for communication with the Ethernet interface and the processing program.
  - This Moxa device is a PROFINET I/O device.

## GSD Files

General Station Description (GSD) files for the field devices to be configured are required for system engineering. A GSD is an XML-based file that describes the properties and

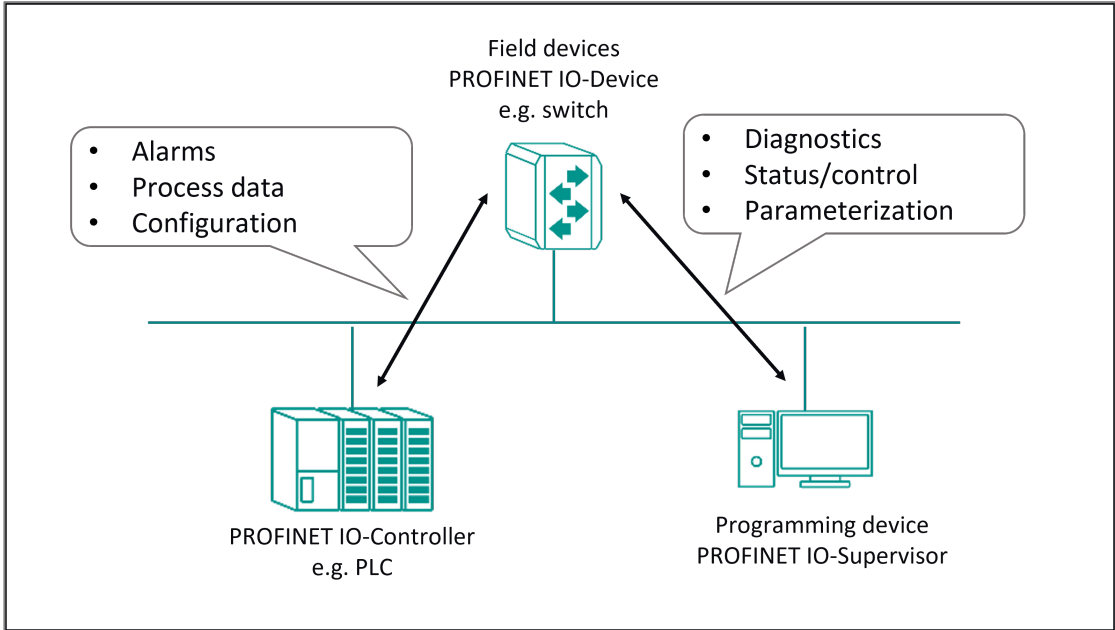
functions of the PROFINET I/O field devices. It contains data relevant for engineering as well as for data exchange with the device.

You can download the field device GSD file for this device from the Moxa website.

### PROFINET In Depth

PROFINET IO operates through IO-Supervisors, IO-Controllers, and IO-Devices, and can fulfill various levels of requirements through periodic and aperiodic data transmission.

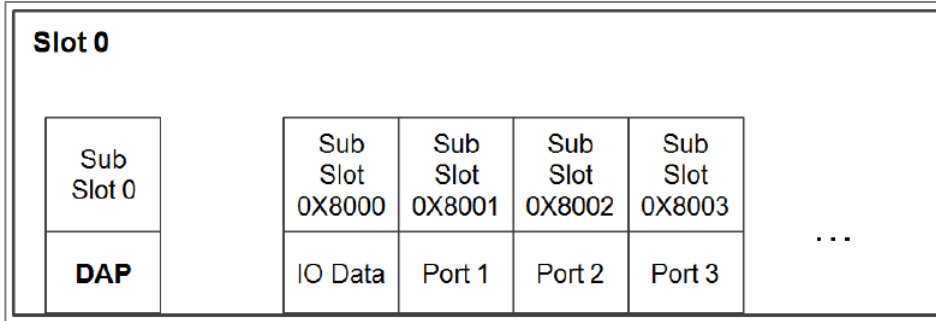
IO-Devices are standalone units designed to transmit real-time (RT) information to IO-Controllers (PLCs). They do not attempt to communicate directly with other devices. Instead, they directly provide their real-time (cyclic) data to an IO-Controller and may send some alarm or diagnostic (acyclic) data to an IO-Supervisor.



### PROFINET Attributes and TIA Portal Integration

#### Addressing of I/O Data in PROFINET I/O Based on Slot and Sub-Slots

The concept of the Moxa PROFINET switch is shown in the table below. In this structure, each switch port represents one sub-slot.



### Manufacturer Information

Each PROFINET device is addressed based on a MAC address. This address is unique worldwide. The company code (bits 47 to 24) can be obtained from the IEEE Standards Department free of charge. This part is called the OUI (organizationally unique identifier).

MOXA OUI Table:

Bit Value 47..24						Bit Value 23..0					
0	0	0	2	2	9	x	x	x	x	x	x
Company Code (OUI)						Consecutive Number					

### PROFINET Attributes

Combined with the General Station Description (GSD) file, an IO-Controller can quickly configure settings for different devices and seamlessly replace devices. A PROFINET IO General Station Description (GSD) file is a description of an IO-Device provided by the device manufacturer. The contents of the GSD file contain configuration information, parameters, modules, diagnostics and alarms, and vendor and device identification.

### PROFINET Cyclic I/O Data Table

- **Device Status**

Category	Direction	Byte	Bit	Name	Description
<b>Device</b>	Input	0	0	Device status	0 is failed status, 1 is OK.
			1	Power 1	0 is unavailable, 1 is OK
			2	Power 2	0 is unavailable, 1 is OK

Category	Direction	Byte	Bit	Name	Description
<b>Device</b>	Input	1		Reserved for redundancy protocol	

- **Port Status**

Category	Direction	Byte	Bit	Name	Description
<b>Port</b>	Input	0	0	Port 1 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected
			1	Port 2 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected
			2	Port 3 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected
			{ ... }	{ ... }	{ ... }
		7	Port 8 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected	
		1	1	Port 9 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected
			2	Port 10 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected
			{ ... }	{ ... }	{ ... }
		7	7	Port 64 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected
		<b>Port</b>	Input	8	0
1	Port channel 2 Connection				0 is not connected, 1 is connected
{ ... }	{ ... }				{ ... }
11	7			Port channel 32 Connection	0 is not connected, 1 is connected

You can monitor these attributes in the TIA Portal.

Monitoring Device I/O Cyclic Data and Port I/O Cyclic Data in the TIA Portal:

Name	Address	Display format	Monitor value	Modify value	Comment	Tag comment
"Cyclic Data - Device Status - All"	%I80	Hex	16#00	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Device Status"	%I0.0	Bool	TRUE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Power 1"	%I0.1	Bool	TRUE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Power 2"	%I0.2	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port Status - All"	%I92	Hex	16#403D	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 1"	%I2.0	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 2"	%I2.1	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 3"	%I2.2	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 4"	%I2.3	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 5"	%I2.4	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 6"	%I2.5	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 7"	%I2.6	Bool	TRUE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 8"	%I2.7	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 9"	%I3.0	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 10"	%I3.1	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 11"	%I3.2	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 12"	%I3.3	Bool	FALSE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 13"	%I3.4	Bool	TRUE	<input type="checkbox"/>		
"Cyclic Data - Port 14"	%I3.5	Bool	TRUE	<input type="checkbox"/>		

## PROFINET I/O Parameters

Moxa defines comprehensive PROFINET I/O parameters for more flexible settings and monitoring. The attributes are readable or writable. PROFINET I/O parameters use PROFINET acyclic data to achieve communication in the network. You can use the TIA Portal tool or engineering deployment software to edit it.

There are 2 categories of parameters, including Device Status and Device Alarms.

The following tables provide parameter information:

- r/w: Read and Write
- ro: Read Only

## Device Status

Byte	Name	Access	Value	Description
<b>0</b>	PLC Connection Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Connection failure
			2	OK
<b>1</b>	PLC Connection Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Device detect fault
			2	OK

Byte	Name	Access	Value	Description
<b>2</b>	Power 1 Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Power 1 fails
			2	OK
<b>3</b>	Power 2 Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Power 2 fails
			2	OK
<b>4</b>	DI 1 Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Closed
			2	Open
<b>5</b>	DI 2 Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Closed
			2	Open
<b>6</b>	Spanning Tree Config	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Disable
			2	RSTP
			3	MSTP
<b>7</b>	Turbo Ring v2 Config	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Disable
			2	Enable
<b>8</b>	Turbo Ring v2 Ring 1 Config	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Disable
			2	Enable
<b>9</b>	Turbo Ring v2 Ring 1 Status	ro	0	Unavailable

Byte	Name	Access	Value	Description
			1	Disable
			2	Broken
			3	Healthy
<b>10</b>	Turbo Ring v2 Ring 2 Config	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Disable
			2	Enable
<b>11</b>	Turbo Ring v2 Ring 2 Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Connection failure
			2	OK
<b>12</b>	Turbo Chain Config	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Disable
			2	Head
			3	Member
			4	Tail
<b>13</b>	Dual Homing Config	ro	0	Unavailabe
			1	Disable
			2	Primary path always first
			3	Maintain current path
			4	Primary path sensing recovery
<b>14</b>	Media Redundancy Protocol Config	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Disable
			2	Enable
<b>15</b>	Media Redundancy Protocol Manager Status	ro	0	Unavailable

Byte	Name	Access	Value	Description
			1	Disable
			2	Initiation
			3	Awaiting Connection
			4	Primary Ring Port Link Up
			5	Ring Open
			6	Ring Closed
<b>16</b>	Media Redundancy Protocol Client Status	ro	0	Unavailable
			1	Connection failure
			2	OK
			3	Awaiting Connection
			4	Data Exchange Idle
			5	Pass Through
			6	Data Exchange
			7	Pass Through Idle

## Device Alarms

These parameters control PROFINET Alarm functions. A PROFINET alarm is a message which is sent from the switch to a PLC immediately once the event is triggered.

Byte	Name	Access	Value	Description	Default Value
<b>0</b>	Status Alarm	rw	0	Do not send any alarms	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if any status change	
<b>1</b>	Power Alarm 1	rw	0	Do not send power failed alarm	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if power supply 1 fails	

Byte	Name	Access	Value	Description	Default Value
2	Power Alarm 2	rw	0	Do not send power failed alarm	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if power supply 2 fails	
3	RSTP Topology Changed Alarm	rw	0	Do not send RSTP topology changed alarm	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if RSTP topology changed	
4	MSTP Topology Changed Alarm	rw	0	Do not send MSTP topology changed alarm	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if MSTP topology changed	
5	Turbo Ring V2 Ring Broken	rw	0	Do not send TR2 broken alarm	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if TR2 is broken	
6	MRP Ring Broken	rw	0	Do not send MRP broken alarm	0: No alarms
			1	Send alarm if MRP is broken	

## Reset to Factory Mode

The following table is the list of Reset to Factory Modes supported by MOXA:

Reset to Factory Modes	Mode Description	Action taken
<b>Mode 0 - Factory Default Mode</b>	Original Factory Reset	Cleans all configured settings including PROFINET
<b>Mode 1</b>	Reset Application data	Resets I&M data and the alarm configuration of devices and ports
<b>Mode 2</b>	Reset Communication parameter	Resets Device Name to " " and IP to 0.0.0.0
<b>Mode 3</b>	Reset Engineering parameter	Performs Mode 1, 2, and clears all configured settings

# PROFINET

## Menu Path: Industrial Application > PROFINET

This page lets you manage PROFINET functionality on your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

## PROFINET - Settings

### Menu Path: Industrial Application > PROFINET - Settings

This page lets you configure PROFINET for your device.

PROFINET \*  
Disabled

Interface Name \*  
vlan1

Device Name

The maximum characters for a label is 63 0 / 240

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>PROFINET</b>	Enable or disable PROFINET for your device. This allows your device to be detected in a PROFINET network.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
<b>Interface Name</b> <b>(Only for L3 models)</b>	Select which interface to use for PROFINET.	Drop-down list of interfaces	vlan1

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
<b>Device Name</b>	<p>Specify the labels you want to use to identify this device in PROFINET.</p> <p>Multiple labels can be entered, separated by a period(.). For example, "moxa.device-01" can be entered to specify "moxa" and "device-01" as separate labels.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>PROFINET labels are subject to the following naming rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Labels only support the following characters: a-z, 0-9, and dashes (-)</li> <li>• Labels must be 1 to 63 characters long</li> <li>• Labels cannot be in IP address format</li> <li>• Labels cannot start with "port" followed by 3 or more digits</li> <li>• Labels cannot start or end with a period (.) or a dash (-)</li> </ul> </div>	<p>1 to 63 characters for each label</p> <p>0 to 240 characters total</p>	N/A

## PROFINET - Status

### Menu Path: Industrial Application > PROFINET - Status

This page lets you monitor the status of PROFINET on your device.

Protocol Information		↻
Interface Name	Link Status	
vlan1	Disconnected	
Device Name		
---		

UI Setting	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Shows the interface used for PROFINET.
<b>Device Name</b>	Shows the user-defined labels for the device.
<b>Link Status</b>	Shows the PROFINET link status.

## Chapter 4

---

# Security Hardening Guide

# Security Hardening Guide Overview

This chapter provides an overview of security strategy, standards, and recommended best practices to improve the security landscape.

The threat landscape is constantly evolving, and no security guide can ever provide 100% protection. This chapter is constantly being expanded, and is not exhaustive.

# Security Best Practices

## Product Security

This section provides essential information on the installation of your product.

### Physical Installation Guidelines

Physical protection of devices is vital to network security. With physical access to devices, prospective attackers can physically bypass security mechanisms, alter network conditions, or plant additional malicious devices in networks. Follow these tips to help reduce the risk of tampering with networking devices by unauthorized personnel.

- Install the device in an access-controlled area.

To further protect your device from potential physical attacks, it is important to conduct a risk analysis and implement appropriate physical security measures. Consider physical security like installation within a locked cabinet, surveillance, security guards, and access control systems, among other measures. The specific measures you choose should be based on your environment and the level of risk you face.

- Install a Layer 2 switch within the security perimeter.

This perimeter can be established by setting up a firewall at the border, as the switch is not designed to be directly connected to the Internet. Note that the switch should not be classified as zone or boundary equipment. Avoid connecting the device directly to the Internet, as this can leave your network vulnerable to security breaches.

- Follow the Quick Installation Guide included in the package of your device.

It contains step-by-step instructions that are easy to follow and will help you set up the device quickly and efficiently.

- Examine and monitor anti-tamper labels applied to the device enclosures.

These labels provide a quick and easy way for administrators to determine if the device has been tampered with.

- Protect or deactivate any ports that are not currently in use.

Fewer active ports mean fewer avenues of attack. Refer to the [Port Interface](#) section in the User Manual.

- Protect reset buttons and other physical controls.

An attacker could bypass software/firmware security by forcing a reset and restoring default device credentials. Ensure that management interfaces, reset buttons, and other physical access routes are protect. For example, a device in a locked cabinet could still be vulnerable to being reset using a probe through a vent. Ensure that access to the locked cabinet is controlled, and that the reset button itself is covered or inaccessible from vents.

## Account Management Guidelines

Manage user accounts, set passwords, and restrict access to authorized personnel only.

- Assign the appropriate account privileges.

Limit the number of users with admin privileges to only those who need to perform device configuration or modifications. For other users, read-only access is sufficient. Moxa devices supports both local account authentication and remote centralized mechanisms, including Radius and TACACS+. This allows for flexible and secure access control options.

- Implement good password practices.

Good password practices include:

- Enabling and configuring a Password Policy to ensure your password meets specified requirements.
- Setting the minimum password length to at least eight characters.
- Require passwords to have at least one uppercase and lowercase letter, a digit, and a special character.
- Set password expiration.
- Replacing all default passwords and secure default accounts.
- Use unique passwords.
- Update passwords regularly.
- Never share passwords.

**Note**

Based on trends in cybersecurity regulations, we recommend users increase the complexity of their passwords to the highest level to further strengthen password security.

- Verify and manage account activity.
  - Enable event logging and periodically check for login failures or irregular activity.
  - Consider centralized management or automation of log details.
  - Consider enabling account lockout. After too many sign-in attempts, the account can be deactivated or the source IP blocked. Evaluate operational impacts of account or IP blocks to ensure the right balance of security and continuous operation.
- Do not include sensitive information in user-configurable feedback.

Some messages can be configured, such as showing an error message after a failed login. Do not include any sensitive information in these messages, or any other information that might give an attacker an advantage. Possible sensitive information might include:

- Hints about accounts or passwords
- Unnecessary information about password requirements that might help an attacker narrow down brute force candidates.
- Detailed contact information for administrators that could be used in spearphishing attacks.

## Protecting Vulnerable Network Ports

Understand security risks and mitigate them by configuring network ports correctly.

- Changing port numbers for active, including TCP port numbers for HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, and SSH.
- Disable any ports that are not in use, as they could pose an unacceptable security risk.
- Use encrypted communication protocols wherever available.

Consider the following alternatives

- HTTPS instead of HTTP
- SSH instead of Telnet
- SFTP instead of TFTP
- SNMPv3 instead of SNMPv1/v2c
- 802.1x with EAP-PEAP instead of MAC Authentication Bypass

Refer to [Network Interface](#) for more information.

- Enable encryption for encryption-optional protocols.

Encryption-optional protocols (encryption) include:

- 802.1x (EAP-PEAP authentication)
- SNMPv3 (authentication and encryption)
- Syslogs (TLS)
- Avoid using Ping Tracking to external devices (e.g. over the internet).
- Disable Loop Protection when no longer needed.
- Configure automatic session locking or idle timeouts so that idle sessions cannot be hijacked.
- Generate new SSL certificates and SSH keys for devices prior to using HTTPS or SSH applications.

Refer to [SSH & SSL](#) for more information.

## Maintaining Communication Integrity

Ensure that information sent is accurate, complete, and secure.

Maintaining communication integrity reduces risks risk of data corruption or interception, and associated security breaches, data loss, and other negative effects on networks and their users.

- Use encryption.

Encryption uses mathematical algorithms to convert data into a secret code, making it extremely difficult for people without the correct codes to read or change the data. By using encryption, you can ensure that the data being transmitted is secure and cannot be intercepted by unauthorized users. For certificates, use a

key strength of at least RSA 2048, and a hash algorithm strength of at least SHA256.

- Use digital signatures.

Digital signatures verify the authenticity and integrity of digital documents or messages. Using a digital signature, you can ensure that the message or document came from the expected sender and has not been altered.

- Implement access control.

Access control restricts access to only authorized users to the network and its resources. By implementing access control measures, such as firewalls or access control lists, you can prevent unauthorized access and reduce the risk of data breaches.

- Implement multiple security mechanisms.

Layered multiple security mechanisms such as DHCP Snooping and Dynamic ARP Inspection helps improve resilience against various types of cyberattacks.

## **Communication Integrity Features**

Moxa devices provide support for secure versions of protocols to help maintain communication integrity.

### **HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure)**

HTTPS is a secure version of the regular HTTP protocol for transmitting data over the internet. HTTPS uses TLS (Transport Layer Security) encryption and digital certificates to protect the data in transit from interception, tampering, or eavesdropping.

Refer to [Management Interface](#) for more information.

### **SSH (Secure Shell)**

SSH is a secure protocol for remote terminal login and secure file transfers. SSH uses encryption to protect the data in transit, making it difficult for anyone to intercept or tamper with it. SSH also provides authentication and access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network.

Refer to [Management Interface](#) for more information.

## SFTP

SFTP is a secure version of FTP (File Transfer Protocol) that uses encryption to protect the data in transit. SFTP also provides authentication and access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network.

Refer to [Management Interface](#) for more information.

## SNMP v3 (Simple Network Management Protocol version 3)

SNMP v3 is a secure version of the SNMP protocol used for network management and monitoring. SNMP v3 uses encryption and authentication to protect the data in transit, making it difficult for anyone to intercept or tamper with it. SNMP v3 also provides access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network. When using SNMPv3, make sure encryption and authentication are enabled and configured.

Refer to [SNMP](#) for more information.

### Note

SNMP managers should be used in accordance with their own security hardening guides and recommended security procedures.

## Device Access Control Best Practices

Device access control is an essential aspect of network security that helps protect against unauthorized access to network resources. Unauthorized access can occur through various means, including physical access to network devices, hacking, or social engineering. Without proper access control measures in place, networks are vulnerable to security breaches, data theft, and other malicious activities.

Device access control is particularly important for organizations that handle sensitive data, such as financial institutions, healthcare providers, and government agencies. By implementing device access control, these organizations can limit access to sensitive information and prevent security breaches. Below are some ways to ensure device access control:

- Adopt the **Principle of Least Privilege**.

This principle involves granting users, applications, or systems the minimum level of access or permissions they need to perform their specific tasks and nothing more. Requests for additional access, such as HTTPS, SSH, or Moxa services for administration, should be carefully evaluated before being approved.

- Use strong passwords.

Passwords should be complex and unique for each device. Passwords should also be changed regularly to maintain security.

- Implement allowlists.

Allowlists are authorized devices or users allowed to access a particular network resource. Allowlists can be managed at the device, network, or application levels. Network administrators can use allowlists to ensure that only authorized devices or users can access sensitive resources. The key feature of an allowlist is that anything not on the allowlist is automatically blocked, ensuring only authorized devices, uses, or services can operate freely in a network environment.

- Implement Traffic Storm Control

Limits excessive broadcast traffic to maintain network performance. Broadcast storms can occur accidentally when devices are misconfigured, but they can also be a tool used in denial-of-service attacks.

## **About Device Integrity and Authenticity**

Integrity and authenticity are vital elements of trust within a network.

Device integrity refers to the state of a device being complete, unaltered, and free from any unauthorized changes or modifications.

Authenticity refers to the assurance that the device is genuine and comes from a trusted source.

Both integrity and authenticity are critical aspects of device security. Methods to sustain these aspects include:

- Configuration Backup & Encryption
- Secure Boot

## Configuration Backup and Encryption

Configuration backup and encryption protects a device's sensitive data and configuration by creating an encrypted copy storing it securely. In the event of unauthorized device changes, correct configuration information can be quickly and securely restored.

The process involves creating a backup of the device's configuration and then encrypting it using a strong encryption algorithm. The encrypted backup is then stored securely to prevent unauthorized access. This process is particularly important for devices that store sensitive information, such as network equipment, servers, and other critical infrastructure. Encrypting the configuration backup ensures that the data remains protected even if the backup location is compromised.

Refer to [Configuration Backup and Restore](#) for more information.

## Secure Boot

Secure Boot is a security mechanism designed to ensure that devices boot using only software that is verified as trusted. The primary function of Secure Boot is to prevent unauthorized software from running during the boot process. It achieves this by verifying the integrity and authenticity of the bootloader and firmware.

A bootloader refers to the initial software that runs when a device is powered on. Its primary role is to load the device's operating system. Firmware is software embedded within the device that manages and controls the device's hardware functions.

Moxa hardware makes use of cryptographic modules embedded in devices to support verification processes. The device's ROM (read-only memory) contains approved bootloaders and associated digital certificates, which are used to verify the integrity of the firmware.

When the device boots, the first thing to run is the bootloader. Secure boot checks the digital signature against the certificate stored in ROM. If the signatures match, the boot process continues. If they do not match, or there is evidence of tampering, the boot process halts to prevent potential security breaches.

## Securing USB Interfaces on Network Devices

- Disable USB ports when not in use.

USB ports should be disabled by default to prevent unauthorized or accidental use.

- Limit rights to enable or configure USB ports to a minimum number of authorized users.

Use role-based access control (RBAC) or require multi-factor authentication (MFA) to enable USB ports.

- Standardize procedures and rigorously observe them.

Your procedures should cover:

- When and why USB interfaces can be used
- The type and number of USB devices permitted
- How data on those devices must be secured. Ensure that all employees and users understand and observe these procedures

## Device Resource Management and Monitoring

Moxa devices provide a number of features to help customers manage device resources efficiently and monitor security.

### About Device Resource Monitoring

Network device resource management is essential for network reliability and security. By monitoring use of network resources, administrators can verify that network guidelines are being followed and devices are operating efficiently and effectively.

Proactive monitoring and management of device resources such as CPU utilization, memory utilization, and network traffic allows administrators to identify potential security breaches early, and help avoid network downtime and disruption. For example, abnormal spikes in network traffic or CPU utilization could be indicative of a malware infection or a denial-of-service attack.

Examples of activities to monitor include:

- Connected ports
- CPU usage
- Memory usage

Refer to [Device Summary](#) for more information.

## About Event Logs for Monitoring

In addition to real-time monitoring and management, Moxa devices provide advanced logging options to help identify security events. Chosen event types can also generate notifications to notify administrators of unusual events where attention is needed, or to feed into larger security monitoring systems.

You can leverage system logs to monitor events, such as failed logins or access attempts from unauthorized accounts. Event logs respond the same way to the same events, providing comprehensive visibility into security events.

Refer to [Event Log](#) for more information about Event Logs.

Refer to [Event Notifications](#) for more information about Event Notifications.

Refer to [SNMP - General](#) for more information about SNMP configuration.

## About Port Mirroring for Monitoring

Port Mirroring duplicates data transmitted over a port for analysis.

You can use port mirroring to mirror the traffic of an Ethernet port connected to untrusted networks to allow for monitoring and analysis of traffic that would otherwise be uncontrolled.

Refer to [Port Mirroring](#) for more information.

## Recommended Settings for Services and Features

When prioritizing device security, the first point of assessment is often the network interfaces and services. By deactivating unneeded interfaces and services, one can reduce potential vulnerabilities and associated security threats. Additionally, activating the appropriate security features enhances early anomaly detection and bolsters the device's defense against cyber attacks.

**Note**

Factory defaults are described in each feature section.

## Common Protocols and Ports

Service Name	Default Port	Default Setting	Security Suggestions
<b>HTTP</b>	TCP 80	Enabled	Disable if possible to avoid leaks from unencrypted traffic.
<b>HTTPS</b>	TCP 443	Enabled	
<b>Telnet</b>	TCP 23	Enabled	Disable if possible to avoid leaks from unencrypted traffic.
<b>SSH</b>	TCP 22	Enabled	
<b>NTP/SNTP</b>	UDP 123	Disabled	Use SNTP to synchronize system time if possible. Enable NTP authentication if possible.
<b>SNMP</b>	UDP 161 UDP 162 TCP 10161 TCP 10162	Disabled	For V1 & V2c, change default community string names, i.e. public & private, to other unique names. For V3, enable SNMP admin account authentication.
<b>Syslog</b>	UDP 514	Disabled	Enabling Syslog is recommended to avoid missing critical logs due to limited local storage. This sends logs to an external syslog server, where they can be securely stored and retained. The syslog server is responsible for keeping these logs for a minimum period required by local regulations, ensuring critical incidents are properly documented and accessible when needed.
<b>RADIUS</b>	UDP 1812	Disabled	Enabling RADIUS authentication can help administrators manage password changes more efficiently.
<b>Moxa Services</b>	TCP 443 UDP 40404	Enabled	These 2 ports are only used by the Moxa management software. Disable it if you don't use Moxa management software.

## Security-Related Functions

Function	Default Setting	Security Suggestions
<b>Password Policy</b>	Disable	Enable password policy to comply enterprise security policies.
<b>Login policy</b>	Disable	Enable a login policy to heighten resistance against brute force attacks and terminating any inactive login sessions.
<b>Malformed Packets Filtering</b>	Disable	The "Malformed Packets Filtering" feature logs events at a user-defined severity level whenever the system discards malformed packets. Depending on the protocols active in your network, you can choose to enable this feature or leave it disabled.
<b>DoS Policy</b>	None	Select a DoS policy according to your network traffic to increase network robustness.
<b>Session control</b>	None	Configure session control policies appropriate for your traffic to improve network reliability.
<b>802.1X over ports</b>	Disable	Enable 802.1X port authentication to block unauthorized LAN access.
<b>Traffic Storm Control</b>	Enable	Enable Traffic Storm Control to manage the amount of unknown traffic on the network.
<b>Trusted Access</b>	Enabled	By default, the device permits all connections from the LAN attempting to access it. For enhanced security, block all LAN connections attempting to access the device. Then, use a trusted IP list to specify which trusted IPs are allowed access to the device.
<b>Static Port Lock</b>	Disable	Static port lock, also known as MAC Table or MAC Sticky, is a port security feature that remembers the first MAC address used, and will not initiate links with other MAC addresses.

**ⓘ Caution**

The following are known to have security flaws:

Use alternatives or take extra precautions.

## Protocols/Services with Weak

### Authentication/Encryption

Some protocols and services support weaker authentication or encryption, and may not be secure over untrusted networks.

Choose secure alternatives or take precautions to mitigate possible threats.

#### Services

- TACACS+
- RADIUS
- 802.1x
- MAB
- NTP server
- NTP/SNTP client
- PTP
- DHCP relay
- mDNS
- Tracking
- Email notification
- TFTP
- SNMP v1/v2
- GVRP/GMRP
- DNS client

- DHCP client
- DHCP server
- LACP
- Loop protection
- LLDP
- IGMP snooping

## Redundant Protocols

- MRP
- Turbo Ring v2
- Turbo Chain
- RSTP/MSTP
- ERPS V2

## Industrial Protocols

- Ethernet/IP
- Modbus TCP
- Profinet

## L3 protocols

- VRRP

## Common Threats and Countermeasures

These are examples of common known threats, and suggestions for mitigation.

Incident Category	Detailed Description	Mitigation Suggestions
<b>Tampering &amp; Information Disclosure</b>	An attacker can read or modify data transmitted over HTTP data flow.	Disable HTTP, and replace HTTP transmission with HTTPS.

Incident Category	Detailed Description	Mitigation Suggestions
<b>Tampering &amp; Information Disclosure</b>	An attacker can read or modify data transmitted over Telnet data flow.	Disable Telnet, and replace HTTP transmission by SSH.
<b>Information Disclosure</b>	Data flowing across TFTP may be sniffed by an attacker.	Use SFTP instead of FTP.
<b>Denial of Service</b>	SNMP Server crashes, halts, stops or runs slowly by excessive queries.	Enable rate limit to stop excessive SNMP requests.
<b>Denial of Service</b>	RADIUS Server crashes, halts, stops or runs slowly by excessive queries.	Enable rate limit to stop excessive RADIUS requests.
<b>Repudiation</b>	Devices fail to synchronize a system time with a trusted NTP/SNTP server.	Enable NTP authentication to verify a connection with the trusted NTP/SNTP server.

**Note**

Create an incident response plan and follow it carefully. Ensure your procedures allow for user reporting and admin response to those reports. Many threats manifest themselves as irregular device behavior – such as device inability to provide basic services like routing or firewall functions, which in turn lead to interruptions or unauthorized access. Create a plan that allows admins to prepare, reboot, and monitor devices with abnormal behavior.

## Recommended Operational Roles and Duties

Adhering to the principle of least privilege reduces risks by ensuring users operate at the minimum privilege required to complete their tasks.

Instead of individual allocation, privilege levels should be tied to specific job functions. For optimized device security, we recommend three distinct privilege levels, each tailored for different management needs.

**Note**

Customize user roles based on your organization needs, and eliminate unneeded roles.

### Administrator

Designated for system management, this privilege level permits:

- Creation and deletion of configuration objects, files, and user accounts.

- Monitoring system status and resources.
- Modifying parameter values.
- Reviewing stored data within the device.

#### Administrator Responsibilities:

- Reset and periodically change the default administrator password.
- Ensure password complexity aligns with enterprise security policies.
- Manage and authorize individuals with appropriate access privileges.
- Disable non-essential interfaces or network services.
- Enable secure communication protocols to guard against data breaches.
- Regularly update firmware to address potential vulnerabilities.

## Supervisor

Tailored for network experts or operators, this privilege grants:

- Monitoring of system status and resources.
- Adjusting values in configuration objects or files.
- Access to review data stored in the device.

#### Supervisor Responsibilities:

- Continuously monitor system status and resources to maintain device functionality.
- Routinely verify the integrity of device configuration objects and files.
- Manage trusted devices through IP and MAC allowlisting.
- Oversee and respond to system alerts to preempt device failures and security threats.

## Auditor

Reserved for audit-focused personnel, this level allows:

- Monitoring of system status and resources.
- Reviewing data stored within the device.

Auditor Responsibilities:

- Regularly inspect logs to identify and assess incidents and their associated risks.

Moxa devices provide three user privilege categories: admin, supervisor, and user. We advise aligning the admin role for administrator users, the supervisor role for supervisor users, and the user role for auditor users.

## Recommended Patching and Backup Practices

Moxa's guidance on ensuring device security through regular firmware upgrades and configuration backups.

### Configuration Backup

For network operators and system administrators, it is essential to regularly back up device configurations. This precaution allows for quick recovery in unforeseen scenarios, such as cyber attacks.

#### Note

Prioritize use of secure transfer protocols – such as SFTP – for file transfers to protect the configuration maintenance process.

## Recommendations for Vulnerability Management

As the adoption of the Industrial IoT (IIoT) continues to grow rapidly, security becomes an increasingly high priority.

The Moxa Product Security Incident Response Team (PSIRT) takes a proactive approach to protect our products from security vulnerabilities and help our customers better manage security risks.

To report vulnerabilities for Moxa products, please submit your findings on the following web page: <https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory/report-a-vulnerability>.

For the most up-to-date Moxa security information, please visit our security advisory page: <https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory>

## Recommendations for Decommissioning

To avoid any sensitive information such as account passwords or network configurations from disclosure, always delete all imported certificates and reset devices to factory default before you decommission your devices.

### **Note**

Things to keep in mind when decommissioning or re-purposing devices:

- Device data can be cleared using the Factory Reset options. When resetting devices, make sure to confirm the operation and allow it sufficient time to complete.
- Delete all logs, and verify deletion.
- After all reset processes are complete, verify that all sensitive data has been cleared.

# Security Standards and Concepts

## Introduction to Defense in Depth

The Defense-in-Depth strategy is used to protect systems from various types of attacks by using multiple independent defense mechanisms. This involves incorporating multiple layers of security to protect the product against potential attacks and vulnerabilities at various stages of its design, development, and use.

It is crucial to understand that no single protection can guarantee complete security. That's why the Defense-in-Depth approach makes it difficult for attackers to leverage one weakness to attack the product or network as a whole. This approach requires attackers to overcome multiple obstacles undetected, increasing the difficulty level. By leveraging multiple security features and layers of protection in a product, vulnerabilities in any one layer can be mitigated.

## About AAA - Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting

**A**uthentication, **A**uthorization, and **A**ccounting (AAA) is a user-based access control paradigm. AAA coexists with other security practices. While product security and network security focus on device or process security, AAA focuses on users.

AAA comprises a set of functions for an administrator to determine which users can access a network device, which services are available to authorized users, and collect information about user activities for audits or charging purposes if required. When implemented well, AAA can provide an extra layer of security across different aspects.

### Authentication

Authentication provides a method of identifying a user before access to the network device is granted, typically by having the user enter a valid username and password and/or provide a physical token or digital certificate. Additional policies such as a password complexity check or login failure lockout can also increase access security.

## **Authorization**

After authentication is successful, a user can be authorized to use specific resources on the device or perform specific operations. For instance, a normal user with limited permissions may only view the device's system settings, whereas an administrator would have full control to view or edit all system settings.

## **Accounting**

Accounting keeps track of user activities on the device. It monitors the resources a user consumes during network access. This can include the amount of data sent and received through an Ethernet port or the number of user login failures.

## **About Authentication Types**

Handle authentication with the local device exclusively, or with a remote server using local accounts only as a fallback.

It is important to choose the right authentication method, or combination of authentication methods for your network environment and use case. Moxa devices offer the following authentication options.

### **Local Authentication**

Local authentication uses the accounts and settings stored on the local network device to identify users (authentication), determine which services they can use (authorization), and track basic user activities such as amount of data transferred or number of login failures (accounting).

### **Remote Authentication**

Remote authentication uses accounts configured on a RADIUS server - allowing AAA to be configured from a single, centralized location. However, it is important to note that local authentication is retained as a fallback mechanism to ensure the device can be configured if the RADIUS server becomes inaccessible. Additionally, Moxa products support backup RADIUS servers if the primary becomes inaccessible. Due consideration should be given to the configuration and maintenance of backup servers for redundancy.

Features	Local	Remote
<b>Configuration location</b>	Local device	Remote RADIUS server, local as fallback
<b>Number of accounts</b>	Few	Many
<b>Password security requirements</b>	Limited	Many
<b>Allowed services</b>	Specified locally	Determined by server
<b>Authority types</b>	Admin, User, Supervisor	Admin, User
<b>User feedback on failed login</b>	Custom prompt	Server-defined
<b>Setup effort</b>	Low	High
<b>*Allowed services are usually dependent on authority types.</b>		

## Example: Creating a Local User

Local accounts are authenticated and managed by the local device, and function even when remote RADIUS servers are unavailable.

Make sure you have an account with **Admin** authority.

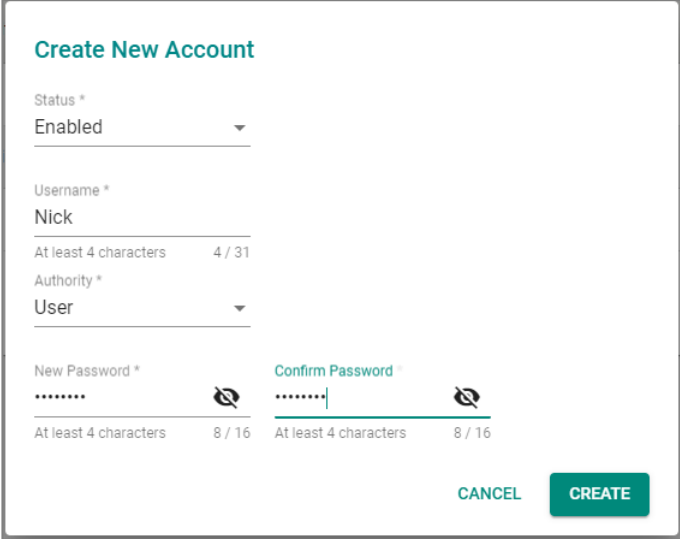
In this example, create a local user with simple **User** level authority to fill the Authentication of the AAA tripod. Once the user has been created, add additional access controls.

1. Sign in to the device with admin credentials.
2. Go to **System > Account Management > User Accounts**, and then click **+** **[Add]**.

The Create New Account panel appears.

3. Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
4. In the **Username** field, type Nick.
5. Set **Authority** as **User**.
6. In the **New Password** field, type 1qaz!@#\$, and then type again to confirm.
7. Click **Create**.

By creating the user **Nick**, Authorization and Accounting details can now be configured.



**Create New Account**

Status \*  
Enabled

Username \*  
Nick  
At least 4 characters 4 / 31

Authority \*  
User

New Password \*  
..... 8 / 16

Confirm Password \*  
..... 8 / 16

CANCEL CREATE

Now that a user account has been created, add account controls. Account controls allow setting a warning for incorrect passwords, account lockouts, and automatic logout.

## Example: Configuring Account Controls for Local Users

Login Failure Account Lockout and Auto Logout increase the security of local accounts.


Make sure you have set **Authentication Protocol** as **Local** or **RADIUS, Local** to ensure that local accounts can be used to **Security > Authentication > Login Authentication**.

Enabling additional account controls can increase resistance to brute-force attacks as well as enable troubleshooting. This example demonstrates how to set account lockouts after failed login attempts and manage idle users.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Security > Device Security > Login Policy**.

The Login Policy panel appears.

3. In the **Login Authentication Failure Message** field, type the following:  
Warning! The account will be temporarily locked if there are too many consecutive login failures.

 **Note**

Do not configure the message with any information that might help an attacker guess a password or conduct phishing operations, such as password hints or staff contact information.

4. Set **Login Failure Account Lockout** to **Enabled**.

5. In the **Login Failure Retry Threshold** field, type 3.

This is the number of failed attempts before the user account will be temporarily blocked.

Temporary can bans help prevent password guessing and brute force attacks by preventing attackers from rapidly guessing many passwords.

6. In the **Lockout Duration** field, type 5.

This specifies the number of minutes the account will be locked.

7. In the **Auto Lockout After** field, type 30.

This is the amount of time in minutes before inactive accounts automatically log out.

This configuration:

- Displays a warning message on failed login attempts, enabling troubleshooting
- Blocks accounts for five minutes after three unsuccessful login attempts, limiting the effectiveness of credential guessing
- Automatically logs out inactive user accounts after thirty minutes, reducing risks of unauthorized access through idle consoles

## Login Policy

Login Message  
0 / 512

Login Authentication Failure Message  
Warning! The account will be temporarily locked if there are too many consecutive login failures.  
97 / 512

Login Failure Account Lockout  
Enabled

Login Failure Retry Threshold \*  
3  
1 - 10 times

Lockout Duration \*  
5  
1 - 10 min.

Auto Logout After \*  
30  
0 - 1440 min.

**APPLY**

Optionally, configure allowed access protocols.

## Example: Configuring a Remote RADIUS Server

In this example, the RADIUS server handles all Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting.

Make sure you have a working RADIUS server and corresponding configuration information. In our example, we use a server that has the following settings:

- PAP authentication protocol
- An address of 192.168.127.1
- UDP port 1812
- A preconfigured shared key

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) servers may make it easier to manage large numbers of users from a central location.

1. Sign in to the device with admin credentials

2. Go to **Security > Authentication > Login Authentication**, and then set **Authentication Protocol** to **RADIUS, Local**.

This setting will use the remote RADIUS server as the primary authentication source, and use local authentication as a fallback if the RADIUS server is unavailable.

**Note**

Enabling a RADIUS authentication will not remove local accounts. Make sure local accounts have a strong, unique password. Local accounts are still required both for RADIUS server configuration as well as for local fallback if the RADIUS server is not reachable. Go to Security > Authentication > RADIUS.

3. The RADIUS Server will appear.
4. Configure all of the following:

Field	Setting
<b>Authentication Type</b>	<b>PAP</b>
<b>Server Address 1</b>	192.168.127.1
<b>UDP Port</b>	1812
<b>Shared Key</b>	Enter your Shared Key here.

These configuration options are provided as an example only, and will need to match your network environment.

5. Click **Apply**.

By configuring a remote authentication, the network device will redirect user login requests to the RADIUS server. When logging in with remote user Peter, the RADIUS server will process the authentication request and determine whether to grant access to the device. If Peter does not match RADIUS or Local information, access will be denied.


In situations where the RADIUS server is not reachable or unavailable, users such as Nick or other existing local users can still access the network device using their local passwords.

## RADIUS Server


Authentication Type \*

PAP

Server Address 1	UDP Port
<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
0 / 63	1 - 65535

Shared Key   
0 / 60

Server Address 2	UDP Port
<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
0 / 63	1 - 65535

Shared Key   
0 / 60

APPLY

## Chapter 5

---

# Appendix

# CIP EtherNet/IP Objects

Several communication objects are defined in CIP (Common Industrial Protocol).

Moxa switches support the following objects for PLCs and SCADA systems to monitor:

Definition	CIP Object Name	Class ID
<b>ODVA</b>	Identity Object	0x01
	Message Router	0x02
	Assembly	0x04
	Connection Manager Object	0x06
	Base Switch Object	0x51
	Port Object	0xF4
	TCP/IP Interface Object	0xF5
	Ethernet Link Object	0xF6
	LLDP Management Object	0x109
	LLDP Data Table Object	0x10A
<b>MOXA</b>	Moxa Networking Object (Vendor Specific)	0x404

The supported attributes and services of the above objects are introduced in the table below, including Each object should consist of Class ID, Instance ID, Attribute ID, and Service Code. The supported attributes and services of the above objects are introduced in the following chapters, including the access rules, data type, and description for each attribute.

## Identity Object

The Class code of Identity object is **0x01**.

There is **one** instance of this object in our product. It stores the information of the production and the device. The following tables summarize the class attribute, instance attributes, and service code.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object
2	Get	Max Instance	UINT (16)	Maximum instance number of an object currently created in this class level of the device
3	Get	Number of Instances	UINT (16)	Number of object instances currently created in this class level of the device.
6	Get	Maximum ID Number Class Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum class attribute ID number implemented in the device
7	Get	Maximum ID Number Instance Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum instance attribute ID number implemented in the device

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Vendor ID		UINT (16)	<b>0x3DF</b> , the vendor ID of Moxa is 991.
2	Get	Device Type		UINT (16)	<b>0x2C</b> , "Managed Ethernet Switch".
3	Get	Product Code		UINT (16)	Please refer to Product Code Table.
4	Get	Revision		(Struct.)	Revision of the item the Identity Object represents.
			Major	USINT (8)	The structure member, major. The value zero is not valid. If product version is 0, using 1-base.
			Minor	USINT (8)	The structure member, minor. The value zero is not valid. If product version is 0, using 1-base.
5	Get	Status		WORD (16)	Summary status of the device.
6	Get	Serial Number		UDINT (32)	The serial number of each device.
7	Get	Product Name		SHORT_STRING	The product model of the Moxa switch. Maximum length is 32 characters.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
15	Get/Set	Assigned Name		STRINGI	Switch device's host name.
17	Get/Set	Geographic Location		STRINGI	The assigned switch location.

The Identity Object Instance supports the following CIP Common services:

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x01	✓	✓	Get_Attributes_All	Returns the contents of all attributes of the class.
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to write an object instance attribute.
0x05		✓	Reset	Invokes the reset service for the device.
0x18		✓	Get_Member	Returns the content of a selected member of an attribute.

## Message Router Object

The Class code of Message Router Object is **0x02**. The object within a node that distributes messaging requests to the appropriate application objects.

The supported messaging connections are as the following:

- Explicit Messaging
- Unconnected Messaging
- Implicit messaging

When using the UCMM to establish an explicit messaging connection, the target application object is the Message Router object.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (2)	Revision of this object

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Object_list		(Struct.)	A list of supported objects
			Number	UINT (16)	Number of supported classes in the classes array
			Classes	Array of UINT (16)	List of supported class codes
2	Get	Number Available		UINT (16)	Maximum number of connections supported
3	Get	Number Active		UINT (16)	Number of connections currently used by system components
4	Get	Active Connections		Array of UINT (16)	A list of the connection IDs of the currently active connections

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E		✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.

## Assembly Object

The Moxa switch support **static** assembly object for CIP I/O messaging.

The Class code is **0x04**.

There are three instances of this object as the following.

	Instance Number	Size (32 bit)
<b>Output</b>	1	18
<b>Input</b>	50	16
<b>Configuration</b>	100	10

The **Input** means the data is produced by switch which includes the information and status report to the originator for monitoring. The **Output** means the data is generated by the originator (remote host) and is consumed by switch.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
3	Get/Set	Data	Array of BYTE	The implicit messaging content
4	Get	Size	UINT (16)	Number of bytes in Attr. 3

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute

For the definition of the I/O messaging, see the following table for details.

## I/O Assembly Data Attribute Formats

Direction	Instance	Byte	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
<b>Input</b>	1	0	Power Source Status (Least Significant Byte)								
		1	Power Source Status (Most Significant Byte)								
		2-5	Global Link Status DWORD 0								
		6-9	Global Link Status DWORD 1								
		10-13	Global Link Status DWORD 2								
		14-17	Global Link Status DWORD 3								
<b>Output</b>	50	0-3	Global Admin State DWORD 0								
		4-7	Global Admin State DWORD 1								
		8-11	Global Admin State DWORD 2								
		12-15	Global Admin State DWORD 3								

## Mapping I/O Assembly Data Attribute

### Components

The following table indicates the I/O assembly Data attribute mapping for the Managed Ethernet Switch device.

Service Code	Class	Instance	Attribute Name	Attribute Number
<b>Power Source Status</b>	Base Switch Object	1	Power Source	4
<b>Global Admin State</b>			Global Port Admin State	7
<b>Global Link Status</b>			Global Port Link Status	8

# Connection Manager Object

The class code of Connection Manager Object is **0x06**. The Connection Manager Object allocates and manages the internal resources associated with both I/O and Explicit Messaging connections. There is one instance of this object. The supported connection trigger type is cyclic and change of state (COS).

The instance attribute list is introduced as the following.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object.

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get/Set	Open Requests	UINT(16)	Number of Forward_Open service requests received. A device may reject a set request to this attribute, using General Status Code <b>0x09</b> (Invalid Attribute Value), if the attribute value sent is not zero. (Vol1_3.33 3-5.2 Instance Attributes)

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0e	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute.
0x4E		✓	Forward_Close	Closes a connection.
0x54		✓	Forward_Open	Opens a connection. Maximum data size is 511 bytes.

# QoS Object

The QoS Object provides a means to configure certain QoS-related behaviors in EtherNet/IP devices. The class code of QoS Object is 0x48. The following table defines the default DSCP mappings for EtherNet/IP.

Traffic Type	CIP Priority	DSCP	CIP Traffic Usage (Recommended)
<b>CIP class 0/1</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CIP UCMM</li> <li>• CIP class 2/3</li> <li>• All other EtherNet/IP Encapsulation messages</li> </ul>	Urgent (3)	55	CIP Motion
	Scheduled (2)	47	Safety I/O I/O
	High (1)	43	I/O
	Low (0)	31	No recommendation at present
	All	27	CIP messaging

## Class Attribute

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object.

## Instance Attribute

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
4	Get/Set	DSCP Urgent	USINT (8)	CIP transport class 0/1 messages with Urgent priority
5	Get/Set	DSCP Scheduled	USINT (8)	CIP transport class 0/1 messages with Scheduled priority
6	Get/Set	DSCP High	USINT (8)	CIP transport class 0/1 messages with High priority
7	Get/Set	DSCP Low	USINT (8)	CIP transport class 0/1 messages with Low priority

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
8	Get/Set	DSCP Explicit	USINT (8)	CIP UCMM CIP transport class 2/3 All other EtherNet/IP encapsulation messages

Any change to the value of the above attributes will only take effect after the device is restarted.

## Common Service

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute.

## Base Switch Object

The class code of Base Switch Object is 0x51. The Base Switch Object provides the CIP application-level interface and basic status information for a Managed Ethernet switch device.

Devices shall implement no more than one instance of the Base Switch Object.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object. The current value assigned to this is 1.

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Device Up Time	UDINT (32)	Time since device was powered up.
2	Get	Total Port Count	UDINT (32)	Number of physical available ports.
3	Get	System Firmware Version	SHORT_STRING	Human readable representation of System Firmware Version. Maximum length is 32 characters.
4	Get	Power Source	WORD (16)	<p>Status of switch power source.</p> <p>Bits 0-1: State of the Power Source 1.</p> <p>00 = Not Present (Power source not present in switch)</p> <p>01 = Not Powered (Power source present but not powered)</p> <p>10 = Faulted(internal) (Power source present but faulted)</p> <p>11 = Powered and ok (Power source present, powered, and OK)</p> <p>Bits 2-3: State of the Power Source 2. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p> <p>Bits 4-5: State of the Power Source 3. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p> <p>Bits 6-7: State of the Power Source 4. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p> <p>Bits 8-9: State of the Power Source 5. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p> <p>Bits 10-11: State of the Power Source 6. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p> <p>Bits 12-13: State of the Power Source 7. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p> <p>Bits 14-15: State of the Power Source 8. The values are same as bits 0-1.</p>
5	Get	Port Mask Size	UINT (16)	Number of DWORDs in port array attributes. Minimum = 4, supporting 128 ports.
6	Get	Existing Port	ARRAY OF DWORD (32)	<p>Switch existing port.</p> <p>0 = Port Absent</p> <p>1 = Port Present</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
7	Get	Global Port Admin State	ARRAY OF DWORD (32)	Port Admin State. 0 = Port Disabled 1 = Port Enabled
8	Get	Global Port Link Status	ARRAY OF DWORD (32)	Ports Link Status. 0 = Link Inactive (Down) 1 = Link Active (Up) Bit 0-31: Port 0-31 Link status.

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.

## Port Object

The port object represents the underlying interface of CIP which is EtherNet/IP.

The class code is **0xf4**. There is one instance of this object.

The instance attribute "**Port Type**" identifies the CIP adaptation.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision		UINT (16)	Revision of this object
2	Get	Max Instance		UINT (16)	Maximum instance number of an object currently created in this class level of the device
3	Get	Number of Instances		UINT (16)	Number of object instances currently created at this class level of the device.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
8	Get	Entry Port		UINT (16)	Returns the instance of the Port Object that describes the port through which this request entered the device.
9	Get	Port Instance Info	Port Type	UINT (16)	Enumerates the type of port.
			Port Number	UINT (16)	CIP port number associated with this port

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Port Type		UINT (16)	Enumerates the type of port. 4 = EtherNet/IP.
2	Get	Port Number		UINT (16)	CIP port number associated with this port. (Values 0-1 are reserved and cannot be used)
3	Get	Link Object	Path Length	UINT (16)	Number of 16 bit words in the following path.
			Link Path	Padded EPATH	Logical path segments that identify the object for this port.
4	Get	Port Name		SHORT_STRING	Vendor assigned name of the communications interface. The value is always "EIP Port".
5	Get	Port Type Name		SHORT_STRING	String which names the port type. If Port Type value is 4 (EtherNet/IP), its associated Port Type Name is "EtherNet/IP". The value is always "EtherNet/IP".
7	Get	Node Address		Padded EPATH	This is a single Port Segment containing the Port Number of this port and the Link Address of this device on this port.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
9	Get	Port Key		Packed EPATH	The electronic key of the chassis this port is attached to. This attribute shall be limited to format 4 of the Logical Electronic Key segment.  The Vendor ID, Device Type, Product Code, Major Revision and Minor Revision fields shall not be 0.  The Compatibility field shall be 0 (indicating match).
10	Get	Port Routing Capabilities		DWORD (32)	Bit string that defines the routing capabilities of this port.

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.

## TCP/IP Interface Object

The Class code of TCP/IP Interface object is **0xf5**. The TCP/IP Interface Object provides the mechanism to configure a device's TCP/IP network interface. Examples of configurable items include the device's IP Address, Network Mask, and Gateway Address. There is **one** instance of this object.

The following tables summarize the attributes of this object.

### Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object.
2	Get	Max Instance	UINT (16)	Maximum instance number of an object currently created in this class level of the device

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
3	Get	Number of Instances	UINT (16)	Number of object instances currently created at this class level of the device
6	Get	Maximum ID Number Class Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum class attribute ID number implemented in the device.
7	Get	Maximum ID Number Instance Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum instance attribute ID number implemented in the device.

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Status		DWORD (32)	Interface status 0 = The Interface Configuration attribute has not been configured. 1 = The Interface Configuration attribute contains valid configurations obtained from BOOTP, DHCP or non-volatile storage.
2	Get	Configuration Capability		DWORD (32)	Indicates the device's support for optional network configuration capability. 0 = Device is not capable. 1 = Device is capable. Bit map of capability flags: Bit 0: BOOTP Client Bit 1: DNS Client Bit 2: DHCP Client Bit 3: DHCP-DNS Update Bit 4: Configuration Settable

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
3	Get/Set	Configuration Control		DWORD (32)	<p>Interface control flags</p> <p>Bit map of control flags:</p> <p>Bit 0 to 3: Startup Configuration</p> <p>0 = The device shall use the interface configuration values previously stored (for example, in non-volatile memory or via hardware switches).</p> <p>1 = The device shall obtain its interface configuration values via BOOTP.</p> <p>2 = The device shall obtain its interface configuration values via DHCP upon start-up.</p> <p>3 to15 = Reserved.</p>
4	Get	Physical Link Object	Path Size	UINT (16)	Size of Path
			Path	Padded EPATH	Logical segments identifying the physical link object
5	Get/Set	Interface Configuration	IP Address	UDINT (32)	The device's IP address
			Network Mask	UDINT (32)	The device's network mask
			Gateway Address	UDINT (32)	Default gateway address
			Name Server	UDINT (32)	Primary name server
			Name Server2	UDINT (32)	Secondary name server
			Domain Name	STRING	Default domain name. Maximum length is 48 characters. A length of 0 shall indicate no Domain Name is configured. Set Domain Name is not supported in Moxa switch.
6	Get/Set	Host Name		STRING	Host name. ASCII characters. Maximum length is 64 characters.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
13	Get/Set	Encapsulation Inactivity Timeout		UNIT (16)	Number of seconds of inactivity before TCP connection is closed. Default = 120 0 = Disable timeout 1-3600 = timeout in seconds

The TCP/IP Object Instance supports the following CIP Common services:

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x01	✓	✓	Get_Attributes_All	Returns the contents of all attributes of the class
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute

## Ethernet Link Object

The Class code of Ethernet Link object is **0xf6** (Defined in CIP Vol2, 5-4). For each switch port, there is an instance of this class. The following table shows the mapping of instance number and the switch port number.

Instance Number	Mapping to
0	Ethernet Link class
1	1st switch port
2	2nd switch port
3	3rd switch port
...	...

The following tables summarize the attributes of the Ethernet Link object.

There are some vendor specific attributes in the table (Starting from attribute Id 100).

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object
2	Get	Max Instance	UINT (16)	Maximum instance number of an object currently created in this class level of the device
3	Get	Number of Instances	UINT (16)	Number of object instances currently created in this class level of the device
6	Get	Maximum ID Number Class Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum class attribute ID number implemented in the device.
7	Get	Maximum ID Number Instance Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum instance attribute ID number implemented in the device.
100	Get	Moxa-specific Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of Moxa specific attributes and services for Linux platform switch. The current value assigned is 1.

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name (Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Interface Speed	UDINT (32)	Interface speed currently in use. The scale of the attribute is in Mbps.  (Speed in Mbps, e.g., 0, 10, 100, 1000, etc.)
2	Get	Interface Flags	DWORD (32)	Refer to the Interface Flags table.
3	Get	Physical Address	ARRAY of 6 USINT (8)	Interface's MAC layer address.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
4	Get	Interface Counters	In Octets	UDINT (32)	Octets received on the interface.
			In Ucast Packets	UDINT (32)	Unicast packets received on the interface.
			In NUcast Packet	UDINT (32)	Non-unicast packets received on the interface.
			In Discards	UDINT (32)	Inbound packets received on the interface but are discarded.
			In Errors	UDINT (32)	Inbound packets that contain Errors (does not include In Discards).
			In Unknown Protos	UDINT (32)	Inbound packets with unknown protocol.
			Out Octets	UDINT (32)	Octets sent on the interface.
			Out Ucast Packets	UDINT (32)	Unicast packets sent on the interface.
			Out NUcast Packets	UDINT (32)	Non-unicast packets sent on the interface.
			Out Discards	UDINT (32)	Discarded outbound packets.
			Out Errors	UDINT (32)	Outbound packets that contain errors.
5	Get	Media Counters	Alignment Errors	UDINT (32)	Received frames that are not an integral number of octets in length.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			FCS Errors	UDINT (32)	Received frames that do not pass the FCS check.
			Single Collisions	UDINT (32)	Successfully transmitted frames which experienced exactly one collision.
			Multiple Collisions	UDINT (32)	Successfully transmitted frames which experienced more than one collision.
			SQE Test Errors	UDINT (32)	Number of times the SQE test error message is generated.
			Deferred Transmissions	UDINT (32)	Frames for which the first transmission attempt is delayed because the medium is busy.
			Late Collisions	UDINT (32)	Number of times a collision is detected later than 512 bit times into the transmission of a packet.
			Excessive Collisions	UDINT (32)	Frames for which transmission fails due to excessive collisions.
			MAC Transmit Errors	UDINT (32)	Frames for which transmission fails due to an internal MAC sublayer transmit error.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			Carrier Sense Errors	UDINT (32)	Times that the carrier sense condition was lost or never asserted when attempting to transmit a frame.
			Frame Too Long	UDINT (32)	Received frames that exceed the maximum permitted frame size.
			MAC Receive Errors	UDINT (32)	Frames for which reception on an interface fails due to an internal MAC sublayer receive error.
<b>6</b>	Get/Set	Interface Control		(Struct.)	Configuration for physical Interface.
			Control Bits	WORD (16)	Bit 0: Auto-Negotiate Value 0: Force Value 1: Auto-Nego Bit 1: Forced Duplex Mode Value 0: half duplex Value 1: full duplex Bit 2 to 15: Reserved, all zero
			Forced Interface Speed	UINT (16)	Speed at which the interface shall be forced to operate. Speed in Mbps (10, 100, 1000, etc.)
<b>10</b>	Get	Interface Label		SHORT_STRING	Port description. Maximum length is 64 characters.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
11	Get	Interface Capability		(Struct.)	Indication of capabilities of the interface

Capability Bits	DWORD (32)	<p>Interface capabilities, other than speed/duplex.</p> <p>Bit 0: Manual Setting Requires Reset</p> <p>Value 0: The device automatically applies changes made to the Interface Control attribute (#6). Doesn't require a reset in order for changes to take effect.</p> <p>Value 1: The device doesn't automatically apply changes made to the Interface Control attribute (#6). Require a reset in order for changes to take effect.</p> <p>Bit 1: Auto-Negotiate</p> <p>Value 0: Not support AN</p> <p>Value 1: Support AN</p> <p>Bit 2: Auto-MDIX</p> <p>Value 0: Not support auto MDIX</p> <p>Value 1: Support auto MDIX</p> <p>Bit 3: Manual Speed/Duplex</p> <p>Value 0: Not support manual setting of speed/duplex.</p> <p>Value 1: Supports manual setting of speed/duplex via the Interface Control attribute (#6)</p> <p>Bit 4 to 31: Reserved, all zero</p>
-----------------	------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
		Speed/Duplex Options		(Struct.)	Indicates speed/duplex pairs supported in the Interface Control attribute.
12	Get	HC Interface Counters	HCInOctets	ULINT (64)	The total number of octets received on the interface.  This counter is a 64-bit version of In Octets.
			HCInUcastPkts	ULINT (64)	Unicast packets received on the interface.  This counter is a 64-bit version of In Ucast Packets.
			HCInMulticastPkts	ULINT (64)	Multicast packets received on the interface.
			HCInBroadcastPkts	ULINT (64)	Broadcast packets received on the interface.
			HCOctets	ULINT (64)	Octets sent on the interface.  This counter is a 64-bit version of Out Octets.
			HCOUcastPkts	ULINT (64)	Unicast packets sent on the interface.  This counter is a 64-bit version of Out Ucast Packets.
			HCOMulticastPkts	ULINT (64)	Multicast packets sent on the interface.
			HCOBroadcastPkts	ULINT (64)	Broadcast packets sent on the interface.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
13	Get	HC Media Counters	HCStatsAlignmentErrors	ULINT (64)	<p>Frames received that are not an integral number of octets in length and do not pass the FCS check.</p> <p>This counter is a 64-bit version of Alignment Errors.</p>
			HCStatsFCSErrors	ULINT (64)	<p>Frames received that are an integral number of octets in length but do not pass the FCS check. This counter is a 64-bit version of FCS Errors.</p>
			HCStatsInternalMacTransmitErrors	ULINT (64)	<p>Frames for which transmission fails due to an internal MAC sublayer transmit error.</p> <p>This counter is a 64-bit version of MAC Transmit Errors.</p>
			HCStatsFrameTooLongs	ULINT (64)	<p>Frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size.</p> <p>This counter is a 64-bit version of Frame Too Long Errors.</p>
			HCStatsInternalMacReceiveErrors	ULINT (64)	<p>Frames for which reception on an interface fails due to an internal MAC sublayer receive error.</p> <p>This counter is a 64-bit version of MAC Receive Errors.</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			HCStatsSymbolErrors	ULINT (64)	Number of times there was an invalid data symbol on the media when a valid carrier was present.
100	Get	Port State		USINT (8)	Switch port state. Value 1 = Disable Value 2 = Blocking Value 3 = Listening Value 4 = Learning Value 5 = Forwarding Value 6 = Broken
101	Get	Media Type		STRING	Port media type.
102	Get/Set	Traffic Storm Control		USINT (8)	Traffic storm control enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled Bit 0: Broadcast storm control Bit 1: Multicast storm control Bit 2: DLF storm control
103	Get/Set	Port On event		USINT (8)	Registered port for port on event notification. 0 = Unregistered. 1 = Registered.
104	Get/Set	Port Off event		USINT (8)	Registered port for port off event notification. 0 = Unregistered. 1 = Registered.

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name (Struct.)	Data Type	Description
105	Get/Set	Port shut down by Port Security event	USINT (8)	Registered port for port shut down by Port Security event notification. 0 = Unregistered. 1 = Registered.
106	Get/Set	Port shut down by Rate Limit event	USINT (8)	Registered port for port shut down by Rate Limit event notification. 0 = Unregistered. 1 = Registered.
107	Get/Set	Port recovered by Rate Limit event	USINT (8)	Registered port for port recovered by Rate Limit event notification. 0 = Unregistered. 1 = Registered.
108	Get/Set	Fiber Check Warning	USINT (8)	Registered port for fiber check warning event notification. 0 = Unregistered. 1 = Registered.

## Interface Flags

Bit(s)	Called	Definition
0	Link Status	0 indicates an inactive link; 1 indicates an active link.
1	Half/Full Duplex	0 indicates half duplex; 1 indicates full duplex.

Bit(s)	Called	Definition
2-4	Negotiation Status	<p>Indicates the status of link auto-negotiation</p> <p>0 = Auto-negotiation in progress.</p> <p>1 = Auto-negotiation and speed detection failed. Using default values for speed and duplex. Default values are product-dependent; recommended defaults are 10Mbps and half duplex.</p> <p>2 = Auto negotiation failed but detected speed. Duplex was defaulted. Default value is product-dependent; recommended default is half duplex.</p> <p>3 = Successfully negotiated speed and duplex.</p> <p>4 = Auto-negotiation not attempted. Forced speed and duplex.</p>
5	Manual Setting Requires Reset	0 indicates the interface can activate changes to link parameters (auto-negotiate, duplex mode, interface speed) automatically. 1 indicates the device requires a Reset service be issued to its Identity Object in order for the changes to take effect.
6	Local Hardware Fault	0 indicates the interface detects no local hardware fault; 1 indicates a local hardware fault is detected. The meaning of this is product-specific. For example, an AUI/MII interface might detect no transceiver attached, or a radio modem might detect no antenna attached. In contrast to the soft, possibly self-correcting nature of the Link Status being inactive, this is assumed a hard-fault requiring user intervention.
7~31	Reserved.	Shall be set to zero

The Ethernet Link Object Instance supports the following CIP common services:

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute

## LLDP Management Object

The LLDP Management Object contains administrative information for the LLDP protocol. Only one instance of the LLDP Management Object shall be implemented. The class code of LLDP Management Object is 0x109.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object. The current value assigned to this value is 1.

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get/Set	LLDP Enable		(Struct.)	
			LLDP Enable Array Length	USINT (16)	Number of bits defined in the LLDP Enable Array member of this structure.
			LLDP Enable Array	Array of BYTE (8)	Bit 0 : Global Enable 0 = LLDP Tx & Rx Disabled 1 = LLDP Tx & Rx Enabled Bit 1-N : Port Tx Enable 0 = LLDP Tx Disabled 1 = LLDP Tx Enabled Bit >N : Reserved Shall be zero and ignored.
2	Get/Set	msgTxInterval		USINT (16)	Message Transmission Interval for LLDP frames. 0 = Reserved 1 - 3600 = Transmit interval (sec.) 3601 - 65535 = Reserved Recommended default value is 30. Note : <b>MOXA real supported transmit interval range is 5-32768.</b>
3	Get/Set	msgTxHold		USINT (8)	Message Transmission Multiplier for LLDP Frames 0 = Reserved 1 - 100 = Transmission Multiplier 101 - 255 = Reserved Recommended default value is 4. Note : <b>MOXA real supported transmit hold time multiplier range is 2-10.</b>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
4	Get	LLDP Datastore		WORD (16)	An indication of the retrieval methods for the LLDP database supported by the device. Bit: 0 = LLDP Data Table Object 1 = SNMP 2 = NETCONF YANG 3 = RESTCONF YANG 4 - 15 = Reserved At least one of bits 0 & 1 are required.
5	Get	Last Change		UDINT (32)	The value of sysUpTime taken the last time any entry in the local LLDP database (ignoring TTL) changed.

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute
0x10		✓	Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute

## LLDP Data Table Object

The LLDP Data Table object displays a record of all adjacent LLDP implementing devices that are currently active according to the receive state machine of the LLDP protocol.

An instance of the LLDP Data Table object shall be implemented per adjacent device detected. Instances shall be created and removed as neighboring devices change. The same instance number should be maintained for each neighboring device until the next power cycle of the device implementing this object.

The class code of the LLDP Data Table Object is 0x10A.

## Common Attribute List

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this object. The current value is 1.
2	Get	Max Instance	UINT (16)	Maximum instance number of an object currently created in this class level of the device.
3	Get	Number of Instances	UINT (16)	Number of object instances currently created in this class level of the device.
6	Get	Maximum ID Number Class Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum class attribute ID number implemented in the device.
7	Get	Maximum ID Number Instance Attributes	UINT (16)	Maximum instance attribute ID number implemented in the device.

## Instance Attribute

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Ethernet Link Instance Number		UINT (16)	The physical Ethernet port the LLDP frame populating this instance was received on.  0 = Unknown 1-65535 = Ethernet Link Object (0xF6) Instance Number
2	Get	MAC Address		ETH_MAC_ADDR	The MAC address will be set by the first occurrence of a MAC ID that exists in the following list:  1. The CIP MAC Address (TLV Type = 127, Subtype = 2)  2. The Chassis ID (TLV Type = 1) only if subtype = 2  3. The Port ID (TLV Type = 2) only if subtype = 3  4. All zero

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
<b>3</b>	Get	Interface Label		SHORT_STRING	<p>The Interface Label will be a maximum of 64 characters.</p> <p>It is set by the first occurrence of an interface label that exists in the following list:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The CIP Interface Label (TLV Type = 127, Subtype = 1)</li> <li>2. The Chassis ID (TLV Type = 1) only if subtype = 6</li> <li>3. The Port ID (TLV Type = 2) only if subtype = 5</li> <li>4. A null string</li> </ol>
<b>4</b>	Get	Time to Live		UINT (16)	<p>The number of seconds the neighboring information is to be considered valid.</p> <p>0 = Reserved</p> <p>1-65535 = Time To Live (in seconds)</p>
<b>5</b>	Get	System Capabilities TLV		(Struct.)	<p>A structure that contains bitmaps of both the supported and enabled capabilities of the neighboring device.</p>

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			System Capabilities	WORD (16)	<p>The capabilities which the neighboring device supports based on currently loaded firmware.</p> <p>Bit 0 : Other            Bit 1 : Repeater            Bit 2 : Bridge            Bit 3 : Access Point            Bit 4 : Router            Bit 5 : Telephone            Bit 6 : DOCSIS Cable Device            Bit 7 : End Station            Bit 8 : C-VLAN component            Bit 9 : S-VLAN component            Bit 10 : Two-port MAC Relay Component            Bit 11-15 : Reserved by IEEE</p> <p><b>Note :</b>  <b>EtherNet/IP Bridged multiport neighboring devices are expected to assert high bits 0 &amp; 2.</b></p>

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			Enabled Capabilities	WORD (16)	<p>The capabilities currently enabled on the neighboring device.</p> <p>Bit 0 : Other            Bit 1 : Repeater            Bit 2 : Bridge            Bit 3 : Access Point            Bit 4 : Router            Bit 5 : Telephone            Bit 6 : DOCSIS Cable Device            Bit 7 : End Station            Bit 8 : C-VLAN component            Bit 9 : S-VLAN component            Bit 10 : Two-port MAC Relay Component            Bit 11-15 : Reserved by IEEE</p> <p><b>Note :</b></p> <p><b>EtherNet/IP Bridged multiport neighboring devices are expected to assert high bits 0 &amp; 2.</b></p>
6	Get	IPv4 Management Address		(Struct.)	The IPv4 management addresses of the neighboring device.
			Management Address Count	USINT	0-255 = Number of received Management Address TLV's from this neighbor.
			Management Address	ARRAY of UDINT (32)	<p>The IP address shall be set to a valid Class A, B, or C address.</p> <p>And shall not be set to all zeros or the loopback address (127.0.0.1).</p>
7	Get	CIP Identification		(Struct.)	<p>The CIP Identification TLV of the neighboring device, if present.</p> <p>Set by the CIP Identification TLV (TLV Type = 127, Subtype = 09), if present. Otherwise 0</p>
			Vendor ID	UINT (16)	Vendor ID

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			Device Type	UINT (16)	Device Type
			Product Code	UINT (16)	Product Code
			Major Revision	BYTE (8)	Major Revision
			Minor Revision	USINT (8)	Minor Revision
			CIP Serial Number	UDINT (32)	Serial Number – Shall not be zero 0.
<b>8</b>	Get	Additional Ethernet Capabilities		(Struct.)	A TLV for Ethernet Preemption Support from the neighboring device.  Set by the Additional Ethernet Capabilities TLV (TLV type = 127, Subtype 7), if present. Otherwise, 0.
			Preemption Support	BOOL (8)	Allows a link partner to know if preemption is supported on the link.  0 = Not Supported 1 = Supported
			Preemption Status	BOOL (8)	Allows a link partner to know if preemption is enabled on the link.  0 = Not Enabled 1 = Enabled
			Preemption Active	BOOL (8)	Allows a link partner to know if link preemption has passed embedded verification.  0 = Not Active 1 = Active

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	(Struct.)	Data Type	Description
			Additional Fragment Size	USINT (8)	The number of octets that must be transmitted of a frame before preemption occur. 0 = 64 octets 1 = 128 octets 2 = 192 octets 3 = 256 octets 4-255 = Reserved
9	Get	Last Change		UDINT (32)	The value of sysUpTime taken the last time any attribute in this instance changed.

## Common Service

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x01	✓		Get_Attribute_All	Returns the contents of all attributes of the class.
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.
0x11	✓		Find_Next_Object_Instance	Causes the specified Class to search for and return a list of instances ID's of existing instances of the LLDP Data Table Object.

## Moxa Networking Object (Vendor Specific)

The Moxa Networking object includes system information and status.

It can also be used to do the device diagnostic & configuration through explicit messaging.

The class code is **0x404**.

## Class Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT (16)	Revision of this objec

## Instance Attribute List

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	CPU Usage	USINT (8)	Percentage of CPU usage (0 to100)
2	Get	L2 Redundancy	USINT (8)	Bit mask of device roles. Bit 0: RSTP 0 = RSTP Disabled 1 = RSTP Enabled Bit 1: MSTP 0 = MSTP Disabled 1 = MSTP Enabled Bit 2: Turbo Chain 0 = Turbo Chain Disabled 1 = Turbo Chain Enabled Bit 3: Turbo Ring v2 0 = Turbo Ring v2 Disabled 1 = Turbo Ring v2 Enabled Bit 4: Dual-Homing 0 = Dual-Homing Disabled 1 = Dual-Homing Enabled Bit 5: MRP 0 = MRP Disabled 1 = MRP Enabled

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
3	Get	Relay Alarm Status	USINT (8)	<p>Relay alarm event-triggered status.</p> <p>When Relay alarm is triggered, value will change from 0x0 to 0x1.</p> <p>Bit 0: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm status 0 = Alarm doesn't trigger. 1 = Alarm triggered.</p> <p>Bit 1: PWR1-Relay alarm status 0 = Alarm doesn't trigger. 1 = Alarm triggered.</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR2-Relay alarm status 0 = Alarm doesn't trigger. 1 = Alarm triggered.</p>
4	Get/Set	Cold Start	USINT (8)	<p>System cold start event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
5	Get/Set	Warm Start	USINT (8)	<p>System warm start event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
6	Get/Set	Redundant port health check fail	USINT (8)	<p>Redundant port health check fail.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
<b>7</b>	Get/Set	PD over current	USINT (8)	<p>Current of port has exceeded the safety limit. (Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
<b>8</b>	Get/Set	PD no response	USINT (8)	<p>The device connected to this port is not responding to the PD failure check. (Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
9	Get/Set	Power On	USINT (8)	<p>Power supply on event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
10	Get/Set	Power Off	USINT (8)	<p>Power supply off event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
11	Get/Set	DI on	USINT (8)	<p>Digital input on event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
12	Get/Set	DI off	USINT (8)	<p>Digital input off event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
13	Get/Set	Port On	USINT (8)	<p>Port link up event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
14	Get/Set	Port Off	USINT (8)	<p>Port link down event notification.</p> <p>(Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable.</p> <p>0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
15	Get/Set	Port shutdown by Port Security	USINT (8)	<p>Port shutdown by Port Security event notification. (Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
16	Get/Set	Port shutdown by Rate Limit	USINT (8)	<p>Port shutdown by Rate Limit event notification. (Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
17	Get/Set	Port recovered by Rate Limit	USINT (8)	<p>Port recovered by Rate Limit event notification. (Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>
18	Get/Set	Fiber Check Warning	USINT (8)	<p>Fiber check warning event notification. (Bit 1 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 2-3 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Event notification enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 1: Relay (MGMT-Relay) alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR1-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p> <p>Bit 3: PWR2-Relay alarm enable. 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled</p>

Attr ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
19	Set	Relay Alarm Cut-off	USINT (8)	<p>Cut off the relay alarm.</p> <p>(Bit 0 should call MGMT-Relay if device support more than 1 relay. Bit 1-2 depends on device supported relay number.)</p> <p>Bit 0: Relay (MGMT-Relay)</p> <p>0 = Don't cut-off relay</p> <p>1 = Cut-off relay</p> <p>Bit 1: PWR1-Relay</p> <p>0 = Don't cut-off relay</p> <p>1 = Cut-off relay</p> <p>Bit 2: PWR2-Relay</p> <p>0 = Don't cut-off relay</p> <p>1 = Cut-off relay</p>
20	Set	Reset MIB Count	USINT (8)	<p>Reset port MIB counters. (Ethernet Link object's attributes 4-5 and 12-13.)</p> <p>Any value indicates to reset port MIB counter.</p>
21	Set	Reset Device	USINT (8)	<p>Reboot and reset to default</p> <p>0 = Reserved.</p> <p>1 = Reboot the device</p> <p>2 = Reset to default</p>

## Common Service List

Service Code	Implementation Class	Implementation Instance	Service Name	Description
0x0E	✓	✓	Get_Attribute_Single	Used to read an object instance attribute.
0x10	✓		Set_Attribute_Single	Used to modify an object instance attribute

# CIP Tags

This page shows the tags related to CIP objects. These tags correspond to the object's attributes.

## Tags for Identity Objects

**Data Type:** MOXA\_Identity\_Object

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Vendor ID</b>	INT	ODVA Vendor ID. Moxa=0x3DF
<b>Device Type</b>	INT	0x2C, "Managed Ethernet Switch"
<b>Product Code</b>	INT	Refer to the Product Code Table. Example: RKS-G4028-4GT-HV = 0x1301
<b>Major Revision</b>	SINT	The structure member, major
<b>Minor Revision</b>	SINT	The structure member, minor
<b>Status</b>	INT	Summary status of the device
<b>Serial Number</b>	DINT	Switch serial number
<b>Product Name</b>	STRING	Switch model name
<b>Assigned Name</b>	MOXA_String	User assigned switch name
<b>Geographic Location</b>	MOXA_String	User assigned switch location

## Tags for TCPIP Objects

**Data Type:** MOXA\_TCPIP\_Interface\_Object

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Status</b>	DINT	Interface status

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Configuration Capability</b>	DINT	Interface capability flags
<b>Configuration Control</b>	DINT	Interface control flags
<b>Path Size</b>	INT	Size of Path
<b>Object Path 1</b>	INT	Logical segments identifying the physical link object
<b>Object Path 2</b>	INT	Logical segments identifying the physical link object
<b>IP Address</b>	DINT	The device's IP address
<b>Network Mask</b>	DINT	The device's network mask
<b>Gateway Address</b>	DINT	Default gateway address
<b>Name Server 1</b>	DINT	Primary name server
<b>Name Server 2</b>	DINT	Secondary name server
<b>Domain Name</b>	STRING	Default domain name
<b>Host Name</b>	STRING	Host name
<b>Encapsulation Inactivity Timeout</b>	INT	Number of seconds of inactivity before TCP connection closes.

## Tags for Ethernet Link Objects

**Data Type:** MOXA\_Ethernet\_Link\_Object

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Interface Speed</b>	DINT	Interface speed currently in use. Speed in Mbps (e.g., 0, 10, 100, 1000, etc.)
<b>Interface Flags</b>	MOXA_Interface_Object_Flags_v0	Interface status flags
<b>Physical Address</b>	SINT[6]	MAC layer address
<b>InOctets</b>	DINT	Octets received on the interface

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>InUcastPackets</b>	DINT	Unicast packets received on the interface
<b>InNucastPackets</b>	DINT	Non-unicast packets received on the interface
<b>InDiscards</b>	DINT	Inbound packets received on the interface but discarded
<b>InErrors</b>	DINT	Inbound packets that contain errors (does not include In Discards)
<b>OutOctets</b>	DINT	Octets sent on the interface
<b>OutUcastPackets</b>	DINT	Unicast packets sent on the interface
<b>OutNucastPackets</b>	DINT	Non-unicast packets sent on the interface
<b>OutDiscards</b>	DINT	Outbound packets discarded
<b>OutErrors</b>	DINT	Outbound packets that contain errors
<b>Alignment Errors</b>	DINT	Frames received that are not an integral number of octets in length
<b>FCS Errors</b>	DINT	Frames received that do not pass the FCS check
<b>Single Collisions</b>	DINT	Successfully transmitted frames which experienced exactly one collision
<b>Multiple Collisions</b>	DINT	Successfully transmitted frames which experienced more than one collision
<b>SQE Test Errors</b>	DINT	Number of times SQE test error message is generated
<b>Deferred Transmissions</b>	DINT	Frames for which first transmission attempt is delayed because the medium is busy
<b>Late Collisions</b>	DINT	Number of times a collision is detected later than 512 bit-times into the transmission of a packet

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Excessive Collisions</b>	DINT	Frames for which transmission fails due to excessive collisions
<b>MAC Transmit Errors</b>	DINT	Frames for which transmission fails due to an internal MAC sublayer transmit error
<b>Carrier Sense Errors</b>	DINT	Times that the carrier sense condition was lost or never asserted when attempting to transmit a frame
<b>Frame Too Long</b>	DINT	Frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size
<b>MAC Receive Errors</b>	DINT	Frames for which reception on an interface fails due to an internal MAC sublayer receive error
<b>Control Bits</b>	INT	0 Auto-negotiate 0 indicates 802.3 link auto-negotiation is disabled. 1 indicates auto-negotiation is enabled
<b>Forced Interface Speed</b>	INT	Speed at which the interface shall be forced to operate. Speed in Mbps (10, 100, 1000, etc.)
<b>Interface Label</b>	STRING	Label like "TX5"
<b>Capability Bits</b>	DINT	Capability Bits contains an array of bits that indicate whether the interface supports capabilities such as auto-negotiation and auto-MDIX.
<b>Speed Duplex Array</b>	SINT	Number of elements
<b>Interface Speed Duplex Capability</b>	MOXA_Interface	The total number of octets received on the interface. This counter is a 64-bit version of In Octets.
<b>HC InOctets</b>	LINT	Unicast packets received on the interface. This counter is a 64-bit version of In Ucast Packets.
<b>HC InMulticastPkts</b>	LINT	Multicast packets received on the interface.

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>HC InBroadcastPkts</b>	LINT	Broadcast packets received on the interface.
<b>HC OutOctets</b>	LINT	Octets sent on the interface. This counter is a 64-bit version of Out Octets.
<b>HC OutUcastPkts</b>	LINT	Unicast packets sent on the interface. This counter is a 64-bit version of Out Ucast Packets.
<b>HC OutMulticastPkts</b>	LINT	Multicast packets sent on the interface.
<b>HC OutBroadcastPkts</b>	LINT	Broadcast packets sent on the interface.
<b>HC StatsFCSErrors</b>	LINT	Frames received that are not an integral number of octets in length and do not pass the FCS check. This counter is a 64-bit version of Alignment Errors.
<b>HC StandardMacTransmitErrors</b>	LINT	Frames received that are an integral number of octets in length but do not pass the FCS check. This counter is a 64-bit version of FCS Errors.
<b>HC StatsFrameTooLong</b>	LINT	Frames for which transmission fails due to an internal MAC sublayer transmit error. This counter is a 64-bit version of MAC Transmit Errors.
<b>HC StatsInternalMacReceiveErrors</b>	LINT	Frames received that exceed the maximum permitted frame size. This counter is a 64-bit version of Frame Too Long Errors.
<b>HC StatsSymbolErrors</b>	LINT	Frames for which reception on an interface fails due to an internal MAC sublayer receive error. This counter is a 64-bit version of MAC Receive Errors.
<b>Port State</b>	LINT	Switch port state.
<b>Media Type</b>	STRING	Port media type.

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Traffic Storm Control</b>	SINT	Traffic storm control enabled.
<b>Port On Event</b>	SINT	Registered port for port on event notification.
<b>Port Off Event</b>	SINT	Registered port for port off event notification.
<b>Port Shutdown by PSEC Event</b>	SINT	Registered port for port shut down by Port Security event notification.
<b>Port Shutdown by Rate Limit Event</b>	SINT	Registered port for port shut down by Rate Limit event notification.
<b>Port Recovery by Rate Limit Event</b>	SINT	Registered port for port recovered by Rate Limit event notification.
<b>Fiber Check Warning Event</b>	SINT	Registered port for fiber check warning event notification.

## Tags for Moxa Networking Objects

**Data Type:** MOXA\_Networking\_Object

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>System Firmware Version</b>	DINT	Switch firmware version
<b>System Fault Status</b>	DINT	Switch fault status
<b>Switch Port Number</b>	SINT	Switch max port number
<b>Port Exist</b>	DINT[2]	Switch per port exist
<b>Port Enable</b>	DINT[2]	Switch per port exist 0:Enable 1:Disable
<b>Port Link Status</b>	DINT[2]	Switch per port link status
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	SINT	IGMP snooping enable: 0: Disable 1: Enable

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Query Interval</b>	DINT	Query Interval range from 20~600 sec
<b>IGMP Enhanced Mode</b>	SINT	IGMP enhanced mode 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable
<b>Relay 1</b>	SINT	Override relay warning setting 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable
<b>Relay 2</b>	SINT	Override relay warning setting 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable
<b>Power 1 Relay Warning</b>	SINT	Power input 1 failure (on à off) 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable(relay 1) 2: Enable(relay 2)
<b>Power 2 Relay Warning</b>	SINT	Power input 2 failure (on à off) 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable(relay 1) 2: Enable(relay 2)
<b>DI 1 Off Relay Warning</b>	SINT	DI 1 (off) 0: disable (default) 1: Enable(relay 1) 2: Enable(relay 2)
<b>DI 1 On Relay Warning</b>	SINT	DI 1 (on) 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable(relay 1) 2: Enable(relay 2)
<b>DI 2 Off Relay Warning</b>	SINT	DI 2 (off) 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable(relay 1) 2: Enable(relay 2)

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>DI 2 On Relay Warning</b>	SINT	DI 2 (on) 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable(relay 1) 2: Enable(relay 2)
<b>Turbo Ring Break Relay Warning</b>	SINT	Turbo Ring Break (Ring Master Only ) 0: Disable (default) 1: Enable (relay 1) 2: Enable (relay 2)
<b>CPU Usage</b>	SINT	Percent of usage (0-100)
<b>Device Up Time</b>	DINT	Number of seconds since device was powered up
<b>Reset Mib Counter</b>	SINT	Reset port MIB counters
<b>Redundant Device Mode</b>	DINT	Bit 0: RSTP, Bit 1: Turbo Ring, Bit 2: Turbo Ring v2, Bit 3: Turbo Chain, Bit 4: MSTP
<b>Reset Device</b>	SINT	1: restart the device 2: reset to default

## Tags for Moxa Base Switch Objects

**Data Type:** MOXA\_Base\_Switch\_Object

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Device Up Time</b>	DINT	Time since device was powered up.
<b>Total Port Count</b>	DINT	Number of physical available ports.
<b>System Firmware Version</b>	STRING	System Firmware Version.
<b>Power Source</b>	INT	Status of switch power source.
<b>Port Mask Size</b>	INT	Number of DWORDs in port array attributes.

Name	Data Type	Description
<b>Existing Port</b>	DINT (4)	Switch existing port.
<b>Global Port Admin State</b>	DINT (4)	Port Admin State.
<b>Global Port Link Status</b>	DINT (4)	Ports Link Status.

## Pre-configured Tags in the Moxa AOI

The Moxa AOI supports all the CIP tags listed in the tables below, but in the AOI, we only preconfigure logic links between selected tags and Moxa switches.

To monitor non-configured tags, PLC programmers will need to create the links manually. Otherwise, in RSLogix 5000, the value column of these tags will display as "0". If you experience problems creating new links, please contact Moxa technical support for assistance.

### Note

For preconfigured tags, Moxa has already created the logic links between the CIP tags and Moxa Ethernet switches so RSLogix 5000 can get/set switch information correctly.

The tables below specify all preconfigured tags in Moxa AOI with a ✖ mark.

## Identity Object (0x01)

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
✖	Vendor ID
✖	Device Type
✖	Product Code
✖	Revision
✖	Status
✖	Serial Number

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Product Name
	Assigned Name
	Geographic Location

## Base Switch Object (0x51)

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Device Up Time
※	Total Port Count
※	System Firmware Version
※	Power Source
※	Port Mask Size
※	Existing Port
※	Global Port Admin State
※	Global Port Link Status

## TCP/IP Interface Object (0xF5)

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Status
※	Configuration Capability
※	Configuration Control
※	Physical Link Object

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Interface Configuration
※	Host Name
※	Encapsulation Inactivity Timeout

## Ethernet Link Object (0xF6)

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Interface Speed
※	Interface Flags
※	Physical Address
※	Interface Counters
	Media Counters
※	Interface Control
	Interface Label
	Interface Capability
	HC Interface Counters
	HC Media Counters
※	Port State
	Media Type
※	Traffic Storm Control
※	Port On event
※	Port Off event

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Port shut down by Port Security event
※	Port shut down by Rate Limit event
※	Port recovered by Rate Limit event
※	Fiber Check Warning

## Moxa Networking Object (0x404)

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	CPU Usage
※	L2 Redundancy
※	Relay Alarm Status
	Cold Start
	Warm Start
	Redundant port health check fail
	PD over current
	PD no response
	Power On
	Power Off
	DI on
	DI off
※	Port On
※	Port Off

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Port shutdown by Port Security
※	Port shutdown by Rate Limit
※	Port recovered by Rate Limit
※	Fiber Check Warning
	Relay Alarm Cut-off
※	Reset MIB Count
※	Reset Device

## I/O Message Object

Pre-Configured Tags	Attribute Name
※	Relay Alarm Status
※	Existing Port
※	Global Port Link Status
※	Global Port Admin State

# Configuration Types

This table describes the different types of configurations that your device uses.

Configuration Type	Description
<b>Startup Config</b>	The configuration that is loaded when the device boots up. These settings persist even when the device is powered off.
<b>Running Config</b>	<p>The configuration that is currently in use by the device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>If auto-save is enabled</b>, all changes will be saved to the startup config, and will be retained when the device powers off.</li><li>• <b>If auto-save is disabled</b>, any unsaved changes will be lost when the device powers off.</li></ul> <p>Refer to <a href="#">Disable/Enable Auto Save</a> for more information.</p>
<b>Factory Default Config</b>	The pre-defined factory default configuration of your device. This configuration cannot be changed.

# Event Log Descriptions

This table describes the different events that can be recorded in the event log files.

Event Name	Severity	Event Description
<b>802.1X Auth Failed</b>	Warning	802.1x authentication failed on port {{index}}/{{number}} with {{buffer}}
<b>ABC-02 is inserted or unplugged</b>	Notice	ABC-02 is {{inserted/unplugged}}.
<b>ABC-03 is inserted or unplugged</b>	Notice	ABC-03 is {{inserted/unplugged}}.
<b>Account log out</b>	Notice	[Account:{{user_name}}] logged out.
<b>Account removed</b>	Notice	[Account:{{user_name}}] has been removed by admin.
<b>Account settings changed</b>	Notice	Account settings of [Account:{{user_name}}] has been updated. Account settings of [Account:{{user_name}}] has been deleted. Account settings of [Account:{{user_name}}] has been created.
<b>Announce message with different interval</b>	Warning	An Announce message with a different interval has been received from port {{index}}/{{number}}
<b>Announce timeout</b>	Warning	PTP port {{index}}/{{number}} Announce receipt timer has timed out.
<b>Check if hardware revision is valid</b>	Notice	The hardware revision of Power Module {{index}} is not allowed.
<b>Check if it is a known power module</b>	Warning	To avoid potential overheating, Moxa does not recommend using a {{index}} power supply with this device.
<b>Cold start</b>	Critical	System has performed a cold start.
<b>Configuration changed</b>	Notice	Configuration {{modules}} changed by {{username}}.
<b>Configuration exported</b>	Notice	Configurations exported {{successful /failed}} by {{username}} via {{method}}.
<b>Configuration imported</b>	Notice	Configuration import {{successful /failed}} by {{username}} via {{method}}.
<b>Coupling changed</b>	Warning	Turbo Ring v2 coupling path status has changed.

Event Name	Severity	Event Description
<b>DHCP client ingress discards packets due to the DHCP Snooping rule</b>	Warning	VLAN <vlan-id> dropped DHCP client ingress packets due to a violation of the DHCP Snooping rule. Total packets discarded: <number>
<b>DHCP server discards packets due to the DHCP Snooping rule</b>	Warning	VLAN <vlan-id> dropped DHCP server packets due to a violation of the DHCP Snooping rule. Total packets discarded: <number>
<b>DI off</b>	Notice	Digital Input {{index}} has been turned off.
<b>DI on</b>	Notice	Digital Input {{index}} has been turned on.
<b>Dual homing path changed</b>	Warning	Dual Homing path has switched.
<b>Event log export</b>	Notice	Event Log export {{successful /failed}} by {{username}} via {{method}}.
<b>Failed to overwrite the dhcpsnp static entry</b>	Warning	Static entry: VLAN: {{Vlan Id}}, MAC: {{mac addr}} already exists.
<b>Fiber Check warning</b>	Warning	Port {{index}}/{{number}} 's temperature has exceeded the threshold. Port{{index}}/{{number}} Tx power is over the threshold. Port{{index}}/{{number}} Tx power is under the threshold. Port{{index}}/{{number}} Rx power is over the threshold. Port{{index}}/{{number}} Rx power is under the threshold.
<b>Firmware upgrade failed</b>	Warning	Firmware failed to upgrade.
<b>Firmware upgrade successful</b>	Notice	Firmware successfully upgraded.
<b>Grand Master changed</b>	Warning	The PTP grandmaster has changed from {{mac addr}} to {{mac addr}}
<b>Hardware revision is not allowed</b>	Error	The hardware revision of Line Module %d is not allowed.
<b>Interface link down</b>	Notice	Interface{{number}} down.
<b>Interface link up</b>	Notice	Interface {{number}} up.

Event Name	Severity	Event Description
<b>Issue event log to syslog server</b>	Emergency	The system has lost power.
<b>LLDP table changed</b>	Info	LLDP remote table has changed.
<b>Log capacity threshold</b>	Warning	Number of event log entries {{logEntryNum}} has reached the threshold.
<b>Log Turbo Chain Port Restart</b>	Notice	Port-Channel {{channel id}} has restarted by Turbo Chain. Port {{index}}/{{number}} has restarted by Turbo Chain.
<b>Login failed</b>	Warning	[Account {{user_name}}] log in failed via {{interface}}.
<b>Login lockout</b>	Warning	[Account {{user_name}}] locked due to {{failed_times}} failed login attempts.
<b>Login successful</b>	Notice	[Account {{user_name}}] successfully logged in via {{interface}}.
<b>Low input voltage</b>	Warning	The input voltage of the power supply has dropped below 46 VDC. Please adjust the voltage to between 46 and 57 VDC to fit the PoE voltage requirement.
<b>Master changed</b>	Warning	Ring {{Index}} master has changed.
<b>Master mismatch</b>	Warning	Ring {{Index}} master setting does not match.
<b>Module change</b>	Notice	M{{index}} module has changed.
<b>Module Initialized Fail</b>	Error	M{{index}} Module initialized has failed.
<b>Module inserted</b>	Notice	M{{Index}} Module inserted.
<b>Module removed</b>	Notice	M{{index}} Module removed.
<b>MSTP new port role</b>	Warning	MSTP (MST{{Index}}) port {{number}} role changed from {{role}} to {{role}}.
<b>MSTP root changed</b>	Warning	MSTP (MST{{Index}}) new root has been elected in topology.
<b>MSTP topology changed</b>	Warning	Topology (MST{{Index}}) has been changed by MSTP.
<b>OSPF DR router adjacency changed</b>	Notice	Interface {{ip addr}}{{ip addr}}{{ip addr}}{{ip addr}} DR neighbor {{ip addr}}{{ip addr}}{{ip addr}}{{ip addr}} adjacency changed.

Event Name	Severity	Event Description
<b>OSPF interface DR changed</b>	Notice	Interface {{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}} DR Change{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}} to {{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}.
<b>OSPF interface ISM became DR</b>	Notice	Interface {{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}}-{{ip addr}} become DR.
<b>Packet dropped by Port Security</b>	Warning	Port {{index}}/{{number}} dropped packets due to violation of Port Security rule.
<b>Password changed</b>	Notice	Password of [Account: {{user_name}}] has been changed.
<b>PD no response</b>	Error	Port {{number}} device is not responding to the PD failure check. Please check the device status.
<b>PD over-current</b>	Error	Current of port {{number}} has exceeded the safety limit. Please check the device status.
<b>PD power off</b>	Notice	Port {{number}} PD power off.
<b>PD power on</b>	Notice	Port {{number}} PD power on.
<b>Port Link Down</b>	Notice	Port {{index}}/{{number}} link down. Port-channel {{Channel id}} link down.
<b>Port Link Up</b>	Notice	Port {{index}}/{{number}} link up. Port-channel {{Channel id}} link up.
<b>Port recovery by Rate Limit</b>	Warning	Port {{index}}/{{number}} has recovered by rate limit.
<b>Port shutdown by Loop</b>	Critical	Port {{index}}/{{number}} looping and shutdown.
<b>Port shutdown by Port Security</b>	Warning	Port {{index}}/{{number}} has shut down due to a violation of the Port Security rule.
<b>Port shutdown by Rate Limit</b>	Warning	Port {{index}}/{{number}} has excessive traffic and shutdown.
<b>Port state change</b>	Info	PTP port {{index}}/{{number}} has changed from {{state}} to {{state}}.
<b>Power budget exceeded</b>	Warning	The consumed power {{power_value}} of all the PDs have exceeded the maximum input power {{input_power_value}}.

Event Name	Severity	Event Description
<b>Power detection failure</b>	Warning	Port {{number}} device is {{Not present/Legacy PD/802.3 af/802.3 at/802.3 bt/NIC/Unknown}}. Please {{No suggestion/enable PoE power output/disable PoE power output/select PoE output mode to High power/select PoE output mode to Force/enable legacy PD detection/raise external power supply voltage greater than 46 VDC}}.
<b>Power module inserted</b>	Notice	Power Module {{index}} has been inserted.
<b>Power module removed</b>	Notice	Power Module {{index}} has been removed.
<b>Power Off-&gt;On</b>	Notice	Power {{index}} has turned off.
<b>Power On-&gt;Off</b>	Notice	Power {{index}} has turned on.
<b>PTP message with the wrong domain number</b>	Warning	The PTP message with the wrong domain number was received from port {{index}}/{{number}}.
<b>Redundant port health check failed</b>	Error	Redundant port {{index}}/{{number}} health check fail.
<b>Relay Override message</b>	Notice	{{relay_name}} relay alarm has been cut off.
<b>Relay Triggered message</b>	Notice	{{MGMT/PWR1/PWR2}} alarm is on due to {{Event Name}}.
<b>Resource log export</b>	Notice	Resource Log export {{successful /failed}} by {{username}} via {{method}}.
<b>RMON failing alarm</b>	Warning	{{user defined}}.
<b>RMON raising alarm</b>	Warning	{{user defined}}.
<b>RSTP invalid BPDU</b>	Warning	RSTP Port-Channel {{channel id}} received an invalid BPDU (type: {{type}}, value: {{value}}). RSTP port {{index}}/{{number}} received an invalid BPDU (type: {{type}}, value: {{value}}).
<b>RSTP migration</b>	Warning	Port-Channel {{channel id}} changed to {{rstp/stp}}. Port {{index}}/{{number}} changed to {{rstp/stp}}.

Event Name	Severity	Event Description
<b>RSTP new port role</b>	Warning	RSTP Port-Channel {{channel id}} role changed from {{role}} to {{role}}. RSTP port {{index}}/{{number}} role changed from {{role}} to {{role}}.
<b>RSTP root changed</b>	Warning	RSTP new root has been elected in topology.
<b>RSTP topology changed</b>	Warning	Topology has been changed by RSTP.
<b>Send message failed</b>	Warning	PTP port {{index}}/{{number}} failed to transmit {{Type}}.
<b>SSH Key generated</b>	Notice	SSH key has been regenerated.
<b>SSL certification changed</b>	Notice	SSL certificate has been changed. SSL certificate has been regenerated.
<b>Sync status changed</b>	Warning	The PTP sync status has changed from {{PreSyncStatus}} to {{CurSyncStatus}}.
<b>Topology changed (MRP)</b>	Warning	Topology change has been detected, MRP {{strMRMState}}.
<b>Topology changed (MSTP)</b>	Warning	Topology (MST{{Index}}) has been changed by MSTP.
<b>Topology changed (RSTP)</b>	Warning	Topology has been changed by RSTP.
<b>Topology changed (Turbo Chain)</b>	Warning	Topology has been changed by Turbo Chain.
<b>Topology changed (Turbo Ring)</b>	Warning	Topology change has been detected on Ring {{RingIndex}} of Turbo Ring v2.
<b>Trust host moved from one port to another port (Port Security)</b>	Warning	A trust host, MAC is {{mac address}} with VLAN {{Vlan Id}}, moved from port {{index}}/{{number}} to port {{index}}/{{number}}.
<b>Unknown module</b>	Warning	Module {{index}} Unknown Module Initialized Failed.
<b>Warm start</b>	Notice	System has performed a warm start.

# Fiber Check Threshold Values for Auto Mode

This table shows the default thresholds for temperature, Tx power, and Rx power for Moxa fiber modules.

Module	Temperature Threshold (°C)	Tx Power Low Threshold (dBm)	Tx Power High Threshold (dBm)	Rx Power Low Threshold (dBm)	Rx Power High Threshold (dBm)
<b>FEMST</b>	120	-20	-14	-32.0	-3.0
<b>FEMSC</b>	120	-20	-14	-32.0	-3.0
<b>FESSC</b>	120	-5.0	0.0	-34.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1FEMLC-T</b>	120	-18.0	-8.0	-32.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1FESLC-T</b>	120	-5.0	0.0	-34.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1FELLC-T</b>	120	-5.0	0.0	-34.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1GSXLC-T</b>	110	-9.5	-4.0	-18.0	0.0
<b>SFP-1GLSXC-T</b>	120	-9.0	-1.0	-19.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1GLXLC-T</b>	120	-9.0	-3.0	-21.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1GLHLC-T</b>	120	-8.0	-3.0	-23.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1GLHXLC-T</b>	120	-4.0	3.0	-24.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1GZXLC-T</b>	120	0.0	5.0	-24.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1G10ALC-T</b>	120	-9.0	-3.0	-21.0	-3.0

Module	Temperature Threshold (°C)	Tx Power Low Threshold (dBm)	Tx Power High Threshold (dBm)	Rx Power Low Threshold (dBm)	Rx Power High Threshold (dBm)
<b>SFP-1G10BLC-T</b>	120	-9.0	-3.0	-21.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1G20ALC-T</b>	120	-8.0	-2.0	-23.0	-2.0
<b>SFP-1G20BLC-T</b>	120	-8.0	-2.0	-23.0	-2.0
<b>SFP-1G40ALC-T</b>	120	-3.0	2.0	-23.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1G40BLC-T</b>	120	-3.0	2.0	-23.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1GSXLC</b>	100	-9.5	-4.0	-18.0	0
<b>SFP-1GLSXLC</b>	100	-9.0	-1.0	-19.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1GLXLC</b>	100	-9.0	-3.0	-21.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1GLHLC</b>	100	-8.0	-3.0	-23.0	-3.0
<b>SFP-1GLHXLC</b>	100	-4.0	3.0	-24.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1GZXLC</b>	100	0.0	5.0	-24.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1GEZXC</b>	100	0.0	5.0	-30.0	-9.0
<b>SFP-1GEZXC-120</b>	100	-2.0	3.0	-33.0	-8.0
<b>SFP-1G10ALC</b>	100	-9.0	-3.0	-21.0	-2.0
<b>SFP-1G10BLC</b>	100	-9.0	-3.0	-21.0	-3.0

Module	Temperature Threshold (°C)	Tx Power Low Threshold (dBm)	Tx Power High Threshold (dBm)	Rx Power Low Threshold (dBm)	Rx Power High Threshold (dBm)
<b>SFP-1G20ALC</b>	100	-8.0	-2.0	-23.0	-2.0
<b>SFP-1G20BLC</b>	100	-8.0	-2.0	-23.0	-2.0
<b>SFP-1G40ALC</b>	100	-3.0	2.0	-23.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-1G40BLC</b>	100	-3.0	2.0	-23.0	-1.0
<b>SFP-2.5GMLC-T</b>	120	-7.5	-1.0	-13.5	0.0
<b>SFP-2.5GSLC-T</b>	120	-9.0	-3.0	-15.0	3.0
<b>SFP-2.5GLSLC-T</b>	120	-5.0	0.0	-16.0	0.0
<b>SFP-2.5GSLHLC-T</b>	120	-4.0	1.0	-19.0	1.0
<b>SFP-10GERLC-T</b>	110	-1.0	2.0	-15.8	-1.0
<b>SFP-10ZRRC-T</b>	100	0.0	4.0	-23	-7.0
<b>SFP-10GLRLC-T</b>	120	-8.2	0.5	-14.4	0.5
<b>SFP-10GSRLC-T</b>	110	-5.0	-1.0	-9.9	0.5

# Modbus Data Map and Information

The data map addresses of Moxa switches shown in the following tables start from MODBUS address 30001 for Function Code 4. For example, the address offset 0x0000 (hex) equals MODBUS address 30001, and the address offset 0x0010 (hex) equals MODBUS address 30017. Note that all the information read from Moxa switches are in hex mode. To interpret the information, refer to the ASCII table for the translation (For example, 0x4D = 'M', 0x6F = 'o').

## System Information

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x0000</b>	1 word	HEX	Vendor ID = 0x1393
<b>0x0001</b>	1 word		Unit ID (Ethernet = 1)
<b>0x0002</b>	2 word	HEX	Product Code (Please refer to Product Code Table)
<b>0x0010</b>	20 words	ASCII	Vendor Name Ex: Vendor Name = "Moxa" Word 0 Hi byte = 'M' Word 0 Lo byte = 'o' Word 1 Hi byte = 'x' Word 1 Lo byte = 'a' Word 2 Hi byte = '\0' Word 2 Lo byte = '\0'

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x0030</b>	20 words	ASCII	Product Model EX: Product Model = "MDS-G4028" Word 0 Hi byte = 'M' Word 0 Lo byte = 'D' Word 1 Hi byte = 'S' Word 1 Lo byte = '-' Word 2 Hi byte = 'G' Word 2 Lo byte = '4' Word 3 Hi byte = '0' Word 3 Lo byte = '2' Word 3 Hi byte = '8' Word 4 Lo byte = '\0'
<b>0x004B</b>	6 words	ASCII	Product Serial Number
<b>0x0051</b>	2 words	HEX	Firmware Version Word 0 Hi byte = major (A) Word 0 Lo byte = minor (B) Word 1 Hi byte = release (C) Word 1 Lo byte = build (D)
<b>0x0053</b>	2 words	HEX	Firmware Build Date For example: Word 0 = 0 x 0609 Word 1 = 0 x 0705 Firmware was built on 2007-05-06 at 09 o'clock
<b>0x0055</b>	3 words	HEX	Ethernet MAC Address Ex: MAC = 00-01-02-03-04-05 Word 0 Hi byte = 0 x 00 Word 0 Lo byte = 0 x 01 Word 1 Hi byte = 0 x 02 Word 1 Lo byte = 0 x 03 Word 2 Hi byte = 0 x 0 Word 2 Lo byte = 0 x 05
<b>0x0058</b>	1 word	HEX	Power 1 0x0000: Off 0x0001: ON

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x0059</b>	1 word	HEX	Power 2 0x0000: Off 0x0001: On
<b>0x005A</b>	1 word	HEX	Fault LED Status 0x0000: No 0x0001: Yes
<b>0x0080</b>	1 word	HEX	DI1 0x0000:Off 0x0001:On 0xFFFE: DI1 is Not Supported
<b>0x0081</b>	1 word	HEX	DI2 0x0000:Off 0x0001:On 0xFFFE: DI2 is Not Supported
<b>0x0082</b>	1 word	HEX	DO1 0x0000:Off 0x0001:On 0xFFFE: DO1 is Not Supported
<b>0x0083</b>	1 word	HEX	DO2 0x0000:Off 0x0001:On 0xFFFE: DO2 is Not Supported
<b>0x0084</b>	1 word	HEX	DO3 0x0000:Off 0x0001:On 0xFFFE: DO3 is Not Supported
<b>0x0085 (Power Module 1)</b> <b>0x0086 (Power Module 2)</b>	1 word	HEX	Power Module Present 0x0000: Not Present 0x0001: Present 0xFFFE: Power Module is Not Supported

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x0087 (Power Module 1)</b> <b>0x0097 (Power Module 2)</b>	16 words	ASCII	Power Module Name EX: "PWR-HV-P48" Word 0 Hi byte = 'P' Word 0 Lo byte = 'W' Word 1 Hi byte = 'R' Word 1 Lo byte = '-' Word 2 Hi byte = 'H' Word 2 Lo byte = 'V' Word 3 Hi byte = '-' Word 3 Lo byte = 'P' Word 4 Hi byte = '4' Word 4 Lo byte = '8' Word 5 Hi byte = '\n' Word 5 Lo byte = '\n'
<b>0x00A7 (Power Module 1)</b> <b>0x00AD (Power Module 2)</b>	6 words	ASCII	Power Module Serial Number
<b>0x00B3 (Power Module 1)</b> <b>0x00B5 (Power Module 2)</b>	2 words	HEX	Power Module Product Revision Word 0 Hi byte = major (A) Word 0 Lo byte = subversion (B) Word 1 Hi byte = minor (C) Word 1 Lo byte = 0
<b>0x00B7 (External Module 1)</b> <b>0x00B8 (External Module 2)</b> ...	1 word	HEX	External Module Present 0x0000: Not Present 0x0001: Present 0xFFFE: External Module is Not Supported

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x00C7 (External Module 1)</b>	16 words	ASCII	External Module Name
			EX: "LM-7000H-4GTX"
<b>0x00D7 (External Module 2)</b>			Word 0 Hi byte = 'L'
...			Word 0 Lo byte = 'M'
			Word 1 Hi byte = '-'
			Word 1 Lo byte = '7'
			Word 2 Hi byte = '0'
			Word 2 Lo byte = '0'
			Word 3 Hi byte = '0'
			Word 3 Lo byte = 'H'
			Word 4 Hi byte = '-'
			Word 4 Lo byte = '4'
			Word 5 Hi byte = 'G'
			Word 5 Lo byte = 'T'
	Word 6 Hi byte = 'X'		
	Word 6 Lo byte = '\n'		
<b>0x01C7 (External Module 1)</b>	6 words	ASCII	External Module Serial Number
<b>0x01CD (External Module 2)</b>			
...			
<b>0x0227 (External Module 1)</b>	2 words	HEX	External Module Product Revision
			Word 0 Hi byte = major (A)
<b>0x0229 (External Module 2)</b>			Word 0 Lo byte = subversion (B)
...			Word 1 Hi byte = minor (C)
	Word 1 Lo byte = 0		

# Port Information

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x1000 (Port 1)</b>	1 word	HEX	Port Status
<b>0x1001 (Port 2)</b>			0x0000: Link down
...			0x0001: Link up
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			0x0002: Disable
<b>0x1000 + n (Channel Group 1)</b>			0xFFFF: No port
<b>0x1000 + n + 1 (Channel Group 2)</b>			
...			
<b>0x1100 (Port 1)</b>	1 word	HEX	Port Speed (Y: Channel group active port count)
<b>0x1101 (Port 2)</b>			0x0000: 10M-Half
...			0xY001: 10M-Full
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			0x0002: 100M-Half
<b>0x1100 + n (Channel Group 1)</b>			0xY003: 100M-Full
<b>0x1100 + n + 1 (Channel Group 2)</b>			0xY004: 1G-Full
...			0xY005: 2500M-Full
			0xY006: 10G-Full
			0xY007: 40G-Full
			0xY008: 50G-Full
	0xY009: 25G-Full		
	0xY00A: 100G-Full		
	0xFFFE: Inactive Link		
	0xFFFF: No port		
<b>0x1200 (Port 1)</b>	1 word	HEX	Port Flow Ctrl
<b>0x1201 (Port 2)</b>			0x0000:Off
...			0x0001:On
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			0xFFFE: Inactive Link
	0xFFFF:No port		

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x1300 (Port 1)</b>	1 word	HEX	Port MDI/MDIX
<b>0x1301 (Port 2)</b>			0x0000: MDI
...			0x0001: MDIX
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			0xFFFF: Fiber Port
			0xFFFE: Inactive Link
			0xFFFF: No port
<b>0x1400 (Port 1)</b>	32 words	ASCII	Port Media Type
<b>0x1420 (Port 2)</b>			Ex: Port 1 Media Type = "100TX,RJ45."
...			Word 0 Hi byte = '1'
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			Word 0 Lo byte = '0'
			Word 1 Hi byte = '0'
			Word 1 Lo byte = 'T'
			...
	Word 4 Hi byte = '4'		
	Word 4 Lo byte = '5'		
	Word 5 Hi byte = '\'		
	Word 5 Lo byte = '\0'		

## Packet Information

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x2000 (Port 1)</b>	2 words	HEX	Port Tx Packets
<b>0x2002 (Port 2)</b>			Ex: port 1 Tx Packet Amount = 44332211
...			Received MODBUS response: 0x02A474B3
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			Word 0 = 0x02A4
<b>0x2000 + (n * 2) (Channel Group 1)</b>			Word 1 = 0x74B3
<b>0x2000 + ((n + 1) * 2) (Channel Group 2)</b>			
...			

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x2100 (Port 1)</b>	2 words	HEX	Port Rx Packets
<b>0x2102 (Port 2)</b>			Ex: port 1 Tx Packet Amount = 44332211
...			
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			Received MODBUS response: 0x02A474B3
<b>0x2100 + (n * 2) (Channel Group 1)</b>			Word 0 = 0x02A4
<b>0x2100 + ((n + 1) * 2) (Channel Group 2)</b>			Word 1 = 0x74B3
...			
<b>0x2200 (Port 1)</b>	2 words	HEX	Port Tx Error Packets
<b>0x2202 (Port 2)</b>			Ex: port 1 Tx Packet Amount = 44332211
...			
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			Received MODBUS response: 0x02A474B3
<b>0x2200 + (n * 2) (Channel Group 1)</b>			Word 0 = 0x02A4
<b>0x2200 + ((n + 1) * 2) (Channel Group 2)</b>			Word 1 = 0x74B3
...			
<b>0x2300 (Port 1)</b>	2 words	HEX	Port Rx Error Packets
<b>0x2302 (Port 2)</b>			Ex: port 1 Tx Packet Amount = 44332211
...			
<b>Maximum Port (n)</b>			Received MODBUS response: 0x02A474B3
<b>0x2300 + (n * 2) (Channel Group 1)</b>			Word 0 = 0x02A4
<b>0x2300 + ((n + 1) * 2) (Channel Group 2)</b>			Word 1 = 0x74B3
...			

# Redundancy Information

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x3000</b>	1 word	HEX	Redundancy Protocol 0x0000: None 0x0001: RSTP 0x0002: Turbo Ring V2 0x0003: Turbo Chain 0x0004: Dual Homing 0x0005: RSTP & Dual Homing 0x0006: Turbo Ring V2 & Dual Homing 0x0007: Turbo Chain & Dual Homing
<b>0x3100</b>	1 word	HEX	RSTP Root 0x0000: Not Root 0x0001: Root 0xFFFE: RSTP is Not Supported 0xFFFF: RSTP is Not Enabled
<b>0x3200 (Port 1)</b> <b>0x2301 (Port 2)</b> ... <b>Maximum Port (n)</b> <b>0x3200 + n (Channel Group 1)</b> <b>0x3200 + n + 1 (Channel Group 2)</b> ...	1 word	HEX	RSTP Port Status 0x0000: Port Disabled 0x0001: Not RSTP Port 0x0002: Link Down 0x0003: Blocked 0x0004: Learning 0x0005: Forwarding 0xFFFD: No Port 0xFFFE: RSTP is Not Supported 0xFFFF: RSTP is Not Enabled
<b>0x3500</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Coupling Mode 0x0000: None 0x0001: Coupling Backup 0x0002: Coupling Primary 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x3501</b>	1 word	HEX	<p>Turbo Ring V2 Coupling Port Primary Status</p> <p>0x0000: Not Coupling Port  0x0001: Link Down  0x0002: Blocked  0x0003: Learning  0x0004: Forwarding  0xFFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Coupling is Not Enabled  0xFFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported  0xFFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled</p>
<b>0x3502</b>	1 word	HEX	<p>Turbo Ring V2 Coupling Port Backup Status</p> <p>0x0000: Not Coupling Port  0x0001: Link Down  0x0002: Blocked  0x0003: Learning  0x0004: Forwarding  0xFFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Coupling is Not Enabled  0xFFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported  0xFFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled</p>
<b>0x3600</b>	1 word	HEX	<p>Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1 Status</p> <p>0x0000: Healthy  0x0001: Break  0xFFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1 is Not Enabled  0xFFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported  0xFFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled</p>
<b>0x3601</b>	1 word	HEX	<p>Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1 Master/Slave</p> <p>0x0000: Slave  0x0001: Master  0xFFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1 is Not Enabled  0xFFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported  0xFFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled</p>

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x3602</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1's 1st Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocked 0x0002: Learning 0x0003: Forwarding 0xFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1 is Not Enabled 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled
<b>0x3603</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1's 2nd Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocked 0x0002: Learning 0x0003: Forwarding 0xFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 1 is Not Enabled 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled
<b>0x3680</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2 Status 0x0000: Healthy 0x0001: Break 0xFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2 is Not Enabled 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled
<b>0x3681</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2 Master/Slave 0x0000: Slave 0x0001: Master 0xFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2 is Not Enabled 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x3682</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2's 1st Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocked 0x0002: Learning 0x0003: Forwarding 0xFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2 is Not Enabled 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled
<b>0x3683</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2's 2nd Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocked 0x0002: Learning 0x0003: Forwarding 0xFFFD: Turbo Ring V2 Ring 2 is Not Enabled 0xFFFE: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Ring V2 is Not Enabled
<b>0x3700</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Chain Switch Role 0x0000: Head 0x0001: Member 0x0002: Tail 0xFFFE: Turbo Chain is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Chain is Not Enabled
<b>0x3701</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Chain 1st Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocked 0x0002: Listening 0x0003: Forwarding 0xFFFE: Turbo Chain is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Chain is Not Enabled

Address Offset	Data type	Interpretation	Description
<b>0x3702</b>	1 word	HEX	Turbo Chain 2nd Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocked 0x0002: Listening 0x0003: Forwarding 0xFFFE: Turbo Chain is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Turbo Chain is Not Enabled
<b>0x3800</b>	1 word	HEX	Dual Homing Primary Link Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Link Up 0xFFFE: Dual Homing is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Dual Homing is Not Enabled
<b>0x3801</b>	1 word	HEX	Dual Homing Primary Port State 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocking 0x0002: Forwarding 0xFFFE: Dual Homing is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Dual Homing is Not Enabled
<b>0x3802</b>	1 word	HEX	Dual Homing Secondary Link Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Link Up 0xFFFE: Dual Homing is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Dual Homing is Not Enabled
<b>0x3803</b>	1 word	HEX	Dual Homing Secondary Port Status 0x0000: Link Down 0x0001: Blocking 0x0002: Forwarding 0xFFFE: Dual Homing is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Dual Homing is Not Enabled
<b>0x3804</b>	1 word	HEX	Dual Homing Path Switching Mode 0x0000: Primary path always first 0x0001: Maintain current path 0xFFFE: Dual Homing is Not Supported 0xFFFF: Dual Homing is Not Enabled

# Product Codes Used in Industrial Protocols

The following table contains Moxa product codes used in industrial protocols.

Product name	Product code (16-bit)	Product code (32-bit)
<b>EDS-4008</b>	0x1100	0x11021000
<b>EDS-4008-2GT-2GS</b>	0x1104	0x11021004
<b>EDS-4008-2MSC</b>	0x1101	0x11021001
<b>EDS-4008-2MST</b>	0x1102	0x11021002
<b>EDS-4008-2SSC</b>	0x1103	0x11021003
<b>EDS-4008-4P-2GT-GS</b>	0x1105	0x11024005
<b>EDS-4009-3MSC</b>	0x1107	0X11022007
<b>EDS-4009-3MST</b>	0x1108	0X11022008
<b>EDS-4009-3SSC</b>	0x1109	0X11022009
<b>EDS-4012-4GC</b>	0x110B	0X1102300b
<b>EDS-4012-4GC-HV-T</b>	0x110D	0X1102300d
<b>EDS-4012-4GS</b>	0x110A	0X1102300a
<b>EDS-4012-4GS-HV-T</b>	0x110C	0X1102300c
<b>EDS-4012-8P-4GS</b>	0x110E	0x1102340e
<b>EDS-4014-4GS-2QGS-HV-T</b>	0x1112	0x11024012
<b>EDS-G4008</b>	0x1106	0x11021806
<b>EDS-G4012-4GC</b>	0x110F	0x1102380f
<b>EDS-G4012-8P-4GS</b>	0x1110	0x11023c10
<b>EDS-G4014-4GS-2QGS</b>	0x1111	0x11024011

Product name	Product code (16-bit)	Product code (32-bit)
<b>EDS-G4014-4QGS-2XGS</b>	0x1114	0x11024814
<b>EDS-G4014-6QGS</b>	0x1113	0x11024813
<b>MDS-G4012</b>	0x1081	0x11010001
<b>MDS-G4012-4XGS-T</b>	0x1281	0x11050001
<b>MDS-G4012-L3</b>	0x2081	0x12010001
<b>MDS-G4012-L3-4XGS-T</b>	0x2281	0x12050001
<b>MDS-G4020</b>	0x1082	0x11010002
<b>MDS-G4020-4XGS-T</b>	0x1282	0x11050002
<b>MDS-G4020-L3</b>	0x2082	0x12010002
<b>MDS-G4020-L3-4XGS-T</b>	0x2282	0x12050002
<b>MDS-G4028</b>	0x1083	0x11010003
<b>MDS-G4028-4XGS-FM</b>	0x2284	0x11050004
<b>MDS-G4028-4XGS-T</b>	0x1283	0x11050003
<b>MDS-G4028-L3</b>	0x2083	0x12010003
<b>MDS-G4028-L3-4XGS-T</b>	0x2283	0x12050003
<b>MRX-G4064-L3-8XGS</b>	0x2482	0x12090002
<b>MRX-Q4064-L3-16XGS</b>	0x2481	0x12090001
<b>RKS-G4028-4GS-2HV-T</b>	0x1304	0x11060004
<b>RKS-G4028-4GS-2LV-T</b>	0x1308	0x11060008
<b>RKS-G4028-4GS-HV-T</b>	0x1303	0x11060003
<b>RKS-G4028-4GS-LV-T</b>	0x1307	0x11060007
<b>RKS-G4028-4GT-2HV-T</b>	0x1302	0x11060002
<b>RKS-G4028-4GT-2LV-T</b>	0x1306	0x11060006

Product name	Product code (16-bit)	Product code (32-bit)
<b>RKS-G4028-4GT-HV-T</b>	0x1301	0x11060001
<b>RKS-G4028-4GT-LV-T</b>	0x1305	0x11060005
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GS-2HV-T</b>	0x2304	0x12060004
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GS-2LV-T</b>	0x2308	0x12060008
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GS-HV-T</b>	0x2303	0x12060003
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GS-LV-T</b>	0x2307	0x12060007
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GT-2HV-T</b>	0x2302	0x12060002
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GT-2LV-T</b>	0x2306	0x12060006
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GT-HV-T</b>	0x2301	0x12060001
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-4GT-LV-T</b>	0x2305	0x12060005
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-PoE-4GS-2HV-T</b>	0x230A	0x1206000A
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-PoE-4GS-2LV-T</b>	0x230C	0x1206000C
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-PoE-4GS-HV-T</b>	0x2309	0x12060009
<b>RKS-G4028-L3-PoE-4GS-LV-T</b>	0x230B	0x1206000B
<b>RKS-G4028-PL-12XGS-T</b>	0x1182	0x11030002
<b>RKS-G4028-PL-L3-12XGS-T</b>	0x2182	0x12030002
<b>RKS-G4028-PL-L3-PoE-12XGS-T</b>	0x2184	0x12030004
<b>RKS-G4028-PL-PoE-12XGS-T</b>	0x1184	0x11030004
<b>RKS-G4028-PoE-4GS-2HV-T</b>	0x130A	0x1106000A
<b>RKS-G4028-PoE-4GS-2LV-T</b>	0x130C	0x1106000C
<b>RKS-G4028-PoE-4GS-HV-T</b>	0x1309	0x11060009
<b>RKS-G4028-PoE-4GS-LV-T</b>	0x130B	0x1106000B
<b>RKS-G4030-PL-8QGT-6XGS-T</b>	0x1181	0x11030001

<b>Product name</b>	<b>Product code (16-bit)</b>	<b>Product code (32-bit)</b>
<b>RKS-G4030-PL-L3-8QGT-6XGS-T</b>	0x2181	0x12030001
<b>RKS-G4030-PL-L3-PoE-8QGT-6XGS-T</b>	0x2183	0x12030003
<b>RKS-G4030-PL-PoE-8QGT-6XGS-T</b>	0x1183	0x11030003

# Security Guidelines

This appendix explains security practices for installing, operating, maintaining, and decommissioning this device. We strongly recommend you follow these guidelines to enhance network and equipment security.

## Physical Installation

1. This device must be installed in an access controlled area, where only the necessary personnel have physical access to the device.
2. This device must not be directly connected to the Internet, which means switches must be installed within a security perimeter, which can be implemented by a firewall at the border since this device is not classified as zone/boundary equipment
3. Please follow the instructions in the Quick Installation Guide, which is included in the package, to ensure you install this device correctly in your environment.
4. This device has anti-tamper labels on the enclosures. This allows an administrator to tell whether the device has been tampered with.
5. Ports that are not in use should be deactivated. Please refer to Port Interface for more information.

## Account Management

Follow these best practices when setting up an account.

1. Each account should be assigned the correct privileges: Only allow the minimum number of people necessary to have admin privileges so they can perform device configuration or modifications, while other users should only have read access privileges. This device supports both local accounts and remote centralized mechanisms for authentication, including RADIUS and TACACS+.
2. Change the default password, and strengthen the account password complexity by:
  - a. Enabling the Password Policy function.

- b. Increasing the minimum password length to at least eight characters.
  - c. Defining a password policy to ensure that passwords contain at least an uppercase and lowercase letter, a digit, and a special character.
  - d. Setting user passwords to expire after a certain period of time.
3. Enforce regulations that ensure that only a trusted host can access this device. Please refer to [Trusted Access](#) for more information.

## Vulnerable Network Ports

1. For network security concerns, we strongly recommend that you change the port numbers—such as TCP port numbers for HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, and SSH—for the protocols that are in use. Ports that are not in use but are still reachable create a security risk and should be disabled. Refer to [Management Interface](#) for more information.
2. In order to avoid eavesdroppers from snooping confidential information, users should adopt encryption-based communication protocols, such as HTTPS instead of HTTP, SSH instead of Telnet, SFTP instead of TFTP, SNMPv3 instead of SNMPv1/v2c, etc. In addition, the maximum number of sessions should be kept to an absolute minimum. Refer to [Management Interface](#) for more information.
3. Users should regenerate SSL certificate and SSH key for this device before commissioning HTTPS or SSH applications. Refer to [SSH & SSL](#) for more information.

## Operation

1. In order to ensure that communications are properly protected, use a strong cryptographic algorithm for key exchange or encryption protocols for HTTPS/SSH applications. This device follows the NIST SP800-52 and SP800-131 standards, and supports TLS v1.2 and v1.3 with the following cipher suites:
  - a. **TLS v1.2**

Cipher suite name	Key exchange	Authentication	Encryption	Hash function
<b>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256</b>	ECDHE	RSA	CHACHA20-POLY1305	SHA256
<b>TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256</b>	ECDHE	ECDSA	AES128	SHA256
<b>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256</b>	ECDHE	RSA	AES128	SHA256
<b>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384</b>	ECDHE	RSA	AES256	SHA384
<b>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_GCM_SHA256</b>	Ephemeral DH	RSA	AES128	SHA256
<b>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_GCM_SHA384</b>	Ephemeral DH	RSA	AES256	SHA384
<b>TLS_DHE_RSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256</b>	Ephemeral DH	RSA	CHACHA20-POLY1305	SHA256
<b>TLS_ECDHE-RSA_WITH_AES256-SHA384</b>	ECDHE	RSA	AES256	SHA384
<b>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256</b>	ECDHE	RSA	AES128	SHA256
<b>TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256</b>	ECDHE	ECDSA	CHACHA20-POLY1305	SHA256
<b>TLS_ECDHE_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384</b>	ECDHE	RSA	AES256	SHA384
<b>TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA384</b>	ECDHE	ECDSA	AES256	SHA384
<b>TLS_ECDHE_ECDSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA256</b>	ECDHE	ECDSA	AES128	SHA256

**b. TLS V1.3**

Cipher suite name	Key exchange	Encryption	Mode	Hash function
<b>TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384</b>	any	AES256	GCM	SHA384
<b>TLS_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256</b>	any	CHACHA20-POLY1305	N/A	SHA256
<b>TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256</b>	any	AES128	GCM	SHA256

2. Below is a list of the recommended secure browsers that support TLS v1.2 or higher:

Browser	Version
<b>Microsoft Edge</b>	All
<b>Microsoft Internet Explorer</b>	v11 or above
<b>Mozilla Firefox</b>	v27 or above
<b>Google Chrome</b>	v38 or above
<b>Apple Safari</b>	v7 or above

Reference: <https://support.globalsign.com/ssl/general-ssl/tls-protocol-compatibility#Browsers>

3. This device supports event logs and syslog for SIEM integration:
  - a. **Event log:** Due to limited storage capacity, the event log can only accommodate a maximum of 10,000 entries. Administrators can set a warning for a pre-defined threshold. We recommend that users regularly back up system event logs. Please refer to [Event Logs](#) for more information.
  - b. **Syslog:** this device supports syslog, and advanced secure TLS-based syslog for centralized SIEM integration. Please refer to [Syslog](#) for more information.
4. This device can provide information for control system inventory:
  - a. **SNMPv1, v2c, v3:** We recommend administrators use SNMPv3 with authentication and encryption to manage the network. Please refer to the MIB file for more information.
  - b. **Telnet/SSH:** We recommend that administrators use SSH with authentication and encryption to retrieve device properties.
  - c. **HTTP/HTTPS:** We recommend that administrators use HTTPS with a certificate

that has been granted by a Certificate Authority to configure this device.

d. **MMS:** We recommend administrators enable MMS security mode to enhance protection.

5. **Denial of Service protection:** To avoid disruption of normal operation of the switch, administrators should configure the QoS function. This device supports ingress rate limit and egress shaper. Administrators can decide how to deal with excess data flow and configure the device accordingly. This process will regulate the resulted data rate per port. Please refer to **QoS** for more information.
6. **Time synchronization with authentication:** Time synchronization is crucial for process control. To prevent malicious attacks whereby the settings are changed without permission, authentication must be in place between the NTP server and client. This device supports NTP with a pre-shared key. Please refer to **NTP** for more information.
7. **Periodically regenerate the SSH and SSL certificates:** Even though this device supports RSA 2048-bit and SHA-256 to ensure sufficient complexity, we strongly recommend that users frequently renew their SSH key and SSL certificate in case the key is compromised. Please refer to **SSH & SSL** for more information.
8. Below is the list of the protocol port numbers used for all external interfaces.

a. **Protocol:TCP**

Service Type	Port Number	Default state	Port can be modified
<b>SSH</b>	22	Enabled	Y
<b>Telnet</b>	23	Disabled	Y
<b>E-Mail Server (SMTP)</b>	25	Disabled	Y
<b>TACACS+</b>	49	Disabled	Y
<b>HTTP</b>	80	Enabled	Y
<b>MMS</b>	102	Disabled	N
<b>HTTPS</b>	443	Enabled	Y
<b>Moxa Service</b>	443	Enabled	N
<b>Modbus</b>	502	Disabled	N

Service Type	Port Number	Default state	Port can be modified
<b>Ethernet/IP</b>	44818	Disabled	N

**b. Protocol: UDP**

Service Type	Port Number	Default state	Port can be modified
<b>DHCP Server</b>	67	Disabled	N
<b>NTP</b>	123	Disabled	N
<b>SNMP</b>	161	Disabled	Y
<b>PTP (IP based)</b>	319/320	Disabled	N
<b>Syslog</b>	514	Disabled	Y
<b>RADIUS</b>	1812	Disabled	Y
<b>Ethernet/IP</b>	2222	Disabled	N
<b>PROFINET</b>	34964/49152	Disabled	N
<b>Moxa Service</b>	40404	Enabled	N

## Maintenance

1. Perform firmware upgrades frequently to enhance features, deploy security patches, or fix bugs.
2. Frequently back up the system configurations. In order to properly protect the system configuration files from being tampered with, this device supports password encryption and signature authentication for backup files.
3. Examine event logs frequently to detect any anomalies.
4. To report vulnerabilities of Moxa products, please submit your findings on the following web page: <https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory/report-a-vulnerability>

## **Decommissioning**

To avoid disclosing sensitive information such as account passwords and certificates, please reset the system settings to factory default before decommissioning this device or sending it back to Moxa RMA service.

# Severity Level List

This is a list of severity levels and descriptions, which are based on CVSS vulnerability classifications.

Severity	Description
Emergency	System is unusable
Alert	Action must be taken immediately
Critical	Critical conditions
Error	Error conditions
Warning	Warning conditions
Notice	Normal but significant condition
Infomational	Informational messages
Debug	Debug-level messages

# SNMP MIB Files

This appendix contains the SNMP MIB file for the managed switch.

You can download the MIB file via the product site. Please note the MIB file varies by model.

## Structure of the Moxa MIB group package

Moxa support standard MIB and properties MIB. Below are all of folder and related MIB files. Please note that the applicable MIB files may vary across different models.

<Package File Lists>

EX. MOXA\_MIB\_XXX-XXXX\_v1.0\_YYYY\_MMDD\_HHMM.zip //XXX-XXXX means model name

```
├─ Private // MOXA properties MIB
|
|   └─ General // General group
|       ├── mx1588.mib
|       ├── mxDeviceIo.mib
|       ├── mxDhcpRelay.mib
|       ├── mxDhcpSvr.mib
|       ├── mxEip.mib
|       ├── mxEmailC.mib
|       ├── mxEventLog.mib
|       ├── mxGene.mib
|       ├── mxGeneral.mib
|       ├── mxIec6185093Profile.mib
|       ├── mxIeeeC37238Profile.mib
|       ├── mxLocator.mib
|       ├── mxManagementIp.mib
|       ├── mxMms.mib
|       ├── mxModbusTcp.mib
|       ├── mxPoe.mib
|       ├── mxPorte.mib
|       └── mxProfinet.mib
```





```
| └─ IF-MIB.mib
| └─ INET-ADDRESS-MIB.mib
| └─ LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB.mib
| └─ LLDP-EXT-DOT3-MIB.mib
| └─ LLDP-EXT-ODVA-MIB.mib
| └─ LLDP-MIB.mib
| └─ P-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
| └─ Q-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
| └─ RFC1213-MIB.mib
| └─ RFC1271-MIB.mib
| └─ RMON2-MIB.mib
| └─ RMON-MIB.mib
| └─ SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB.mib
| └─ SNMPv2-CONF.mib
| └─ SNMPv2-MIB.mib
| └─ SNMPv2-SMI.mib
| └─ SNMPv2-TC.mib
| └─ OSPF-MIB.mib
| └─ PTPBASE-MIB.mib
| └─ TOKEN-RING-RMON-MIB.mib
| └─ IEEE8021-AS-MIB.mib
| └─ IEEE8021-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
| └─ IEEE8021-Q-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
| └─ IEEE8021-ST-MIB.mib
└─ README.txt // this file
```

## Standard MIB Installation Order

If your tool need to import MIB one-by-one, please refer to the Standard MIBs Installation Order.

- 1.RFC1213-MIB.mib
- 2.SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB.mib
- 3.SNMPv2-SMI.mib
- 4.SNMPv2-TC.mib
- 5.SNMPv2-CONF.mib

- 6.SNMPv2-MIB.mib
- 7.IANAifType-MIB.mib
- 8.IEEE8023-LAG-MIB.mib
- 9.IF-MIB.mib
- 10.EtherLike-MIB.mib
- 11.IEEE8021-PAE-MIB.mib
- 12.BRIDGE-MIB.mib
- 13.P-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
- 14.RFC1271-MIB.mib
- 15.RMON-MIB.mib
- 16.TOKEN-RING-RMON-MIB.mib
- 17.RMON2-MIB.mib
- 18.Q-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
- 19.INET-ADDRESS-MIB.mib
- 20.IEEE8021-TC-MIB.mib
- 21.IEEE8021-SPANNING-TREE-MIB.mib
- 22.IEEE8021-MSTP-MIB.mib
- 23.IANA-ADDRESS-FAMILY-NUMBERS-MIB.mib
- 24.LLDP-MIB.mib
- 25.LLDP-EXT-DOT1-MIB.mib
- 26.LLDP-EXT-DOT3-MIB.mib
- 27.LLDP-EXT-ODVA-MIB.mib
- 28.OSPF-MIB.mib
- 29.PTPBASE-MIB.mib
- 30.IEEE8021-AS-MIB.mib
- 31.IEEE8021-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
- 32.IEEE8021-ST-MIB.mib
- 33.IEEE8021-Q-BRIDGE-MIB.mib

## MIB Tree

```

iso(1)
  |-std(0)-iso8802(8802)-ieee802dot1(1)-ieee802dot1mibs(1)
    |           |-ieee8021paeMIB(1)           : IEEE8021-PAE-MIB.mib
    |           |-ieee8021SpanningTreeMib(3)  : IEEE8021-SPANNING-TREE-
MIB.mib

```

```

|-org(3)
  |-dod(6)-internet(1)
    |-mgmt(2)-mib-2(1) : SNMPv2-MIB.mib
    |   |-system(1) : RFC1213-MIB.mib
    |   |-interface(2) : RFC1213-MIB.mib
    |   |-at(3) : RFC1213-MIB.mib
    |   |-snmp(11) : RFC1213-MIB.mib
    |   |-ospf(14) : OSPF-MIB.mib
    |   |-rmon(16) : RMON-MIB.mib
    |   |-dot1dBridge(17) : BRIDGE-MIB.mib, P-BRIDGE-MIB.mib,
Q-BRIDGE-MIB.mib
    |   |-ifMIB(31) : IF-MIB.mib
    |   |-etherMIB(35) : EtherLike-MIB.mib
    |   |-private(4)-moxa(8691)
    |     |-product(600) : mxGeneralInfo.mib, mxProductInfo.mib,
    |     |-general(602) : mxGeneral.mib, mxDeviceIo.mib,
mxDhcpRelay.mib, mxDhcpSvr.mib, mxEmailC.mib,
    |     | : mxEventLog.mib, mxGene.mib,
mxLocator.mib, mxManagementIp.mib, mxPoe.mib,
    |     | : mxPorte.mib, mxRelayC.mib, mxSnmp.mib,
mxSwe.mib, mxSysLoginPolicySvr.mib,
    |     | : mxSyslogSvr.mib,
mxSysPasswordPolicySvr.mib, mxSystemInfo.mib,
    |     | : mxSysTrustAccessSvr.mib, mxSysUtilSvr.mib,
mxTimeSetting.mib,
    |     | : mxTimeZone.mib, mxTrapC.mib,
mxUiServiceMgmt.mib, mxRte.mib, mxMms.mib,
    |     | : mxPtp.mib, mx1588.mib,
mxIec6185093Profile.mib, mxIeeeC37238Profile.mib mxModbusTcp.mib,
    |     | : mxEip.mib, mxProfinet.mib, mxTrackinge.mib
    |     |-switching(603) : mxSwitching.mib
    |     |   |- portInterface : mxPort.mib, mxLa.mib
    |     |   |- basicLayer2 : mxLhc.mib, mxQos, mxVlan.mib
    |     |   |- layer2Redundancy : mxRstp.mib, mxTrv2.mib,
mxTurboChain.mib, mxDualHoming.mib
    |     |   |- layer2Security : mxStcl.mib, mxRlps.mib, mxPssp.mib,

```

mxPsms.mib, mxDot1x.mib, mxRadius.mib, mxLp.mib, mxDhcpSnp.mib, mxIpSg.mib,  
mxMab.mib, mxDai.mib, mxMacsec.mib

| | | |- layer2Diagnostic : mxLldp.mib, mxTcst.mib,  
mxPortMirror.mib, mxRmon.mib, mxFiberCheck.mib, mxTracking.mib

| | | |- layer3Diagnostic

| | | |- layer2Multicast : mxIcmpSnp.mib

| | | |- layer3Multicast

| | |-routing(605)

| | | |- I3Genral : mxIpIf.mib, mxArp.mib

| | | |- unicastRouting : mxUnicastRoutingTable.mib,

mxStaticRoute.mib, mxOspf.mib

| | | |- multicastRouting : mxMulticastRouting.mib,

mxPimSm.mib

| | | |- I3Redundant : mxVrrp.mib

| | |-poe(608) : mxPoe.mib

| |-snmpV2(6)-snmpModules(3)

| |-snmpFrameworkMIB(10) : SNMP-FRAMEWORK.mib

|

|-ieee(111)-standards-association-numbers-series-standards(2)-lan-man-  
stds(802)-ieee802dot1(1)-ieee802dot1mibs(1)-ieee8021SpanningTreeMib(3)  
: IEEE8021-SPANNING-TREE-MIB.mib

# System Event List

This is a list of system events and their descriptions.

Group	System Event	Description
<b>General</b>	Cold Start	Power was cut off and then reconnected.
<b>General</b>	Warm Start	The device was rebooted, such as when network parameters are changed (IP address, netmask, etc.).
<b>General</b>	Power 1 Transition (On->Off)	The device's power 1 is powered down.
<b>General</b>	Power 1 Transition (Off->On)	The device's power 1 is powered up.
<b>General</b>	Power 2 Transition (On->Off)	The device's power 2 is powered down.
<b>General</b>	Power 2 Transition (Off->On)	The device's power 2 is powered up.
<b>General</b>	Digital Input Transition (On->Off)	The device's input is turning off.
<b>General</b>	Digital Input Transition (Off->On)	The device's input is turning on.
<b>General</b>	Configuration Changed	A configuration setting was changed.
<b>General</b>	Login Failure	An incorrect password was entered.
<b>General</b>	802.1X Authentication Failure	An 802.1X authentication failure occurred.
<b>General</b>	Firmware Upgrade Success	Firmware upgrade was successful.
<b>General</b>	Firmware Upgrade Failure	An error occurred during the firmware upgrade.
<b>General</b>	Log Service Ready	Log service is ready.
<b>Redundancy</b>	Ring/RSTP Topology Changed	The Ring/RSTP topology was changed.
<b>Redundancy</b>	Master Mismatch	A Turbo Ring Master mismatch occurred.
<b>Redundancy</b>	Coupling Topology Changed	The Coupling topology was changed.

Group	System Event	Description
<b>Redundancy</b>	VRRP State Change	The VRRP state was changed.
<b>VPN</b>	VPN Connected	VPN has been connected.
<b>VPN</b>	VPN Disconnected	VPN has been disconnected.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE PD On	Port#N PD power on.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE PD Off	Port#N PD power off.
<b>PoE</b>	Over Measured Power limitation	Over the total measured power limit.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE FETBad	PD Port#N MOSFET is bad.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE Over Temperature	The temperature of the environment exceeds the maximum operating temperature of the device.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE VEE Uvlo	VEE (PoE input voltage) under Voltage Lockout. The voltage of the power supply has dropped below 44V DC.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE PD Over Current	Current of Port#N has exceeded the safety limit.
<b>PoE</b>	PoE PD Check Fail	PD Port#N check failed.
<b>PoE</b>	Over Allocated Power limitation	The total PD power consumption exceeds the total allocated power.
<b>Cellular</b>	IP Change	The cellular IP address of the device has changed.
<b>Cellular</b>	Cellular Module Failure	The cellular module has encountered a failure and is not functioning.
<b>Cellular</b>	Detect SIM Failure	The system has detected a failure in the inserted SIM.
<b>Cellular</b>	PIN Code Failure	The device failed to validate the PIN code for the SIM card.
<b>Cellular</b>	SIM Switch	The active SIM has been switched to another SIM card.
<b>Cellular</b>	GuaranLink Cellular Reconnected	GuaranLink has successfully reconnected the cellular network.
<b>Cellular</b>	Guaranlink Triggered ISP Reregister	GuaranLink triggered re-registration with the Internet Service Provider.

Group	System Event	Description
<b>Cellular</b>	Guaranlink Triggered Cellular Module Reset	The cellular module was reset by GuaranLink due to an error condition.
<b>Cellular</b>	Guaranlink Triggered System Reboot	GuaranLink triggered a system reboot due to error recovery.
<b>Power Management</b>	Power Saving Start	The device enters the power saving mode.
<b>Power Management</b>	Power Saving End	The device leaves the power saving mode.
<b>Power Management</b>	Scheduling Rule Expired	The power saving rule has passed the set end time.
<b>SMS</b>	Wrong Password	The password of the remote control SMS received by the device is wrong.
<b>SMS</b>	Wrong Command	The command of the remote control SMS received by the device is wrong.
<b>SMS</b>	Wrong Format	The format of the remote control SMS received by the device is wrong.
<b>SMS</b>	Command Disabled	The remote control SMS received by the device is not enabled.
<b>SMS</b>	Trusted Number Authentication Failure	The remote control SMS received by the device is not from the Trusted Number List.
<b>WAN Redundancy</b>	WAN Interface Changed	The active WAN interface change to a different WAN interface.
<b>WAN Redundancy</b>	WAN Interface Ping Failure	The active WAN interface fails to ping the specified server.
<b>Serial</b>	Serial OP Mode State Changed	The serial operational mode has changed.
<b>Serial</b>	Serial DSR State Changed	The Data Set Ready (DSR) state of the serial port has changed.
<b>Serial</b>	Serial DCD State Changed	The Data Carrier Detect (DCD) state of the serial port has changed.
<b>DHCP</b>	DHCP Error Log	An error occurred in the DHCP process, and it has been logged.
<b>General</b>	Fiber Check Warning	The system detected that monitored values exceeded their safety thresholds.

Group	System Event	Description
<b>General</b>	Layer 3 - 7 Policy Changed	A user configured firewall rule in Layer 3-7 Policy has been added, modified, or deleted.
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	IGMP Snooping Error Log	An error occurred in IGMP snooping and has been logged.
<b>NTP/SNTP Error Log</b>	NTP/SNTP Error Log	An error occurred in NTP/SNTP synchronization and has been logged.
<b>Redundancy</b>	Ring/Chain/RSTP Topology Changed	The topology of the ring, chain, or RSTP network has changed.

# User Role Privileges

This page shows the privilege levels granted to the different authority levels: Admin, Supervisor, and User on Moxa’s Managed Ethernet Series switches. Refer to [User Accounts](#) for more information on user accounts.

Privileges are indicated as follows:

- **R/W**: Read and write access granted for the relevant settings.
- **R**: Read-only access granted for the relevant settings.
- **-**: No access granted for the relevant settings.

**Note**

Available settings and options will vary depending on the product model.

## Options Menu

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Change Language</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W
<b>Change Mode: Standard/Advanced Mode</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W
<b>Disable Auto Save</b>	R/W	R/W	-
<b>Locator</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Reboot</b>	R/W	R/W	-
<b>Reset to Default Settings</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Log Out</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W

# System

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Device Summary</b>	R	R	R
<b>System Management</b>			
<b>Information Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Firmware Upgrade</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Config Backup and Restore</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Account Management</b>			
<b>User Accounts</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Online Accounts</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Password Policy</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Out of Band Management</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Management Interface</b>			
<b>User Interface</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Hardware Interfaces</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>SNMP</b>	R/W	R	-
<b>LCM Interface</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>RMON1 (Only in CLI)</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Time</b>			
<b>System Time</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>NTP Server</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Time Synchronization</b>	R/W	R/W	R

# Port

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Port Interface</b>			
Port Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Linkup Delay	R/W	R/W	R
Link Aggregation	R/W	R/W	R
Energy Efficient Ethernet	R/W	R/W	R

# Layer 2 Switching

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
VLAN	R/W	R/W	R
Q-in-Q	R/W	R/W	R
GARP	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MAC</b>			
Static Unicast	R/W	R/W	R
MAC Address Table	R/W	R/W	R
<b>QoS</b>			
Classification	R/W	R/W	R
Ingress Rate Limit	R/W	R/W	R
Scheduler	R/W	R/W	R
Egress Shaper	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Multicast</b>			

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>IGMP Snooping</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>GMRP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Static Multicast</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## Network Interface

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Network Interface</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## Redundancy

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Layer 2 Redundancy</b>			
<b>Spanning Tree</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Turbo Ring v2</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Turbo Chain</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MRP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Multiple Dual Homing</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Multiple Network Coupling</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>ERPS V2</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Layer 3 Redundancy</b>			
<b>VRRP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Tracking</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## Network Service

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>DHCP Relay Agent</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>DNS Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## Routing

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Unicast Route</b>			
<b>Static Routing</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>OSPF Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>OSPF Status</b>	R	R	R
<b>Routing Table</b>	R	R	R

## Security

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Device Security</b>			
<b>Login Policy</b>	R/W	R	R
<b>Trusted Access</b>	R/W	R	R
<b>SSH &amp; SSL</b>	R/W	R/W	-
<b>Network Security</b>			
<b>IEEE 802.1X</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>MAC Authentication Bypass</b>	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Port Security</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Traffic Storm Control</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Access Control List</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Network Loop Protection</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Binding Database</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>DHCP Snooping</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>IP Source Guard</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Dynamic ARP Inspection</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Authentication</b>			
<b>Login Authentication</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>RADIUS</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>TACACS+</b>	R/W	-	-

## Diagnosics

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>System Status</b>			
<b>Resource Utilization</b>	R	R	R
<b>Fiber Check</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Module Information</b>	R	R	R
<b>Intelligent Temp. Control</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Network Status</b>			
<b>Network Statistics</b>	R	R	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>LLDP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>ARP Table</b>	R	R	R
<b>Tools</b>			
<b>Port Mirroring</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Ping</b>	R/W	R/W	R/W
<b>Event Logs and Notifications</b>			
<b>Event Logs</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Event Notifications</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Syslog General</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Syslog Authentication</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>SNMP Trap/Inform</b>	R/W	-	-
<b>Email Settings</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>Relay Alarm</b>	R/W	R/W	R

## Industrial Application

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
<b>Modbus TCP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>EtherNet/IP</b>	R/W	R/W	R
<b>PROFINET</b>	R/W	R/W	R



**Moxa Inc.**

Copyright © 2026 Moxa, Inc. All rights reserved. Reproduction without permission is prohibited. Trademarks and logos are copyrights of their respective owners.

[www.moxa.com/products](http://www.moxa.com/products)